Lehrbuch
der
Englischen Sprache
für
höhere Schulen
von
Dr. J. Bierbaum.

II. Teil.

L. g. sept. 158 9/(2

E

9606. C
10239

Bibliothek
des
K. Staatsministerium des Innern
für Kirchen- und Schulangelegenheiten.

<36634504280018
<36634504280018
Bayer. Staatsbibliothek

497 oo

Lehr- und Lesebuch

der

Englischen Sprache

nach der

analytisch-direkten Methode

für

Höhere Schulen

von

Dr. Julius Bierbaum.

II. Teil.

Mit einem Plane von London.

Bibliothek
des
K. Staatsministerium des Innern
für Kirchen- und Schulangelegenheiten.

Leipzig.
Verlag der Rossberg'schen Hofbuchhandlung.
1894.

Gsr/4777

Bayerische
Staatsbibliothek
MÜNCHEN

Buchdruckerei J. J. Reiff, Karlsruhe.

Vorrede.

Mit dem vorliegenden zweiten Teile unseres Englischen Lehrbuches bringen wir eine vor acht Jahren unternommene Arbeit zum Abschlusse, deren Ziel es war, dem neusprachlichen Unterrichte neue und zweckmässige Bahnen eröffnen zu helfen und zugleich die Mittel zu liefern, dieselben mit Erfolg zu betreten. Der heftige Kampf, an dem wir s. Zt. lebhaften Anteil genommen, ist ausgefochten und der Sieg an die Fahne der Reform geheftet. Auch die erbittertsten Gegner haben die Waffen gestreckt, und die „neue Methode“ hat ihren Siegeszug nicht nur durch ganz Deutschland, sondern durch die ganze zivilisierte Welt gehalten, so dass in absehbarer Zeit auch die letzten Anhänger der alten grammatisierenden Methode verschwunden sein dürften. Auch die neuen preussischen Lehrpläne von 1892 können als ein Siegeszeichen der Reformbewegung betrachtet werden, und kaum giebt es wohl noch eine Unterrichtsbehörde, die der neuen Richtung abhold wäre oder ihr den Zutritt in die Schulen versagte. Das sind grosse Erfolge gegenüber dem Misstrauen und dem erbitterten Widerstande, welche der neuen Methode anfänglich von vielen Seiten begegneten. Auch unsere Lehrbücher haben sich seit der verhältnismässig kurzen Zeit ihres Erscheinens bereits an anderthalbhundert Schulen Eingang verschafft; und ihre Zahl mehrt sich von Tag zu Tage.

Wir haben in diesem zweiten Teile, wie in allen unsern Lehrbüchern, die von uns oft ausgesprochenen Grundsätze zur praktischen Ausführung zu bringen gesucht, die Schüler an der lebenswarmen Sprache selbst und auf dem Boden der Anschauung in den Bau und den Geist derselben einzuführen, ihnen dabei zugleich wissenswerte und nützliche Kenntnisse zu vermitteln und sie mit der Natur und der Beschaffenheit des Landes, sowie den Verhältnissen, Sitten und Einrichtungen des Volkes

bekannt zu machen, dessen Sprache sie sich aneignen sollen. Wenn wir in dem ersten Teile durch die unmittelbare Anschauung zu wirken suchten, indem wir die Schule, das Haus, den Körper, die Kleidung, den Garten, die Wiese, Feld und Wald, Stadt und Dorf, Wetter und Ereignisse aus dem Kindesleben zu Ausgangspunkten wählten und schliesslich eine See- und Eisenbahnfahrt uns nach London führte, in steter Berücksichtigung der pädagogischen Grundsätze: vom Nahen zum Fernen, vom Bekanntem zum Unbekannten, so ist der zweite Teil, mit Ausnahme der ersten Lektion, vollständig dem Lande und seinem Volke gewidmet, das den Schülern durch seine Sprache in unmittelbare Nähe gerückt werden soll. So sind die Anschauungskreise nach und nach von der unmittelbaren zur mittelbaren Anschauung erweitert worden, und indem wir ferner den Schüler in London und England gleichsam alles selbst miterleben lassen, müssen sein Interesse und seine Phantasie auf das lebhafteste angeregt werden. Wenn diese beiden Faktoren noch durch gute Karten, Pläne, Bilder u. s. w. unterstützt werden können, wird es von geschickten Lehrern selbstverständlich nicht versäumt werden. Was London selbst anbetrifft, so haben wir durch die Beigabe eines ausführlichen und farbigen Planes diesem Grundsatze nach Möglichkeit zu dienen gesucht.

Das Buch zerfällt in drei Hauptteile: Die Übungsstücke, aus denen die sich daran schliessenden sprachlichen Übungen entwickelt werden; die Grammatik, welche die grammatischen Formen und Regeln mit den dazu gehörigen, den Lesestücken entnommenen Beispielen enthält, und ein Lesebuch oder Chrestomathie (Reader), welcher zu den jeweiligen Lektionen Verwandtes aus englischen Schriftstellern und Dichtern bringt, um den behandelten Stoff zu erweitern und zu vertiefen, englisches Land, Volk und Leben nach allen Seiten hin zu beleuchten, das Interesse der Schüler zu beleben und eine gute Grundlage für die spätere zusammenhängende Lektüre und verwandte Studien zu bieten. Jeder Lektion sind ausserdem noch eine Anzahl englischer Sprichwörter, idiomatischer Ausdrücke und Redensarten, Citate und Worträtsel beigegeben, die das englische Geistesleben und sprachliches Denken in den mannigfaltigsten Erscheinungen vor Augen führen und Sinn und Lust für die Sprache in den Schülern wecken und schärfen sollen.

Wie in allen unsern Lehrbüchern sind auch in diesem Teile die Übungsstücke, die wir als die eigentliche Seele unserer Methode betrachten, von uns selbst verfasst worden. Über die Gründe dafür baben wir uns bereits in der

Vorrede zum I. Teile (S. V) ausgesprochen. Die Notwendigkeit eines solchen Verfahrens ist seitdem auch von verschiedenen Lehrbuchverfassern dadurch anerkannt worden, dass sie dasselbe, dem früheren Spotte über das „gemachte“ Französisch resp. Englisch zum Trotz, nachgeahmt haben. Und mit Recht. Denn soll das Lesestück die Grundlage für die Anschauung und die zu gewinnenden sprachlichen Übungen bieten, so muss es auch darnach beeigenschaftet sein, d. h. es muss die erforderlichen Beispiele, aus denen die sprachlichen Erscheinungen oder Regeln abstrahiert werden sollen, auch in genügender Anzahl aufweisen, damit der Schüler durch Anschauung und Induktion unter der Leitung seines Lehrers die Regeln selbst findet, dass er sich sozusagen seine Grammatik selbst macht. Solch passende Lesestücke giebt es aber in keiner Sprache. Die Konsequenzen ergeben sich daher von selbst; denn mit der Papierschere lässt sich nun einmal kein brauchbares Lehrbuch zusammenschneiden.

Unsere Übungsstücke sind in der Umgangssprache der Gegenwart abgefasst, beschäftigen sich zunächst mit der Hauptstadt des Landes und seinen hervorragendsten Sehenswürdigkeiten und dann mit verschiedenen wichtigen und interessanten Erscheinungen auf dem Gebiete des englischen Lebens. Für die genaue Durchsicht besonders dieser Stücke und für manche wertvolle Winke und Berichtigungen sind wir verschiedenen massgebenden Persönlichkeiten in England zum wärmsten Dank verpflichtet, den wir an dieser Stelle zum Ausdruck bringen möchten, und zwar zunächst unserem verehrten früheren Vorgesetzten, the Reverend Robert Rice, M. A., late Warden of St. Columba's College, Dublin; ferner Herrn Charles Steel, Tutor at Rugby College, dessen freundlicher Unterstützung wir uns schon bei der Abfassung des I. Teiles zu erfreuen hatten, und unserem einstmaligen lieben Kollegen in England, Herrn Rich. Mullock, jetzt Schulvorsteher in Bournemouth. Ihrer freundlichen Mithilfe, sowie dem abermaligen unermüdlichen und gewissenhaften Beistande unseres hochgeschätzten Kollegen, Herrn Oberlehrer Dr. Arthur Diebler am Realgymnasium in Chemnitz, verdanken wir es, dass auch dieses Buch vor unliebsamen Versehen, wenn auch nicht ganz vor Druckfehlern bewahrt geblieben ist. Leider sind Bogen 12 und 13, welche die verhältnismässig grösste Anzahl von Druckfehlern aufweisen, aus Versehen vor dem Eintreffen der Korrekturen aus Chemnitz abgezogen worden.

Die Grammatik enthält nach unserem Ermessen alles, was an Schulen gelehrt werden kann und soll. Nach Be-

dürfnis kann bei mangelnder Zeit, besonders in solchen Schulen, an denen keine systematische Syntax betrieben wird, auch wohl manches gekürzt werden. Kapitel XII, „Über den Gebrauch der Zeiten", zu welchem wir keinen besonderen Text verfasst haben, wird bei passenden Gelegenheiten, hauptsächlich bei der Lektüre, zu behandeln sein.

Die im dritten Teil enthaltenen Lesestücke und Gedichte sollten stets im Anschluss an die behandelten Lektionen gelesen werden; die Hinweise befinden sich unter jeder Lektion. Von der zu Gebote stehenden Zeit wird es auch hier abhängen, ob alles gelesen oder manches beiseite gelassen werden soll. Zu der Aufnahme zweier Bruchstücke aus unserer eigenen "History of the English Language and Literature"[1] wurden wir durch die Thatsache gedrängt, dass in den uns bekannten, von Engländern verfassten Geschichtsbüchern keine in so knapper Form geschriebene und für unsere Zwecke geeignete Darstellung der betr. litterar-historischen Epochen zu finden war, deren Schilderung wir aber in unserem Lehrbuche einen Platz einzuräumen für nötig hielten, um den Schülern einen Überblick über das Entstehen der englischen Nation und das Werden und Wachsen ihrer Sprache und Litteratur zu geben.[2]

Zu dem Wörterverzeichnisse am Ende des Buches möchten wir kurz bemerken, dass wir auch hier, wie beim Französischen, von einer Lautschrift abgesehen haben und nur in zweifelhaften Fällen den Accent und die Quantität, ersteren durch den Akut, letzteren durch ein Längezeichen, angegeben haben. Nur in einzelnen Fällen haben wir von dem Circumflex, wie z. B. bei dem dumpfen â, Gebrauch gemacht und nur in schwierigen die Aussprache der betr. Silben in Klammern beigefügt. Wir sind nach wie vor der Meinung, dass die lebendige Klangfarbe der verschiedenartigen Laute und Lautschattierungen durch keine Zeichen genau dargestellt werden kann, dass die Aussprache auch nicht Sache der Hausarbeit, sondern einzig und allein Sache der Schule, des Lehrers ist, dass Aussprache und Hausaufgabe auch nicht das Geringste mit einander zu thun haben und ein vollständiger Aussprache-Apparat für solche Zwecke in einem Schulbuche

[1] History of the English Language and Literature from the Earliest Times until the Present Day, including the American Literature, with a Bibliographical Appendix. 2nd Edition; Heidelberg (G. Weiss), London and New York. 1889.

[2] Die ohne Angabe der Verfasser abgedruckten Nummern sind dem sehr empfehlenswerten Englischen Lern- und Übungsblatte, The English Teacher, Renger'sche Buchhdl., Leipzig, hrgb. von Oberlehrer Dr. Junker in Bockenheim, entnommen.

daher nicht am Platze ist. Ein einfaches Betonungs- oder Längezeichen wird die nach unserem, im I. Teile enthaltenen Aussprachekursus vorgebildeten Schüler instinktiv auf die rechte Bahn, ins rechte Geleise bringen, wenn zuweilen ein Lesestück unvorbereitet aufgegeben werden sollte. Auch ist es eine bekannte Erscheinung, dass sich bei richtiger Betonung eines englischen Wortes die richtige Aussprache (eine gründliche Schulung in der Aussprache immer vorausgesetzt) meistens von selbst ergiebt. Denn im Englischen steht das Betonungsgesetz oben an, die Aussprache erst an zweiter Stelle. Man kann z. B. alle Laute eines englischen Wortes richtig aussprechen und doch nicht verstanden werden, — weil man eben falsch betont hat.

Der vorliegende II. Teil ist je nach der Stundenzahl auf ein bis anderthalb Jahre berechnet. Ob nebenher noch besondere zusammenhängende Lektüre getrieben werden soll, hängt vom Ermessen des Lehrenden ab, wobei er jedoch immer der alten bewährten Maximen eingedenk sein möge: Nicht Vielerlei auf einmal! und — Alles zu seiner Zeit!

Karlsruhe, im Februar 1894.

Der Verfasser.

Druckfehler-Verzeichnis (Errāta).

S. 7 Zeile 3 von unten lies East End für Eastend.
„ 34 Anmerkung lies peel für peal.
„ 43 ist das letzte Sprichwort zu streichen.
„ 58 Zeile 13 von unten lies steps für steeps.
„ 66 Anmerkung lies at different für a different.
„ 70 Zeile 7 von oben lies nick für rick.
„ 73 „ 3 „ unten „ independent für independant.
„ 132 letzte Zeile von unten lies West End für Westend.
„ 167 „ „ „ „ „ crucifixion für crucification.
„ 180 Anmerkung lies per Adreß für per adress.
„ 212 Zeile 11 von oben lies and für an.
„ 212 „ 15 „ unten „ red für read.
„ 214 „ 8 „ „ „ nonsensical für nonsenscical.
„ 217 „ 12 „ „ „ magnificent für magnificient.
„ 218 „ 21 „ „ „ fields für field's.
„ 221 „ 21 „ oben „ mightiest für mightest.
„ 223 „ 17 „ unten „ sacrifice für sacrifies.
„ 224 Anmerkung lies 1215 für 1815.
„ 229 „ 7 „ oben „ produced für propuced.
„ 233 „ 5 „ „ „ Catholic für Catolic.
„ 236 Anmerkung lies Dutch für Dutsch.
„ 238 Zeile 2 von unten lies billow's für billows.
„ 239 „ 20 „ oben „ not für no.

Index or Table of Contents.
(Inhaltsverzeichnis.)

Seite

I.

1st Lesson. The Definite Article 1—4
1. A Lesson of General Geography (Exercises) 1—3
2. Translation (Proverbs, Quotations, Idiomatic Expressions, Conundrum) 4

2nd Lesson. Indefinite Article; Definite Article continued . . 5—11
3. My first Stroll through London. (Exercises) 5—9
4. Antwort (Prov., Quot., Id. Expr., Conundrum) 10—11

3rd Lesson. The Substantive. Number 12—17
5. A Dinner Party (Exercises) 12—16
6. Etwas über England und die Engländer (Prov., Quot. etc.) 16—17

4th Lesson. The Substantive. Cases 17—25
7. The Parks of London; the Zoological Gardens (Exerc.) . 17—24
8. Hampton Court, Richmond und Kew (Proverbs etc.) . . 24—25

5th Lesson. The Adjective 26—31
9. Westminster Abbey, Westminster Hall, and Westminster Palace. (Exercises) 26—30
10. Der Krystallpalast (Proverbs, Quot., Idiom. Expr.) . . . 30—31

6th Lesson. The Adverb 31—37
11. The London Theatres. (Exercises) 31—34
12. Besorgungen und Plaudereien (Prov., Quot., Id. Expr. etc.) 35—37

7th Lesson. Pronouns 37—44
13. On English Letter-Writing. Example. (Exercises) . . 37—42
14. Ein Brief. (Proverbs, Quotations, Idiom. Expr., Conund.) 42—44

8th Lesson. Indefinite Pronouns 44—48
15. On English Climate and Diseases. (Exercises) 44—47
16. Über die Einteilung der Zeit und das Spielen (Proverbs etc.) 44—48

9th Lesson. The Infinitive. The German „lassen“ 49—56
17. The English House. (Exercises) 49—54
18. Möblierte Zimmer. (Prov., Idiom. Expr., Quot., Conundr.) 54—56

10th Lesson. The Accusative with the Infinitive 56—63
19. London Curiosities (Exercises) 56—61
20. Im Speisehaus. (Prov., Quot., Idiom. Expr., Conundr.) . . 61—63

11th Lesson. Participles and Gerund 63—70
21. Amusements. (Exercises) 63—68
22. Wasservergnügen. (Prov., Quot., Idiom. Expr. etc.) . . 68—70

Seite

12th Lesson. The Conjunctive Mood. Conjunctions 70—76
23. English Country-Life. (Exercises) 70—75
24. Englische Feste und Feiertage. (Prov., Quot. etc.) . . 75—76

II.
Sprachlehre (Grammar).
B. Satzlehre (Syntax).

I. **Der Article** (the Article) 77—81
§§ 2—4. A. Der bestimmte Artikel (the Definite Article) . . 77—79
„ 5—7. B. Der unbestimmte Artikel (the Indefinite Article) . 80—81

II. **Das Substantiv** (the Substantive) . . . 81—94
§§ 8—26. A. Numerus (Number) 81—87
„ 27—44. B. Fälle (Cases) 87—94

III. **Das Eigenschaftswort** (the Adjective) . . 94—99
§§ 45—47. 1. Zur Steigerung (Comparison) 94—95
„ 48—53. 2. Stellung (Place) 95—96
„ 54—56. 3. Substantivisch gebrauchte Adjective 96—98
§ 57. 4. Adjektivisch gebrauchte Substantive 98
§§ 58—59. 5. Zahlwörter (Numeral Adjectives) 98—99

IV. **Das Adverb** (the Adverb) 99—105
§§ 60—62. 1. Einteilung 99—101
§ 63. 2. Stellung 101—102
§ 64. 3. Adverbial gebrauchte Adjective 102—103
§ 65. 4. Deutsche Adverbien durch engl. Verben . . . 103—104
§ 66. 5. Adverbiale Redensarten 104—105

V. **Die Fürwörter** (the Pronouns) . . . 105—110
§§ 67—70. 1. Die persönl. Fürwörter (Personal Pronouns) . . 105—106
„ 71—74. 2. Die besitzanzeigenden Fürwörter (Possessive Pronouns) 106
„ 75—78. 3. Die hinweisenden Fürwörter (Demonstrative Pr.) 106—107
„ 79—81. 4. Die bestimmenden Fürwörter (Determinative Pr.) 107—108
§ 82. 5. Die fragenden Fürwörter (Interrogative Pron.) . 108
§§ 83—90. 6. Die bezüglichen Fürwörter (Relative Pronouns) 108—110

VI. **Unbestimmte Fürwörter** od. **Indefinitpronomen**
§§ 91—101. (Indefinite Pronouns) 110—114

§ 102. VII. **Der Infinitiv** (the Infinitive) 114—118
§ 103. A. Der Infinitiv ohne **to** 114—115
§§ 104—105. B. Der Infinitiv mit **to** 115—117
§ 106. C. Der Infinitiv zur Verkürzung von Nebensätzen 117—118

VIII. **Der Akkusativ mit dem Infinitiv** . . 118—120
§§ 107—109. Der Akkusativ mit dem Infinitiv mit oder ohne to 118—119
„ 110—111. Der Nominativ mit dem Infinitiv 119—120

IX. **Die Partizipien und das Gerundium** . . 120—123
§§ 112—114. A. Das Partizip (the Participle) 120—121
„ 115—119. B. Das Verbalsubstantiv (Gerund) 121—123

Seite
§§ 120—121. **X. Der Konjunktiv** (the Conjunctive Mood) . 123—124

§§ 122—129. **XI. Konjunktionen** (Conjunctions) 124—126

XII. Gebrauch der Zeiten (Use of Tenses) . . 127—129
§ 130. 1. Das Präsens (the Present) 127
§ 131. 2. Das Imperfekt und das Perfekt (the Imperfect or Past and the Perfect) 127—128
§ 132. Das Futurum (the Future) 128
§ 133. Gebrauch der Zeiten in Nebensätzen 128—129

§ 134. **Die gebräuchlichsten starken und unregelmässig schwachen Zeitwörter** . . . 129—131

III.

Reader (Lesebuch).

(Die mit einem * bezeichneten Nummern enthalten Gedichte.)

Nr. Seite
1. The British Islands 132—41
a. England 132—35
b. Wales 135—36
c. Scotland 136—38
d. Ireland 139—41
2. Edward I. after the Conquest of Wales 141
*3. Rule Britannia 141—42
*4 The Green Little Shamrock of Ireland 142—43
*5. My Heart's in the Highlands 143
6. The London Streets 144—46
7. A Sunday in London 146—47
8 Richard Whittington 147—50
*9. Sonnet 150
*10. Evening by the Thames 150—51
11. English Dinners 151
12 Saxon and Norman Names of Provisions 152
13. White Lies 152—55
*14. The Luck of Edenhall 155—56
15. At the Menagerie 156—59
16. Rotten Row 159—60
*17. The Nightingale and the Glow-Worm 160—61
*18. The Battle of Blenheim 161—62
19. Westminster Abbey 163—65
20. Reflections in Westminster Abbey 165—66
*21. The World is all a fleeting Show 166
*22. The Common Lot 166—67
23 The Plays of Old England 167—69
24. The Theatre of Shakespeare 169—70
25. The Season and the Seasons 170—71
*26. Polonius to his Son Laertes 171—72
*27 On Sleep 172—73
*28 Mercy 173
*29. The Aged Minstrel 173—74
30. Letters 174—80
31. Notes and Billets 180—82

		Seite
32.	Advertisements	182—83
33.	Commercial Notes	183—84
34.	English Climate	184—85
35.	A London Fog	185
36.	Hard on the Doctor	186
37.	She swallowed the Doll; Anecdotes	186
*38.	The Graves of a Household	187
*39.	Friends	188
*40.	The Erl-King	188—89
41.	The Old English Houses	189—90
42.	English School-Life	190—94
	Anecdote	194
*43.	The Homes of England	194—95
*44.	I Remember, I Remember	195—96
*45.	The Old Back Stair	196—97
46.	Walking in the Streets of London	197—98
47.	The Bank of England	198—99
48.	A Scene in the Strand	199—200
	Anecdote	200
*49.	The Complaints of the Poor	200—201
*50.	Night	201
51.	Change of Popular Amusement	202—204
52.	A Jingling Match	204
53.	A Rowing Match on the Thames	204—205
*54.	Hunting-Song	205—206
*55.	Morning Hymn of Adam and Eve in Paradise	206—207
56.	Rural Life in England	208—212
57.	English Formality	212
58.	English Customs	213—217
*59.	The Village Preacher	218—19
*60.	The Village Blacksmith	219—20
61.	Historical Survey up to the Year 1066	220—22
62.	Britain and the Britons	222—24
63.	Origin of the English Nation	224—25
64.	Growth of the English Language and Literature	225—30
65.	The Best English	230—31
66.	Civil and Ecclesiastical State of England	231—33
67.	English Genuineness	233
68.	Vanity of the French and English	233—34
69.	On Politeness	234—37
*70.	William the Conqueror	237—38
*71.	Childe Harold's Adieu to England	238—40

IV.

Vocabulary (Wörterverzeichnis) . . 241—283

Deutsches Wörterverzeichnis . . 284—287

Plan von London.

Bayerische
Staatsbibliothek
MÜNCHEN

I.

1st Lesson.

The Definite Article.

II, §§ 1—4.

1. A Lesson of General Geography.

The surface of the earth is divided into land and water; the latter occupies nearly triple **the** extent of the former. The great divisions of the world are: firstly, the Old World or Eastern Hemisphere, consisting of three continents, Europe, Asia, and Africa; secondly, the New World or Western Hemisphere, consisting of North America and South America; and thirdly, Oceānia, comprising Austrālia, some large islands, and an immense number of smaller islands, called the East Indian Archipélago. The New World is only about half **the** size of the Old World. The land of the latter terminates southward in **the** Cape of Good Hope, that of the former, in Cape Horn. The population of the world is about 1,500 millions.

The five oceans are: **the** Atlantic Ocean, **the** Pacífic Ocean, **the** Indian Ocean, **the** Arctic and **the** Antarctic Oceans. The Pacific Ocean alone occupies more space than all **the** dry land of the globe. Through the very heart of Europe and Asia runs, from west to east, a sēries of lofty mountains: **the** Pýrenees, forming the frontier between France and Spain, **the** Alps, and **the** Carpāthians in Europe, **the** Caúcasus on the frontier of Europe and Asia, extending from **the** Caspian to **the** Black Sea, **the** Himálaya and **the** Altái, parallel to each other, in Asia. The only láteral ranges northward of this almost continuous chain are **the** Ural and **the** Scandinavian Moun-

tains. The highest mountain in the world is one of the Himalayas, Mount Everest in the kingdom of Nepaul, 27000 feet or 5 1/2 miles high.

The configuration of Europe shows a great number of seas, capes, and peninsulas. Of the seas we may mention the Baltic, the German Ocean, the Mediterrānean, and the Black Sea, the two latter being connected by the Dardanélles and the Straits of Constantinople or the Bósporus.

Europe, the inhabitants of which are called Europēans, contains twenty principal countries, three in the North: Denmark, inhabited by the Danes, with the capital Kopenhagen in the island of Zealand; Sweden, inhabited by the Swedes, with the capital Stockholm lying on Lake Mælar; Norway, inhabited by the Norwēgians, with the capital Christiania; — two in the East: Russia with the Crimēa, inhabited by the Russians, capital St. Petersburg on the Neva, and Roumania by the Roumanians, capital Bucharest; — five in the South: Portugal, inhabited by the Portuguēse, capital Lisbon on the Tagus; Spain by the Spaniards, capital Madrid; Italy by the Italians, capital Rome on the Tiber; Greece by the Greeks, capital Athens; Turkey and Bulgaria, inhabited by the Turks and the Bulgarians, capital Constantinople; — four in the West: the Republic of France, inhabited by the French, capital Paris on the Seine; Belgium by the Belgians, capital Brussels; Holland or the Netherlands by the Dutch, capital Amsterdam; Great Britain, comprising England, Scotland, Wales, and Ireland, the first inhabited by the English, capital London on the Thames, the second by the Scotch, capital Edinburgh, the third by the Welsh, and the fourth by the Irish, capital Dublin; — three in the centre: the Empire of Germany, inhabited by the Germans, capital Berlin; the Republic of Switzerland by the Swiss, the confederate capital Bern; Austria, inhabited by the Austrians, capital Vienna on the Danube. Austria includes Bohemia, inhabited by the Bohemians, capital Prague, the Tyrol by the Tyrolēse, capital Innsbruck, Styria by the Styrians, and Hungary by the Hungarians, capital Buda-Pesth. The chief states of Germany are, the kingdom of Prussia, inhabited by the Prussians, capital Berlin, the kingdom of Bavaria by the Bavarians, capital Munich on the Isar, Saxony by the Saxons, capital Dresden on the Elbe, and Wurttemberg, capital Stuttgart; — the grand-duchies of Baden, Weimar, Oldenburg, Hesse, and

Mecklenburg; the Imperial Province of Alsace-Lorraine with Strasburg, the duchy of Brunswick, and so on.

Some of the chief countries of the other parts of the world are: in Asia, peopled by the Asiatics, China inhabited by the Chinese, Japan by the Japanese, Persia by the Persians, Syria by the Syrians, Arabia by the Arabians, India, also called the East-Indies, by the Hindoos, Burmah by the Burmese, Asia Minor and Palestine; in Africa, peopled by the Africans, Egypt inhabited by the Egyptians, Algeria by the Algerians, Tunis, Morocco, and the Cape Colony; in America, peopled by the Americans, the United States, Cánada, inhabited by the Canādians, Mexico by the Mexicans, Brazíl (formerly the Brazils) by the Brazílians, Perū by the Peruvians, and Chíli.

My native country is Germany which I prefer to all others and which I shall never forget nor deprĕciate wherever I may live, as it is the fashion with many of her children who, living in foreign countries, immeasurably praise these at the expense of their own fatherland.

Exercises.

1. Name some rivers with the capitals lying on them.

2. Name some lakes with the towns on them.

3. What Europēan mountains lie to the south of Germany, which to the east, and which to the west?

4. What mountains do you know in Asia?

5. What mountains are frontier mountains and between which countries?

6. Name the countries in the south of Europe from west to east.

7. Give the names of countries and mountains that are used in the plural?

8. What oceans and seas lie around Europe?

9. Who are the inhabitants of Europe, Asia, and Africa; of Sweden, Norway, Portugal, Spain, France, Belgium, England, and Scotland; of Switzerland, the Tyrol, Styria, and Hungary; of Japan, Egypt, Brazil, and Peru?

10. Who reigns in the Empire of Germany, in the kingdoms of Italy and Saxony, in the grand-duchy of Baden, in England, in Russia, and in Sweden?

11. What capes do you know and where are they?

2. Translation.

Ich bin ein Deutscher, nämlich aus dem Königreiche Preußen; ich bin daher auch ein Preuße. Zwei meiner Freunde sind aus Sachsen; sie werden daher auch Sachsen genannt. Sie reisen sehr viel. Der eine von ihnen war in Nord-Amerika, wo er die Vereinigten Staaten und Canada besucht hat, dessen Bewohner ihm sehr gefallen haben. Auch in Mexiko ist er schon gewesen; doch liebt er die Mexikaner nicht. — Der andere hat schon die halbe Welt gesehen; ich glaube, er hat schon alle fünf Erdteile bereist. Er war einige Jahre bei den Chinesen, Japanern und Birmanen, deren Hauptstädte er auch besucht hat. Die Chinesen gefallen ihm nicht, doch lobt er die Japaner und Birmanen sehr; die Europäer zieht er jedoch allen andern Völkern vor, besonders die Deutschen. Er lobt auch die fremden Völker nicht auf Kosten seines Heimatlandes, wie es bei vielen Reisenden Mode ist. — Er war auch im Himalaya und am Fuße des höchsten Berges desselben. Wie heißt er (doch)? Meine beiden Freunde sind jetzt in Palästina.

Ich habe erst zwei Seereisen gemacht, eine über die Ostsee nach Dänemark, wo ich Kopenhagen auf der Insel Seeland besuchte, und eine über das Mittelländische Meer nach Algier. Nächsten Sommer gedenke ich nach der Neuen Welt, nach Nord-Amerika zu reisen, um auch etwas von der westlichen Hemisphere zu sehen. Daß ich auch New York besuchen werde, ist außer Frage. In diesem Sommer war ich in der Schweiz und Tyrol; das weite und mächtige Rußland habe ich noch nicht besucht; aber ich kenne das schöne Italien und das reiche (opulent) Frankreich. Wenn ich Zeit und Geld hätte, möchte ich gern Ostindien kennen lernen (to know).

Proverbs: No prophet is honored in his own country.
There are many ways which lead to Rome.
East, west, home is best.

Quotations: All the world is a stage. (Shakespeare.)
Something is rotten in the state of Denmark. (Shakespeare.)
Be England what she will, with all her faults, she is my country still. (Churchill.)

Idiomatic Expressions: To carry coals to Newcastle (English), owls to Athens (Greek), water to the Rhine (German), enchantments to Egypt (Rabbinic), indulgences to Rome (Middle Ages), pepper to Hindostan (Oriental).
To set the Thames on fire. Rome was not built in one day.

Conundrum: Why should Africa rightly be considered to rank first of the continents? (Because it bears the palm.)

2nd Lesson.

Indefinite Article; Definite Article continued.

II, §§ 4—7. II, § 2 d & 3 f—n.

3. My first Stroll through London.

A Letter.

London, July 13th, 1892.

Dear Friend,

*It is such **a** long time since I wrote to you last that I am rather at **a** loss how to apologize for my long silence. Many **a** time have I intended, it is true, to send you a few lines; but to do so is quite **a** different thing with me. Besides, I am known as too lazy **a** correspondent, even to try to make **a** defence for myself, although I could mention **a** thousand things that have prevented me from writing. To-day, I have got **the** tooth-ache and must stay at home, and, therefore, take up my pen with **an** intention of writing you a very long letter in order to give you a sketch of my first stroll through London.*

*I arrived here last Sunday, the 7th of July, after a pleasant voyage in **the** Nelson and a short rail-road journey up to London. At Charing Cross Station I hired a cab to drive me to an hotel, as I was in **a** hurry to bring my journey to **an** end. There I was in this huge and busy metropolis of Merry Old England where everything had **an** air of grandeur and strangeness to me. Next morning, after breakfast, I left the hotel with **the** view of having a drive through the principal parts of the town; for I have made it **a** rule always to begin with a general survey of an unknown city, in order to dispel the first oppressive feelings of uneasiness and solitude. Yet London with its five millions of inhabitants is a city of so enormous **a** size that it would require many weeks to know it even superficially, and in my opinion it is **as** interesting **a** city as any I have ever seen before.*

*I thought it best to take a "Hansom" — so called from its inventor — a two-wheeled cab with only two seats; the driver is at the back, so that he drives over the heads of the passengers sitting inside who communicate their orders to him through a small trap-door in the roof. The fare by time is half-a-crown, viz., 2 s. 6 d. **an** hour, and 8 d. for each additional quarter of an hour; whilst four-wheelers, with four seats, properly called "Hackneys", cost only 2 s. **an** hour. But they do not drive so*

fast. However, for this very reason, I soon regretted having chosen it; for it went at such **a** *rate that I had no time to have a full sight of* **a** *great many buildings and monuments. Besides, horses are very vigorous and swift in England, as I have had many* **an** *opportunity of observing; but* **the** *horse of my coachman was such a frisky animal that it could hardly be restrained. So after half an hour, I paid my "cabby", and took the next omnibus or "bus", as the Londoners familiarly call these useful vehicles, and sat beside the driver who happened to be in* **a** *good humour and to possess* **the** *eloquence of* **a** *Cicero, and thus acted as* **a** *guide to me, pointing out with his whip and explaining all* **the** *remarkable buildings and monuments along the route. He seemed to me* **a** *Cockney, that is a true-born Londoner.*

On **a** *first view,* **a** *thousand confused and interesting impressions produce quite* **a** *bewildering effect upon the mind. The season was just at its height, which, contrary to the custom of other countries, is in the middle of summer, whilst in winter, it is* **the** *fashion of wealthy people to live in the country, where they devote themselves to rural sports; most of them go* **a** *shooting.*

I first visited the Strand, that busy, commercial street which runs parallel to **the** *Thames from east to west, with many theatres, magnificent shops, restaurants, and cafés. At* **a** *little distance on the left side, there is Covent Garden, the principal vegetable, fruit, and flower market in London with the celebrated Covent Garden Theatre close by. Farther on, to the right, close to the Thames, I observed the stately façade of Somerset House, an imposing quadrangular building, once a royal residence; farther on, to the left, are the extensive Royal Courts of Justice, finished in 1882, and here I passed the site of the old Temple Bar, a gateway, demolished in 1878, which formerly gave entrance to the city proper. I pursued my way along Fleet Street and Ludgate Hill, passed St. Paul's, London's most prominent building, which resembles St. Peter's in Rome, and was now in the commercial centre of London, the so-called City, and within the sound of 'Bow-bells', the bells of St. Mary-le-Bow in Cheapside, where all genuine 'Cockneys' must be born. Here I took* **a** *fancy to walk part of the way chiefly with* **the** *purpose of having a better opportunity of observing the people and their ways. For there is no greater pleasure for me than to study new places and foreign people and their customs and manners; and I am of opinion that, in fact, there is no more interesting* **a** *study for man. I do not intend to turn critic on this occasion, but I must confess that men seem to be more active in England than*

anywhere else, and that women enjoy greater liberty and more attention and regard from men than with us.

I now turned to the left and entered Cheapside, where I noticed the monument of Sir Robert Peel who was **a** *great statesman, and, at* **a** *distance, the Guildhall or Council-Hall of the City where the Corporation have their sittings, and where the Lord Mayor is elected, who is generally* **an** *alderman. Then turning to the right, I saw the Mansion House, the official residence of the Lord Mayor, opposite to it the Bank of England, and right before me the Royal Exchange with the statue of* **the** *Duke of Wellington in front. Then I cast a look at the Statue of William IV. in King William Street, and at the Monument, erected in commemoration of the Great Fire of London, which in 1666 destroyed 460 streets with 89 churches and 13,200 houses. Then on* **a** *sudden, I stood on London Bridge. What* **a** *magnificient sight, what* **a** *bustle and what* **a** *deafening noise!*

About 20.000 vehicles and 100,000 pedestrians are said to cross London Bridge daily. From it, we survey the river with the Port of London and its Docks to **the** *east. As far as the eye can reach, forests of masts are to be descried in the smoky distance.* ***A*** *little down on the left bank of the river, you see the long front of the Custom-House facing the river, and behind it,* **the** *hoary Tower shows its massive walls and battlements.*

By this time, I began to feel **an** *appetite; therefore I returned to the City and went into the first dining-room near at hand, a so-called Grill Room, where chops, steaks, and other dishes are cooked on the gridiron. I made my luncheon off a mutton chop and potatoes with a pint of half-and-half, a mixture of ale and porter, which costs 6 d.* **a** *pint. For ale by itself is too bitter* **a** *beverage for me; and porter alone is too strong. Wine is very strong too in England, for* **the** *English mostly drink 'port' and 'sherry', Spanish wines; 'claret' as they call the French red wines, is mostly drunk with water. 'Hock' from Hochheimer is little made use of and very dear. There are also luncheon-bars where it is* **the** *custom for visitors to take their meals, standing at the bar. In the Oyster Shops, oysters, lobsters, turtles, and all sorts of fish are to be had.*

After luncheon, I continued my stroll in the opposite direction from east to west; I followed the great Thoroughfare north of the Thames, which leads from the extreme east to the extreme west, right through the heart of London. I did not go quite to the Eastend through Whitechapel Road, the most disreputable part of London, inhabited by the lowest and commonest classes of society, but turned into Newgate Street,

crossed Holborn Viaduct, got into High Holborn and Oxford Street, had a glimpse of the British Museum, a little to the right, with Russell and Bedford Squares at its angles, crossed Regent Street at Oxford Circus,[1] *and after another short drive on a 'bus' reached Hyde Park, the most extensive of the numerous parks within the precincts of London, covering an area of 390 acres. I entered it through the Marble Arch, traversed it, crossed the Serpentine, an artificial sheet of water, and went along the broad southern avenue, the favourite rendezvous of 'high life'. I issued by the handsome gateway of Hyde Park Corner, again took an omnibus, went along Piccadilly, passed Green Park to the right, beyond which rises Buckingham Palace, Queen Victoria's residence, at the end of St. James's Park. We crossed Piccadilly Circus, then drove to the right through the Haymarket with Her Majesty's Opera House, and then reached Trafalgar Square with the monument of Nelson, who lived and died* **a** *brave sailor and fell* **a** *hero in the battle of Trafalgar, 22nd Oct. 1805, gained by the English fleet over the combined armaments of the French and* **the** *Spaniards. On the northern side of this square rises the National Gallery of paintings. Here I left the omnibus, went down Whitehall, a street named after the palace of the English kings, that stood here in olden times, and went to Westminster Abbey, the splendid cathedral which for its royal sēpulchres and the tombs and monuments of England's greatest men is not unrēasonably regarded by the English as their national Walhalla or Temple of Fame. Close by it, on the left bank of the Thames, stand the gorgeous Houses of Parliament. From here I returned home by the beautiful Victoria Embankments, adorned by Cleopatra's Needle, an obelisk from Alexandria, passed Charing Cross Station and reached the Grand Hotel close by.*

How grand **a** *promenade had I completed! No doubt, the most interesting and most imposing I had ever made in all my life! Never did city make so overpowering* **an** *impression on me. And yet, however magnificent* **a** *round I had just made, I had not the slightest desire of setting out on it again, for I felt extremely tired, hungry, and thirsty. As it was dinner time, which in England is from 5 to 8 p. m. (post meridiem), I went to dinner and satisfied my appetite.*

To-morrow, my first business will be to look about for private lodgings; for to remain at the hotel is quite out of **the**

[1] *Large circular places are called circuses in England, semi-circular ones crescents.*

question; it would be too great **a** *luxury for me. There are very good boarding houses in London, where for* **a** *sum of 30 to 40 s.* **a** *week one may have board and lodging, including breakfast, luncheon, dinner, tea or supper; but then I should sacrifice my liberty and independence which I intend to secure by hiring a private apartment, at least for the first weeks; for I always prefer liberty of movement to comfort. I shall not be at* **a** *loss to find convenient rooms, for notices of 'apartments', 'furnished rooms', and 'rooms to let' are to be seen in the windows of houses where there are any to be had. I have* **a** *mind to take lodgings in the vicinity of the British Museum, where rooms may be had at* **an** *average of 15 to 21 s. (a guinea)* **a** *week, and where breakfast is provided for 6 d. to 1 s.* **a** *day. There I shall be nearest to the centre and to all* **the** *remarkable places of the city.*

But now let me conclude this excessively long letter in writing which, Heaven be thanked, I have quite forgotten my toothache. Please, let me soon hear from you about your doings and send your letters under cover of A. Smith Esq. 19 Bedford Square. With kind regards, believe me ever

Your sincere friend,

James.

Exercises.

1. What streets, places, and bridges of London can you name, and where are they?

2. What public buildings, palaces, and theatres do you know, and where are they situated?

3. What remarkable buildings and places did you observe when passing through the 'Great Thoroughfare'?

4. Form short sentences with the following nouns: first without, and secondly with the definite article:

Gold, lead, iron, beer, water, milk; cow, dog, goose, fish, cat, house, flower; April, spring, Tuesday, liberty, hope.

Example: Gold is very precious — the Gold of Australia —.
Cows are useful animals — the cow gives milk.

5. When do the names of streets, places, bridges, and buildings receive no article? (§ 3 d.) Give examples.

6. After which adjectives is the definite article used? (§ 4.)

7. When is the indefinite article used after the adjective?

8. Complete: [(§ 7 b.)

I go — college; you come — town; we were — church on — Sunday; she was — school; you come — home; I am — home; we like to be — school; he goes — church; our children are — play. He went — court; his sister is — court; we live — town; I shall go — bed; she is — bed; he was put — prison; his brother is already — prison.

4. Antwort.

Berlin, den 29. Juni 1893.

Mein lieber Freund,

Niemals hat mir ein Brief ein solches Vergnügen bereitet* wie der Deinige, den ich vor einer halben Stunde erhalten habe und auf den ich schon manchen Tag gewartet* hatte. Da ich es (mir) zur Regel gemacht habe, alle Briefe sogleich zu beantworten aus Furcht, sie zu vergessen, — denn ich bin ein zu vergeßliches* Menschenkind* — so antworte ich Dir sofort.

Was für ein beneidenswerter Mensch bist Du, das reiche und großartige* London und das stolze und mächtige England zu sehen, von welchem sich die meisten Menschen mit einer Beschreibung* begnügen müssen. Wahrhaftig,* ich kenne kein größeres Glück,* als fremde Länder und Völker mit (my) eigenen Augen studieren zu können! Wie würde ich mich freuen, nur eine halbe Stunde lang (for) auf der Londoner Brücke zu stehen, durch die Oxforder Straße oder die Regent Straße mit Dir als Führer zu wandern, die Westminster Abtei zu besuchen und die St. Pauls Kirche zu bewundern! London muß beim ersten Anblick ganz verwirrend sein. Oh, ich habe große Lust, auch hinüber* zu kommen in der Absicht, das Londoner Leben und Treiben kennen zu lernen. Im Sommer ist's dort am schönsten, wie man sagt; dann ist gerade die sogenannte* Saison; aber dann sind auch die Tage am heißesten. Nur an Sonntagen langweilen* sich die Menschen dort, weil alle Läden und Vergnügungslokale* geschlossen sind. Aber wie wird es im Winter sein? Doch dann bist Du ja wieder zu Hause.

Ist es wahr, daß der Wein in London sehr teuer ist? Rheinwein soll 5 Schillinge die Flasche kosten. Und das Bier ist auch nicht billig, wie ich höre, und sehr stark. Und ist es wahr, daß die Männer in England kräftiger und energischer und die Frauen schöner sind als in Deutschland? Die letzteren haben hier immer das Aussehen der Langeweile* und die ersteren stets guten Appetit. Hat man Dich schon für einen Deutschen gehalten? Hoffentlich* wirst Du kein Engländer in Deinem Wesen,* sondern bleibst ein Deutscher.

Hast Du schon die Königin Viktoria und die Prinzessin Luise gesehen? Vergangene Woche war der Czar von Rußland in Berlin beim Kaiser von Deutschland; auch der Großherzog von Baden und der Herzog von Weimar waren hier. Ich sah sie in der Friedrichsstraße; es war kurz nach dem Frühstück. Ich ging hin in der Absicht, sie zu

sehen. Leider sah ich sie nur in einiger Entfernung. Es standen vielleicht tausend Menschen da. Die Fürsten kamen gerade vom Hofe; die wenigsten Menschen jedoch erkannten sie. Die Pferde vor den Wagen waren fein aufgeschirrt.* Die beiden Monarchen sahen sehr wohl aus; es war ein ganz erhebender Anblick.

Nun noch einige Neuigkeiten, die Dich interessieren werden. Der alte Georg ist gestorben; er war ein so alter Mann, wie ich kaum einen gekannt habe. Der junge Wilhelm, unser Neffe, ist nach Amerika gegangen; es war am Sonntage vor Pfingsten. Der faule Jakob ist im Gefängnisse, und die dumme* Katharine* ist wieder daheim. Der arme Peter ist fast immer im Zorn; er hat stets Zahnschmerzen. Die liebe Tante Marie ist krank, auch der gute Onkel Karl. Die Bücher sind sein einziges Vergnügen; die Bücher von Onkel Karl sind aber auch sehr interessant. Die Gesundheit ist doch (indeed) die größte Wohlthat.* Ich hoffe, sie werden nicht sterben. Doch der Mensch ist sterblich; aber die Menschheit stirbt* nicht aus. Das siehst Du am besten in England und besonders in dem bevölkerten London. Fast hätte ich es vergessen! Der reiche Jude Aron ist Protestant geworden. Was sagst du dazu?

Nun bin ich zu Ende. Im nächsten Monat haben wir Ferien.

Schreibe bald wieder. Lebewohl, mein lieber Freund.

Dein getreuer

Alfred.

Proverbs: Poverty is no crime. — Manners make man. — Custom is second nature. — Prevention is better than cure. — Necessity is the mother of invention. — They will laugh best who laugh last. — Who goes a borrowing, goes a sorrowing. — When need is highest, help is nighest.

Quotations: Heaven from all creatures hides the book of Fate. (Pope.)
Earth has no sorrow that Heaven cannot heal. (Moore).
Hell is paved with good intentions. (Boswell).

Idiomatic Expressions: The soldiers fell to a man (bis auf den letzten Mann).
He was bred a scholar (zu einem Gelehrten erzogen).
To give a person a hearing jemand Gehör geben.

Conundrum: Why is London like the letter E?
(Because it is the capital of England.)

3rd Lesson.

The Substantive: Number.

II, §§ 8—26.

5. A Dinner Party.[1]

Will you kindly excuse me, Madam; I did not catch your name when we were introduced, nor any name of the numerous party present.

Oh! that's usually the case. One generally understands but one name distinctly, and that's one's own. But I know all the people at table and can enlighten you upon their names, families, and business, if you like.

I am very much obliged to you. But allow me to introduce myself once more: my name is Dr. Meyer; I am a German and a professor of languages. As I am only on a short stay in London, I should like to make the most of it by increasing my knowledge of English life and manners.

Well, I will do my best to assist you as much as I can by giving you all desirable information. To begin with myself, I am Mrs. Locksley, the wife of Captain Locksley. That is my husband with the large whiskers, black hair and mustachios at the other end of the table.

But why does your husband not wear his regimentals being an officer?

It is not the custom in England for officers to wear their regimentals when off service, as your German officers do.

Does Captain Locksley serve in the infantry or in the cavalry?

He is in the horse, but formerly he served in the line. Within a few days, he will return to his colours. The two gentlemen next to the mistress of the house, Mrs. Dawson, our kind hostess, are two Chinese, with very curious eyes and names; they are attached to the Chinese embassy. In fact, our varied company represents almost all the upper ranks of society: the nobility, the gentry, the clergy, the representatives of arts, learning, commerce, and industry. There is a duke and a duchess, a baron and a baroness, a baronet, two clergymen — those two gentlemen with their backs turned to the windows — a celebrated actor, Mr. Booth, endowed with excellent parts, and a famous actress; two learned Germans — the gentleman with the gold spectacles on his

[1] Several deviations from the strict rules of an English private dinner could not be avoided for the sake of grammatical illustrations.

nose is a countryman of yours; two Frenchmen talking politics, the one a professor of physics, the other of mathemátics; a Spaniard, the commander of the Spanish fleet lying in the harbour of Portsmouth with fifteen sail and sixty cannon[1]; two Portuguese, who make no progress whatever in English, and two Swiss, whose business I do not know. Dr. Dawson sits at the lower end of the table.

But who are the two young people at the opposite side of the table, who look so bright and happy?

They are a newly married couple[2], a bride and bridegroom. The young husband is one of the Brothers Cooper who do a large business in silks, cloths, and cottons. The goods of the Coopers are said to be excellent.

And who is yonder gentleman with the jovial face somewhat pitted with the small-pox?

That elderly gentleman is a partner in the firm of Messrs. Wright and Sons, who transact immense business in Indian spices and Spanish wines. He has more wit than he has hair, and more riches than requirements. His favourite saying is: without pains no gains, and I think he took much pains in his youth. By this means he has acquired great wealth. His few hairs are grey now. He is a bachelor and, though about three score years old, always in high spirits; and yet he takes none. He gives many a ten-pound note to the poor, and keeps his carriage and pair.

But please, Madam, you must not forget your dinner. May I pour you out a glass of claret[3]?

No, thank you, I don't like French wines. I prefer a glass of Hock. — Many thanks.

Can I offer you some veal-cutlets or mutton-chop?

No, thank you, Sir; I should rather like a slice of roast-beef with some gravy. It seems to be a splendid joint.[4]

How do you like it, Madam, overdone or underdone?

Well done, if you please; but not too much. — But you have helped me too abundantly; I have but a small appetite. May I trouble you for the salt and pepper?

With great pleasure; here is the cruet-stand and the

[1] The proper term would be 'guns' being the armament of a ship.

[2] As a rule, a bride and bridegroom do not sit together at private dinners in England.

[3] It is the office of the servants waiting at table to fill the glasses, and that of the host or hostess of filling the plates of their guests, whilst the servants have to hand them round.

[4] A large piece of meat with bones, commonly beef, served whole on the English table (though not at dinner parties).

mustard-pot; and here is also the Worcester-sauce, if you like cóndiments.

Not so much as English people generally do; yet I am very fond of mixed-pickles.

Here they are. Would you like anything besides?

No, thank you, you are very obliging. How do you like English cooking?

To tell you the truth, not very much. What I find fault with is the want of seasoning, and I don't like to be obliged to season the dishes myself, the vegetables in particular. However, I right willingly acknowledge that your meat and your fish are excellent.

You are right. And this may also be one of the reasons why English people live mostly on meat. They eat the flesh of cattle, called beef, the flesh of calves, called veal, the flesh of sheep, called mutton, the flesh of swine, called pork, and the flesh of deer, called venison.

This double denomination is very curious. Yet listen, I think our host and hostess are toasted and we'll have to drink their healths.

So, indeed, they are. They celebrate the anniversary of their wedding, you know. Many happy returns to them of this day! —

From what I have seen, there must be great poverty and misery in London by the side of enormous wealth.

You are not mistaken, Sir. The miseries and distresses of the poor folks in London, particularly in the East End, are beyond description, especially in winter, when the rains, the colds, and the snows bring on diseases and calamities of all sorts, and when labour and victuals are scarce and wages low. Thousands of families lead most miserable lives, wanting even the commonest necessaries of life; deaths and crimes increase in a frightful measure, whilst morals sink to their lowest ebb.

Would not alms be a good means of alleviating the sufferings of the poor people?

Only to a certain extent. The best means of improving their conditions, to my mind, is to afford them work and education.

This seems to me very good advice; and I full well agree with you. But good advice is sooner given than followed, you know. — May I help you to something else, some steak with fried potatoes, or some roast fowl with salad?

No, thank you very much; I do not care for fowl. Yet would you favour me with a little pie? Is it rabbit-pie or kidney-pie?

It is neither; it is an excellent chicken-pie.

Then I will thank you for a little of it. That will do; thank you. But pray, help yourself. There seems to be an excellent apple-tart and also a cherry-pie. Do you like fruit?

I like all the produce of the orchard. But I shall take a slice of plum-pudding, the favourite English dish; would you kindly pass it to me? — Much obliged. — Oh! it is delicious!

And now for the dessért with the sweet-meats! But I dare say, you don't care for our English sweet-things; for I know from experience that you Germans are quite ahead of us in this line. Here are little cakes of chocolate, biscuits, and ginger-bread; and there are also fine nuts and raisins. Please, will you hand me the nut-crackers? — Thanks.

Would you like to take a cup of coffee? [1]

Thank you. — But it is rather too strong for me and not sweet enough.

Here is the sugar-basin with a pair of very nice tongs; and here is a tea spoon. As for me, I shall take a small glass of brandy with it, according to the French habit.

Tastes are different; do as you please. — I think dinner is finished, and we ladies shall withdraw to the drawing-room, whilst you gentlemen will have a smoke, a cigar, a cigarette or a pipe of tobacco, somewhere. Good bye!

Exercises.

1. What is the Plural of *grotto*, *potato*, *motto*, *genius*, *radius*, *triumvir*, *seraph*, *beau*, *erratum*, *Swiss* and *Portuguese?*
2. What nouns have the same form in the Singular as in the Plural? (§ 11.)
3. What nouns have a double form in the Plural and what are the two meanings? (§ 10.)
4. Form the Plural of *apple-tart*, *ginger-bread*, *chicken-pie*, *cruet-stand*, *Mussulman*, *banditto*, *small-pox*, *advice*.
5. What is the meaning of *fruit*, *fish*, *hair*, *people* in the Plural? (§ 14.)
6. Mention some substantives that are only used in the Plural. (§§ 18 a & b & 20.)
7. Mention some others that have a different meaning in the Plural from that in the Singular. (§ 19.)
8. What nouns of materials and what abstract nouns can be used in the Plural and when? (§§ 21 & 22.)

[1] Coffee is generally not taken until the ladies have withdrawn.

9. What nouns have no Plural? (§ 24.)

10. What nouns used collectively in the Singular form regular Plurals? (§ 26.)

11. Turn into English:

Hier sind ein paar Schafe. Er hat nur ein Paar Schuhe. Diese Ware wiegt zehn Pfund und kostet fünfzehn Schillinge. Die Flotte hat zwölf Segelschiffe und zwanzig Kanonen. Das Fußvolk war in großer Überzahl gegenüber der Reiterei. Fünf Dutzend Strümpfe kosten zwei Pfund fünf Schillinge. Die Gebrüder Schmidt. Die beiden Fräulein Weiß. Herr Hauptmann Braun. Frau Dr. Müller. Ihre Frau Gemahlin. Hier ist eine Wage. Seine Kenntnisse sind groß. Das ist eine gute Nachricht. Das Publikum ist selten zufrieden. Wir schüttelten den Kopf.

6. Etwas über England und die Engländer.

Der Geschmack (pl.) und die Sitten der Engländer sind sehr verschieden von denen der Deutschen und der Franzosen. Schon ihre Kleider sind verschiedenartig gemacht; besonders aber werden ihre Lebensmittel, die verschiedenen Fleischarten, wie Ochsen-, Hammel-, Schweine- und Kalbfleisch, ja (nay) selbst Geflügel, Fische und Gemüse, wie Erbsen und Bohnen und sonstige* Produkte des Gartens, anders zubereitet. Das Fleisch der Rinder, der Schafe, der Schweine und Kälber ist aber auch viel besser als bei (with) uns. Die Leute, selbst die Armen, essen viel Fleisch in England und machen Gebrauch von allerlei Gewürzen. Ihre Früchte sind auch sehr schön.

Letzthin* war ich bei Herrn Professor Ward zum Besuch und traf dort auch die Herren Webster, die sehr schöne Geschäfte machen und eine hübsche Wohnung auf dem Lande haben. Herr Professor Ward ist ein Mann von hohen Fähigkeiten und ein feiner Witzbold. Die geladene Gesellschaft war in froher Laune; es war eine sehr hübsche Gesellschaft. Man sprach von allerlei Dingen, von den Fortschritten, welche die Wissenschaften in dem letzten Jahrhundert in England gemacht haben, besonders die Staatswissenschaft, die Mathematik, die Physik und die Optik, von der Industrie, welche besonders in der Bearbeitung von Baumwollen-, Seiden- und Tuchwaren große Vervollkommnung erreicht* hat, wodurch der Wohlstand* des Volkes sehr zugenommen hat. Nicht nur der englische Adel ist sehr begütert, sondern auch das Landvolk ist sehr wohlhabend in England.

Als wir aber auf das Elend, die Not, die Trübsale und Leiden der armen Leute und die vielen Krankheiten und Todesfälle unter ihnen zu sprechen kamen, wurden wir ernst* und besprachen* die Mittel, wie ihren Leiden, Schmerzen und Entbehrungen* abzuhelfen sei. Meine Befürchtungen sind, daß diese Trübsale, trotz* aller Mühen, immer bleiben werden.

Proverbs: Every country has its customs. — No news is good news. Alms are the salt of riches. — The end justifies the means (one of the worst maxims). — Seeming calamities may be real blessings. — Good clothes open all doors. — Fools make feasts, and wise man eat them. — Gray hairs are death's blossoms.

Quotations: People seldom know their own minds. (Prior.)
Knowledge is power. (Milton.)
She has more hair than wit and more faults than hairs. (Shakespeare.)

Idiomatic Expressions: Go about your business / Mind your own business } Kümmere dich um deine eigenen Sachen.
To be out of one's wits von Sinnen sein.
His manners bespeak the gentleman seine Manieren verraten den gebildeten Mann.
There is a ship in full sail (mit vollen Segeln).

Conundrum: Do black or white sheep eat most?
(White ones, because there are more of them.)

III. Reader Nr. 11—14.

4th Lesson.

The Substantive: Cases.

II, §§ 27—44.

7. The Parks of London; the Zoological Gardens.

What shall we see to-day? The weather is the finest I have had since my arrival in the city of London.

If you like, let us have a walk through some of our London parks; the day is very favourable to it.

Much obliged to you for the idea. It quite answers my purpose; for to judge from what I have already seen of them on my first ramble, they must be well worth seeing.

I should think so. Our London parks, such at least is my opinion, are quite superior to anything of the kind in the world. Nowhere have I found such extensive and beautiful parks, open to the public, within the precincts of a city. In a sanitary point of view, they may be considered as "the lungs of London". They are nine in number:

Hyde Park with *Kensington Gardens*, *Regent's Park* with the *Zoological Gardens*, commonly called "the Zoo" by the Londoners, *Green Park*, and *St. James's Park*, in the west of London; *Finsbury Park* in the west, *Victoria Park* in the east, and *Battersea*, *Southwark*, and *Kensington Parks* in the south of the Thames. However, for our to-day's excursion, we shall confine ourselves to the two largest and finest of them, viz. *Regent's Park* and *Hyde Park*, of which the latter is generally regarded as the more fashionable; whilst I prefer Regent's Park to the former from its having very fine woods and green lawns that give at once beauty and variety to the landscape, and from its containing the *Zoological Gardens* which offer great enjoyment and instruction to the public This park was laid out during King George III.'s reign and named after the Prince Regent, afterwards George IV. It covers 472 acres of ground.

By this time we have got to the end of *Tottenham Court Road*. Now let us turn to the left into *Euston Road*, which leads us to the *Park Square* whence we enter the *Broad Walk* of Regent's Park.

What beautiful flowers! And what a splendid avenue of chestnut trees!

Here, to the left, are the *Botanic Gardens* with well kept flower-beds. Seldom have I seen so many rare plants gathered in so small a compass. And here are the pleasure-grounds. They are quite crowded. There are some boys that fly a kite, others fly a balloon. Up flies the balloon! Away run the boys, shouting merrily!

What sheet of water is that I perceive through the trees?

It is a small artificial lake with islands and rustic bridges where people go a rowing. Look at the two boats! They have a boat-race. Hallo! The one boat has turned! Down go the rowers! There comes the keeper! Look, he has saved them already! Scarcely had they time to get wet when they were rescued.

Well, little did I think I should assist at such a spectacle; never shall I forget it! Now all the people crowd around them, probably to assist them.

Let us go on! Now we approach the Zoological Gardens; we hear it from the noise the wild beasts are making. Let us enter it through the Main Entrance in the Outer Circle. Here, to the right, is the *Aviary*, which is 170 feet long and contains 200 different species of birds, chiefly from Australia, the Indian Archipelago, and South

America. And here are the crows and the storks; on this side the way are also the peacocks and the variegated species of pheasants. Are they not splendid? And are the places not very spacious to which they are confined?

Yes, they are and thus afford them great liberty of movement.

I wonder if they feel happy in their confinement!

I doubt of it; for I don't think they would be very fond of it, were they but conscious of it! For no creature feels happy deprived of its liberty.

What amusing and nimble fellows these apes are! It is great fun to look at their gambols. Give them some sweetmeats! Oh! how jealous they are of each other, and how envious of every tit-bit you offer them! No sooner do you throw down the bits than the chase begins. Look, the younger always yield to the older. — Here sits one by himself; it is an old baboon. Give him a lump of sugar, please! Do you see with what air of satisfaction he munches it?

And look, what a fine fellow this orang-outang is! He reminds me very much of an old acquaintance of mine whom he resembles in a striking manner.

I dare say, this acquaintance of yours would be much flattered, could he but hear you. But come along, please, to the cranes and thence to the water-fowl. The number of the different species amounts to about fifty. Aren't these flamingoes and herons very odd-looking birds? — Now let us follow this keeper to the Lion-House, over which he has lately been appointed overseer. We pass by the ántilopes and gazélles, those graceful animals. And here is the sea-lion's pond. He is fed with fish. The keeper throws some white-bait to him. How cleverly he catches them with his mouth. — — —

Did you speak to the keeper? And what did you ask him?

I asked him when the lions were fed. He was very civil to me and told me that the feeding hour for all the carnivora or beasts of prey was at four p. m. (post meridiem). So we have plenty of time yet. Then let us go to the sheepsheds first.

Look, here are some splendid ones with blue fleeces! Read the tablet! "Burrhel or blue wild sheep from the Himálayas." Now isn't that a curious animal!

Shall I now show you the various deer and cattle?

If you like! I don't object to it — There are beautiful specimens of stags with splendid antlers, of hinds and roes, and fallow-deer with dappled skins.

Do you hear the lions roar? It is four o'clock; let us go. Oh, mercy! what terrible fierce-looking animals! And what fine manes the lions have!

Good gracious, what strong jaws! They crush the largest bones like so much tinder.

And here are the tigers. They are royal tigers from Bengal, and esteemed the largest and fiercest of their kind. How sleek and supple they are! They are pacing round their cell in a restless and uneasy manner awaiting their time to be fed. — How many miles must they walk in the day?

There comes the keeper with the flesh stuck on an iron pole! He does not seem to be very prodigal of it. What a frightful growl! Now they crouch on the ground to devour their bloody meal.

Are you afraid of them?

I really should be, were I not sure they are secured in iron cages. But I shudder at the sight of them. Do they not get excited at so many people?

I think not, for they are quite used to it. But please, come along now, there is much to be seen yet and time is on the wing. Should you like to see the reptiles?

Oh dear, no! I have a horror of snakes and reptiles of all kind. Their sight causes me more disgust than interest.

Then follow me to the birds of prey, the eagles, vultures, hawks, kites, and owls. Here is also the Fish-House with a fine collection of fish and aquatic birds.

I wonder what these curious birds may be called.

I am sorry to say I am unable to tell you. But here is the lama. It looks quite harmless, but I warn you of it; it is a perfidious animal and spits in your face when you approach it too much. Do you see that clock-tower? At the side of it stands the Cámel House. We pass through this archway. Enter the house!

What awfully ugly, ill-favoured creatures they are! And yet, they are said to be the most useful animals in their native land.

There you see what it is to judge from appearances. Not far off are the bears and hyēnas, and close by is the bear-pit which we must not forget to visit.

I hate hyenas! They are disgusting beasts with wicked eyes and ruffianly appearance. Could they only be

exterminated from the surface of the earth together with all the jáckals, wolves, and foxes! Their frightful howling is painful to me.

Then come away to the bears' pit! Are they not very droll fellows these bears?

Yes, they are, and very nimble too, in spite of their plump bodies, in climbing up and down that tree. When they are on the top, they always gape to be fed. Throw some bread to that old fellow! I'll drop some down to the others.

There is a band playing. Shall we listen to the music awhile? And are you not desirous of a little rest?

If you like, let us take some refreshments meanwhile in the refreshment room which offers us a welcome opportunity for rest. —

If you are ready now, let us move on. We must go through that tunnel which leads under the road.

These parrots make an awful noise.

Then let us go to the kangaroos and the sloths; they won't torment your ears. How funny it is to see their young ones jump in the old kangaroo's pouch!

And here you see the most interesting inmates of the Gardens, the manlike apes. That chimpanzee is said to be very clever; she does everything the keeper tells her to do. Chimpanzees often die of consumption here owing to the harshness of the clime. And now, we shall see the biggest mammalia, the elephants and rhinoceroses. Here is the dear, old elephant already stretching out his trunk. He is sure to know me again. He wants something to eat. Let us give him a big piece of bread!

My goodness! It has disappeared as it were in a gulf. Had I some more, I should give it to him!

I consider him the most intelligent elephant existing. He is very much attached to his keeper and attentive to his words. This is owing to the kind treatment which he receives, and so he is never ill-tempered to anybody. I don't think any other city can boast of such a beautiful specimen.

Here, in this yard, are rēindeer from Lapland and Labradór, and farther on we reach the Brazilian tapir and the hippopotamus, one of the ugliest and most repulsive wild beasts. And there you see the giráffes with their long, arched necks and dignified countenances.

This one looks particulary grave; shall I give a piece of biscuit to him?

You are not allowed to do so; do you not see the notice? "Visitors are requested not to feed the giráffes".

Oh, thank you; I was not aware of it. Then we must abstain from our liberality. Could you explain to me why the limbs of these animals are quite out of proportion? Look at their long necks and then at their short tails, and then compare their fore-legs to their hind-legs! Aren't these curious freaks of nature?

As for their long necks, I think they want them for plucking leaves and fruit from the trees for their food. But as for the shortness of their tails and hind-legs I am unable to find any reason for it.

Now for a final look at the zebras, those wild and vicious animals, and at the óstriches and cássiowaries with their high legs and small, funny heads.

We shall be through in five minutes.

I am very glad of it, for I am awfully tired of walking.

Then we could not do better than to take a cab to drive us to Hyde Park. However, we can have but a general view of it to-day And in driving I shall describe to you what we see.

By all means! There is a cab-stand. Coachman, to Hyde Park!

Now tell me, please, did you enjoy your walk?

Most emphatically. I really must declare I thoroughly enjoyed this afternoon's walk. It has procured me great pleasure and added vastly to my knowledge of the animal world. Your Zoological Gardens are unmatched, and I must pronounce them the finest I have ever seen or heard of.

I am proud of your praise. Here we are in *Edgeware Road*, and now we pass through the *Marble Arch* and enter the *Ring*. Not many years ago, flocks of sheep were grazing and corn was grown in some parts of the park. Now we approach *Kensington Gardens* with their wonderfully fine trees and shady walks and avenues. In that direction, towards the west, lies *Kensington Palace*, an old royal residence and Queen Victoria's birth-place. There, to the south, you perceive the *Royal Albert Hall*, a vast amphitheatre destined for concerts, and scientific and art assemblies, holding 8000 people comfortably. A little further to the south is the *South-Kensington Museum* highly interesting for its objects of science and art. Be sure to go and visit it some day. To the left, you see the *Albert Memorial*, a

magnificent monument erected in remembrance of Albert, the late Prince Consort. It is adorned with reliefs in marble representing artists of every period, and with four marble groups at the four angles. The beautiful riding path running parallel to the road, we are driving along, the *Queen's Drive,* is the famous *Rotten Row (route du roi),* where numerous ladies and cavaliers parade their spirited, high-bred horses before the admiring crowd sitting or walking at the sides, especially from 12 to 2 o'clock. On fine days there is nothing comparable to this splendid sight. Here we are at *Hyde Park Corner* und thus ends our to-day's excursion.

Exercises.

1. What are the names of the various parks in London?

2. Under whose reign was Regent's Park laid out and after whom was it named?

3. Name some beasts and birds of prey in the Zoological Garden.

4. What do you know of Kensington Palace, the Royal Albert Hall, South-Kensington Museum, the Albert Memorial, and of Rotten-Row?

5. When does the Inversion in English sentences take place? Form Examples.

6. Mention verbs that govern a double objective case and form sentences with them (§ 29). Change them into the Passive Voice.

7. Which verbs may be used transitively and intransitively (§ 30); give examples.

8. Name verbs governing a dative and an objective case (§ 32) and form examples:

a. using the dative, b. the objective case in the first place:

(Example: He procured us the money — he procured the money to us.)

9. Which verbs must always be followed by the preposition **to**? (§ 35) Form a few sentences.

10. Name some adjectives followed a. by the preposition **to,** b. by the preposition **of,** and give a few examples of sentences.

11. After which nouns and denominations must **of** be used

12. Change into the Passive Voice, making

a. the objective, b. the dative case, the subject of the sentence in the Passive Mood:

The monkey-house affords me great pleasure. You told him the truth. The keeper allows me to feed the animals. He refused us the entrance to the aviary. He promised her a visit to the Zoological Garden. We forgive them their faults. A bell announces to the people the closing of the gardens.

13. Turn into English:

Er teilte mir seine Ankunft mit. Wir gaben ihm nach. Achte auf seine Worte! Das ist wesentlich für die Sache. Er wandte sich an meinen Vater. Sie beschrieb mir ihre Krankheit. Horche auf ihn! Sie stand den Armen bei. Dieses Fürwort bezieht sich auf das Objekt. Ich erwiederte ihm, daß ich kommen würde. Wir schrieben es seiner Unwissenheit* zu. Manche Tiere sind anhänglich an die Menschen. Er antwortete auf meinen Brief. Wir müssen uns daran gewöhnen. Er schmeichelte dem Kinde. Es kommt einen Tag um den andern. Er ist ein Diener* der Kirche. Dies ist der Bruder des Herzogs. Er ist ein Feind der Schmeichelei. Sie ist stolz auf ihre Schönheit. Ich verzweifle an seiner Besserung.* Die Vergnügungen der Reichen. Die Festung Torgau. Der Berg Ätna. Wie viele Tage liegen zwischen vorgestern und übermorgen?

8. Hampton Court, Richmond und Kew.

Heute ist Sonntag und mit (the) Ausnahme der Kirchen ist alles geschlossen in London, selbst die Museen. Derartig ist die Sonntagsfeier* in England. Darum halte ich es für das beste, Hampton Court, Richmond Park und den Kew Gärten einen Besuch zu machen, die ich Ihnen gern zeigen möchte. In Hampton Court ist es uns erlaubt, die Gemälde-Gallerie zu besuchen, und in Kew die Treibhäuser und das Palmenhaus anzusehen. Auch das Wetter ist sehr günstig dafür. Hampton liegt kaum in drei Meilen Entfernung von hier. Willigen Sie in meinen Vorschlag* ein?

Mit dem größten Vergnügen. Ich bin Ihnen sehr verbunden. Nebenbei gesagt* ist dieser Widerspruch* in den Sonntags-Gebräuchen* sehr charakteristisch für die englische Religiosität.* Wir Continentalen* beneiden sie nicht darum. Diese Bräuche,* um nicht zu sagen Mißbräuche,* rühren gewiß noch von den Puritanern* her.

Ich zweifle nicht daran. Doch welchen Weg sollen wir gehen? Es giebt verschiedene. Da sind die Südwestern und die Unterirdische Eisenbahn, der Omnibus und das Dampfboot.* Neulich bin ich mit dem Dampfer gefahren. Der letztere gewährt uns einen besseren Blick auf die Themse-Ufer. Der Themse-Fluß ist dort am schönsten.

Die Wahrheit zu sagen, (so) ziehe ich auch das Dampfboot allen andern Gelegenheiten vor; doch schlage ich Ihnen vor,

hinwärts* bis Richmond die Bahn zu benützen, und heimwärts,* wenn wir dann müde vom Gehen sind, mit (by) dem Boote zu fahren.*

Ich halte das für einen ausgezeichneten Plan und habe nichts dagegen einzuwenden . . .

Hier ist Hampton Court. Der Palast wurde unter Heinrichs des Achten Regierung von Kardinal Wolsey gebaut, der ihn später dem Könige anbot. Der Palast ist dem Publikum täglich von 12 Uhr an geöffnet, Sonntags erst von 2 Uhr an. Dann müssen wir eilen. Drinnen sind viele schöne Gemälde, besonders von italienischen Meistern. Nahe bei dem Palast ist ein schöner Garten. Dort ist auch ein Labyrinth,* das wir aus Mangel an Zeit nicht besuchen können.

Richmond ist ein beliebter* Sommer-Ausflugsort* der Londoner. Wir nähern uns dem Orte; er liegt reizend am Abhange* eines Hügels, von welchem man eine schöne Aussicht auf die Themse genießt. Zu König Heinrich VIII. Zeiten war auch ein Schloß da, das im Jahre 1648 zerstört wurde.

Dort lassen mehrere Knaben einen Drachen* steigen. Er fliegt auf! Er kommt wieder herab!

Nehmen wir den Tramway, um nach Kew zu fahren! Niemals sah ich so frischen, grünen Rasen.* Die schönen botanischen Gärten sind dem Publikum täglich unentgeltlich* geöffnet von Mittag bis Sonnenuntergang.* Nichts ist ihnen vergleichbar; ich muß sie wirklich für die schönsten erklären, die ich je gesehen habe. Und dort liegen die Gewächshäuser.* Geradeaus liegt das Palmhaus.* Meiner Meinung nach ist es allen ähnlichen* Häusern überlegen. Nirgends habe ich so prächtige Palmen gesehen.

Was liegt dort? — Es ist der Kew-Palast, Georg III. und Königin Charlottens Lieblingsaufenthalt.* Es ist ein roter Backstein*-Bau. —

Nun lassen Sie uns eine Zeit lang hier ausruhen! Sind Sie zufrieden mit unserem Nachmittagsausfluge? Im höchsten Grade (most emphatically).

Proverbs: Out of debt, out of danger. — Out of sight, out of mind. Praise a fair day at night. — A bird in the hand is worth two in the bush. — Who makes himself a sheep, the wolf devours him. — Do not sell the bear's skin before you have caught him.

Idiomatic Expressions: To take the bull by the horns.
To kill two birds with one stone.
By hook or by crook es mag biegen oder brechen.

Conundrum: Why does a donkey prefer thistles to corn?

(Because he is an ass.)

5th Lesson.

The Adjective.

II, §§ 45—59.

9. Westminster Abbey, Westminster Hall, and Westminster Palace.

The foundation of Westminster Abbey, the Pantheon of English glory, may be ascribed to Edward the Confessor (1042—1066), but its present construction dates from the reigns of Henry the Third (1216—1272) and his son Edward the First (1272—1307), although important alterations and additions have been made in the succeeding centuries. It is built in the Gothic style in the form of a Latin cross. Its total length is 513 ft., the length of the transept or cross-aisle 200 ft., the breadth of the nave and aisles 75 ft., the height of the church 102 ft., the towers are 225 ft. high.

On entering the interior, the Abbey does not seem so large as might be expected from the outer proportions: a heavy iron screen, with the organ over it, divides it across the middle. And nevertheless, we are struck with wonder at the harmonious beauty and imposing magnitude of the sacred place. The lofty roof, the high rising clustering pillars with gracefully vaulted arches, the richness of colouring, the gloom, the stillness and vastness of the holy building impress our minds with the wonderfully combined effects of the sublime, the mysterious and the beautiful.

This highly interesting monument of architecture grows in interest when we call to mind its sacred destination as the great national mausoleum, the burial-place of England's worthies. For here lie mingled in the dust the best and greatest of the nation, the good, the wise, the brave, and the heroic; here they are peacefully asleep whose lives were taken up with care and trouble, toil and restlessness; here, unlike in the past, they are all alike in death, equals in the present, in the future, in eternity. Here Christians and Jews, Protestants, and Catholics, Lutherans, Calvinists, and Puritans, divines and sages, princes, statesmen, warriors, poets, artists, the pride and honour of the country, have found their final resting-place, the last and greatest honour which England can bestow upon the most deserving of her children.

Yet all who are lying here are not worthy of the great honour bestowed upon them: there are many nobo-

dies interred in this hallowed spot, whose space should have been left for their betters, the great men of the future, especially as the room is growing lesser more and more.

The numerous and diverse monuments erected in memory of the dead do not always imply interment in the Abbey; many of them are but cénotaphs, the ashes of their illustrious deceased being buried elsewhere. Some of the marble monuments are most beautiful, others of a decidedly bad taste, some even perfectly hideous and shocking. The worst of this class are those that represent Death in a horrible attitude, inspiring the beholder with terror and dismay rather than with comfort and resignation. A great number are of the allegorical sort, being adorned with figures personifying virtues which are ascribed to the deceased, as Prudence, Fortitude, Sincerity, Truth, Moderation and so on. To observe all these monuments quite closely would be a task too long and tedious to be accomplished on a single visit. Worthy of note is that of Isaac Newton; his figure reposes on a black sarcóphagus beside which are two small genii unfolding a scroll. Here is also the fine monument of George Frederick Händel, the great composer of religious music, who was not a native of England but of Germany. His life-size statue is surrounded by music and instruments; above, among the clouds, is a heavenly choir, in the background an organ.

Most attractive for visitors is the well-known Poets' Corner in the South transept, where the great poets and sages of the country lie buried, or where cénotaphs commemorate their names. Here the stranger "lingers as about the tombs of friends and companions", and, not to disturb their rest, speaks soft and low, or hardly whispers in reading their names and epitaphs.

The first really great English poet that was buried here, was Geoffrey Chaucer († 1400), called "the Father of English poetry", the author of the 'Canterbury Tales'. Hard by lies Edmund Spenser, the poet of the 'Faery Queen', and the friend of the great, who, after a life of ease and honour, died poor and forgotten in a narrow lane of London in 1599.

Among the many memorials, statues, busts, portraits, medallions, or simple slabs with inscriptions, that of William Shakespeare first attracts our attention. Here before his statue, placed on a pédestal, we stop short for a while to contemplate in silent admiration the sympathétic

features of this poet of poets whose name shines brightest in dramatic poetry, and who will occupy the foremost rank for centuries to come by his master pieces, in which he has left to posterity "whole treasures of wisdom, bright gems of thought, and golden veins of language."

It is a strange fact that the ashes of England's two greatest poets have not found a resting-place in Westminster Abbey: Shakespeare lies buried in the parish church of his native place, in Stratford-on-Avon, according to his last will, and the remains of Lord Byron were not deemed worthy of this great honour; they are interred in his family vault at Newstead Abbey. Of these two eminent poets Shakespeare, however, was the greater.

From the Poets' Corner we continue our way to the Chapels which contain the sēpulchres and effigies of kings and queens, princes and warriors in full armour, including crusaders with their legs crossed, in token of their holy profession, of prelates with crosiers and mitres, of nobles in robes and coronets, even of high-born children who died young.

The inner part is occupied by the Chapel of Edward the Confessor. Here are to be seen the old and the new coronation chairs, the former containing the famous stone of Scone, traditionally said to be the one which the patriarch Jacob used as a pillow, on which later the old Scottish kings were crowned, and which, in 1297, was brought to England by Edward III., in token of the complete subjugation of Scotland.

A flight of stairs leads us right up to Henry the Seventh's Chapel the fame of which is widely spread. The magnificent gates of brass are wide open; a sight of utmost splendour astonishes our eyes, and though we have been prepared by its worldwide fame, it does not fall short of our expectation. Its chief glory is the uppermost part, the exquisitely wrought stone ceiling, "the fretted roof achieved with wonderful minuteness and the airy security of a cobweb".

On either side of the chapel are the lofty choir-stalls, richly carved in dark oak and adorned with the armorial bearings of the Knights of the Bath to whom they are apprópriated. Above them are affixed the helmets, the swords, and the silk scarfs and banners of the knights. In the midst fo the mausoleum stands the sepulchre of its founder, Henry the Seventh (1485—1509).

In the two small niches on each side of this gorgeous chapel are the sepulchres of the two rival queens, Queen Elisabeth of England and Mary, Queen of Scots. At the latter tomb we stand silent for some time to revolve in our minds "the chequered and disastrous story of poor Mary", who, in her youth, lived happy at the court of France, and was to die condemned and miserable on a scaffold in England by order of her cruel enemy, the haughty and jealous Elisabeth, in 1597. And yet, at no time the genius of Great Britain shone out fuller and brighter than under the reign of this great Queen.

Thus having accomplished our visit to this most memorable building, we may, if we have time enough, still cast a passing look first at **Westminster Hall** and then at **Westminster Palace**, both situated close by on the banks of the Thames. The former is a great deal older than the latter and part of the ancient **Palace of Westminster**, founded by the Anglo-Saxon kings, and rich in historical interests. It is 290 ft. long, 68 ft. deep, and 92 ft. high and, besides, a wonder of architecture, its immense roof being unsupported by pillars. Here the English kings gave their coronation feasts; here Richard II., who rebuilt it, was deposed; here Charles I. was condemned to death, and here, a few years afterwards, Oliver Cromwell, his powerful enemy, was proclaimed Lord Protector. Eight years afterwards, his head was publicly exposed on the pinnacles of the same Hall where it remained for thirty years until, at last, it was blown down by a storm.

Now Westminster Hall only forms a vestibule to **Westminster Palace** or the Houses of Parliament into which we get access by a porch. It is one of the largest buildings in the world and contains 1100 apartments. Here the English Parliament, consisting of the House of Lords and the House of Commons, hold their sittings from February or March till August. We first visit the House of Lords or the Upper House which is sumptuously decorated, and then, passing through the Central Hall, to the House of Commons or the Lower House, handsomely fitted up with oak-panelling. We issue by the Clock-Tower with its large clock, known as "Big Ben", and thence take our way to **Westminster Bridge** which affords an admirable view of the river and the Houses of Parliament, the exterior of which is no less imposing than its interior.

Exercises.

1. Name instances in which the adjective qualified by an adverb is placed before the noun (§ 48).

2. Form examples of adjectives used
 a. as abstract nouns,
 b. as generic names in the plural.

3. Give a few participles used as substantives.

4. Name adjectives which, when employed as substantives, take the sign of the plural (§ 55).

5. Name others only used as nouns in the plural (§ 56).

6. What nouns can be employed as adjectives without changing their form? (§ 57).

7. Complete by adding adjectives and substantives:

This chapel looks —. These monuments appear —. We grew — with —. His name shines — in history. Many a name remains —. Not all the great are deemed —. We stood — at his —. He lived — and died —; now he lies — in this place. He fell —.

8. Turn into English:

Keine noch so schwere Arbeit war ihm zu viel. Ich habe viel Schönes gesehen. Mir ist wohl. Er starb allein; er allein starb. Ich habe nie ein so prächtiges Denkmal gesehen. Ich wünsche dir alles Gute. Drei Millionen sechs tausend acht hundert und sieben und vierzig. Zwei Millionen Soldaten. Tausende starben auf dem Schlachtfelde. London, den 12. Februar 1893.

10. Der Krystallpalast.

Dieser Palast ist ein höchst merkwürdiges Bauwerk,* vielleicht eines der interessantesten der Welt. Es liegt auf einem etwas erhöhten Punkte* bei Sydenham, ungefähr sieben Meilen von London gegen Südosten. Das Gebäude verdankt sein Dasein* der großen Ausstellung* von 1851 in Hyde Park, aus deren Materialien* es hauptsächlich* hergestellt* ist. Es ist ungefähr 1600 Fuß lang, 390 Fuß breit und im mittleren* Querschiff nahezu 200 Fuß hoch, und besteht aus einer geräumigen* Halle oder Schiff mit seitlichen* Abteilungen,* zwei Seitenschiffen und drei Querschiffen, von denen eines im Jahre 1866 niedergebrannt ist. Das Ganze ist mit einem hoch gewölbten Glasdache bedeckt, das auf kühn* geschwungenen eisernen Bogen ruht. Doch was noch merkwürdiger ist, ist die Thatsache,* daß das Ganze nur ein aus Glas und Eisen bestehendes Bauwerk ist, daher* der Name Krystallpalast. An den beiden Enden desselben befinden sich zwei 200 Fuß

hohe Wassertürme, von deren höchstem Punkte man eine prächtige Aussicht genießt.

Das Innere ist mit Statuen, Pflanzen und Marmor-* Springbrunnen geschmückt.* In den seitlichen Abteilungen befinden sich äußerst interessante und lehrreiche Sammlungen,* welche die Skulptur und Architektur der verschiedenen Länder und Zeitalter,* der Alten wie der Neueren, beleuchten,* wie die griechische, römische, egyptische, assyrische,* pompejanische,* sarazenische,* romantische,* byzantische* und mittelalterliche* Kunst, die italienische, deutsche, französische und englische Schule. Hier ist viel Schönes zu sehen; jedoch alle Einzelheiten zu nennen, würde eine zu langwierige* Aufgabe sein. Es sind auch zwei Gallerien darinnen, die erste mit Gemälden und Photographien,* die obere mit verschiedenen Rohprodukten.*

Sehenswert* sind auch der Park und die rund herum liegenden blumenreichen Gärten, welche äußerst schöne Sammlungen von Pflanzen enthalten, die in allerliebster Weise geordnet sind. Die Springbrunnen, die wohl die allerhöchsten sind, die ich je gesehen habe, senden mächtige Wasserströme* empor, weit höher als der Palast selbst; sie steigen am höchsten von allen Springbrunnen in der Welt. Die Leute stehen bewundernd* davor, die Alten wie die Jungen, die Gelehrten wie die Ungelehrten*, die Eingeborenen wie die Fremden; denn hier ist das Schöne mit dem Erhabenen aufs großartigste* vereint.

Proverbs: Speech is silvern, silence is golden (Persian). — Who speaks, sows, who keeps silence, reaps (Italian). — Dead men open living men's eyes. — Common fame is seldom to blame.

Quotation: Man wants but little here below, nor wants that little long (Goldsmith).

Idiomatic Expressions: He is done for / It is all over with him } Es ist aus mit ihm.
He is a plain spoken man er spricht gerade heraus.
Take warning by it nehmen Sie sich ein Beispiel daran.

III, Reader 19—22.

6th Lesson.

The Adverb.

II, §§ 60—66.

11. The London Theatres.

Now that we have so well employed our day, should we not go to one of the theatres and see a little of London life at night?

By all means, Sir! That's just the very thing we ought to do, I am very fond of acting, especially when it is well done.

Then, I am sorry to say, you will have to lower your expectations a little, for dramatic art is not very flourishing in England just now, although London alone possesses 65 theatres that are visited by 325000 people nightly, or nearly 100 millions yearly. However, at no time the English theatre has been so insignificant and poor as in the present day, although we have some pretty good actors now and then. Comedy, it is true, enjoys a certain popularity but of the lowest sort: silly farces and absurd burlesques, generally made up after French originals, fill the stage.

Well, I don't care for this sort of performance, but should rather prefer to see some good old English play. Would there be no chance of seeing any to-night?

I dare say, there will be a Shakespearian revival either at 'Drury Lane Theatre' or at 'the Lyceum', or even at the 'Haymarket Theatre'; and since we happen to be quite close to the first-mentioned, let us go thither at once and see. It is but five minutes' walk hence. At all events, some good English comedy will be represented there to-night. Drury Lane is the well-known theatre where our most famous artists used to act.

Very well, then; if you please, lead the way! — And by the way, what is your opinion of the English opera? Is it well worth visiting?

To be sure, it is, especially in the height of the season,[1] which lasts from Easter till about the end of July, when London, no doubt, possesses the best singers in the world; for no other place can afford to pay such enormous sums to the artists.

And which are the best theatres to be visited for that purpose?

'Her Majesty's Theatre' or 'Opera House', at the Corner of Haymarket and Pall Mall, nearly opposite to the 'Haymarket Theatre', has been for many years the chief temple of this muse, but was closed, some years ago, for ought I know. Yet the Royal Italian Opera or Covent Garden Theatre occupies the first rank now, being, besides, one of the largest theatres in the world, accomodating an audience of 3500 persons. I was there but yesterday. In the off-

[1] Properly speaking, the time during the sittings of Parliament.

season,[1] the house is used for promenade concerts in autumn, and for balls in winter.

Indeed! I find it rather inconsistent with the dignity of the place thus to profane it by the light steps of Terpsíchore.

And I think you should thoroughly do away with your German sentimentalism since you have come across the English channel; we English are a down-right matter-of-fact people who like to make the best of a thing whenever we can.

All right; I'll try to do so.

Here we are. There are the placárds! — Now, I say, you are a rather lucky fellow! Shakespeare's 'Much Ado about Nothing' happens to be represented to-night with quite a new cast.

Now this is the very play I should like to see; I've seen it but once in Germany and rather badly performed. Then I think we ought to book our places beforehand at the booking-office and spend the remaining time in comfortably taking our supper at some restaurant in the vicinity.

Do so, if you please; I like better to stay outside and to walk slowly up and down before the theatre meanwhile.

What places shall I take, stalls or dress circle? The former cost 10 s. 6 d. and the latter but 6 s. 6 d., yet I must remind you that in either evening dress is customary. In England, ladies are not excluded from the stalls, as in France, but they are not allowed to wear bonnets.

I find this very convenient. Now I think you had better book some places in the upper circle, if you do not prefer seats in the pit or in the gallery.

I had rather not; I was there but a week ago and was anything but satisfied with my place. Besides, there is no booking for these places and we should have to be at the door pretty early, as there is generally a scramble for the tickets and no arrangement taken for a 'queue' as there is on the Continent. The ticket-offices are usually opened but half-an-hour before the beginning of the performance.

At any rate, do not return without any ticket . . .

I have taken two seats right in the middle of the second circle whence we shall see capitally.

Much obliged to you; but for you I should not have seen a Shakespearian revival this evening, I suppose.

[1] The time when no theatrical performances take place.

And have you really quite made up your mind not to see any of our English farces or burlesques? In my judgment, I think you should visit all sorts of theatres, were it but to obtain a fair insight into the various classes of society, their behaviour, and their dramatic tastes. I do not doubt but that you will learn a good deal about English life and manners, and I cannot but recommend you to do so.

I full agree with you and shall follow your advice, being fully convinced of the truth of your arguments.

Then you should go to the 'Empire' or to the 'Strand' or to the 'Princess's', or the 'Gaiety Theatre' where these plays are capitally performed. In some of these, comic operas and operettas are also represented.

Now let us go and take our seats. We shall leave our hats and coats in the cloak-room and then take a programme. And if you want an opera glass, you can hire one from the attendant for 1 s.

No, thank you, my eyes are very good. The curtain rises .

How did you like the acting?

To speak fairly, not very much. I cannot consider the performance a great success. Some of the actors did not even know their parts properly, as, for instance, the one who acted the part of Don Pēdro. He is but a middling player. He constantly came near the prompter's box and nearly stopped short once or twice. This is justly to be condemned. Then the actress who represented Beatrice spoke sometimes too low when she ought to have spoken rather loudly, and vice versa, whilst another actor did nothing but shout at the top of his voice. Besides, I think that the second act should have been performed in a more lively manner; it would have produced quite a different effect, and the actors also would have been more loudly applauded. At first I feared they would fail altogether, but by and by, they improved and carried it fairly through.

I think you judge somewhat too severely, although I quite agree with you that, on the whole, it was not a first-rate performance. But now, I must needs take a refreshing draught and since we happen to be near to the refreshment room, let us have some brandy and soda, or a claret or cider-cup.[1]

[1] Cup is a cold mixture of wine and lemonade or sodawater with lemon peal, spices, and sugar; e. g. Moselle-cup, Champagne (pron. Schämpehn)-cup; Cider-cup, a favourite refreshing beverage in summer. A hot mixture is called nēgus.

That is the very thing I was going to propose to you for I am all but parched with thirst.

There's the bell! The last act is about to begin. I expect it will not be over till eleven o'clock.

But another half-hour, and the play will be ended.

Exercises.

1. What do you know about London theatres in general?

2. At which theatres are Shakespearian revivals best performed?

3. Which is the first Opera House at present in London, and where are comedies (i. e. farces and burlesques) best performed?

4. Form examples in which the adverbs of time ending in 'ly' are used as adjectives.

5. Form others in which the adverb 'but' is used
firstly in the sense of „nur",
secondly in that of „erst".

6. Give examples
1. of 'rather' employed
a. with verbs, b. with adjectives;
2. of 'only', used a. as an adjective, b. as an adverb.

7. Form sentences in which adverbs of manner, time, and place are used together.

8. Give sentences in which the adverbs 'on, off, in, out, up, back, down, away' are employed with an objective case when it is either a noun or a personal pronoun.

Example: Send back the boy — send him back!

12. Besorgungen* und Plaudereien.*

Sie brauchen einen Sonnenschirm, und ich brauche ein Paar Handschuhe; deshalb lassen Sie uns welche kaufen. Hier ist ein Laden nahe bei; es ist nur zwei Minuten Wegs. Diese Straße führt gerade darauf hin. Ich bin erst vorgestern dort gewesen. Ich glaube es regnet ziemlich stark; nehmen wir daher lieber unsern Regenschirm mit. Gehen Sie nicht zu schnell; ich gehe gern langsam. Die Thür des Ladens ist weit offen. Treten wir ein.

Bitte meine Herrschaften*, setzen Sie sich. Womit kann ich Ihnen dienen? — Mit Damen-Handschuhen. — Wie gefallen Ihnen diese? —

Das ist gerade, was ich brauche; was kosten sie? — Sechs Schillinge! Das ist ziemlich viel; Sie verlangen zu hohe Preise; Herr Schmidt verkauft wohlfeiler.

Ich bedaure recht sehr; seine Ware ist vermutlich nicht so gut wie die meinige. Doch hier sind andere; vielleicht ziehen Sie diese vor; sie sind auch etwas billiger.

Nein, ich würde eher die ersteren vorziehen, wenn sie mir gut paßten.*

Dann thäten Sie besser, sie zu probieren.* Ziehen Sie sie nur an. Sie passen Ihnen ausgezeichnet; sie könnten kaum besser sitzen.

Gehen wir weiter zu einem Schirmladen*! — Ist Ihr Vetter noch in der Fremde? Ich erinnere mich seiner ziemlich gut; ich habe ihn irgendwo gesprochen.

Ja, er ist jetzt in England. Erst war er in Frankreich, dann in Spanien. Zuerst studierte er; jetzt arbeitet er in irgend einem Geschäft. Er schreibt hie und da; doch wird er wahrscheinlich binnen kurzem zurückkehren. Wir erwarten ihn täglich, stündlich. Er hat erst vor 14 Tagen geschrieben. Er schreibt, daß es ihm nirgends besser gefallen habe als zu Hause, obgleich er draußen ein beträchtliches Einkommen hat. Jetzt, wo sein Vater krank ist, braucht man ihn sehr nötig (badly). Dieser hat eine hohe Meinung von ihm.

Hier sind wir gerade vor einem Schirmladen. Gehen wir aufs geratewohl hinein. Es ist zufällig derselbe, wo ich auch meinen Sonnenschirm vor acht Tagen gekauft habe.

Dieses hier ist ein entschieden feiner Sonnenschirm und auch ziemlich groß, wie sie jetzt Mode sind, meine Damen. Es ist der einzige von dieser Art, den ich noch habe; erst gestern habe ich zwei davon verkauft; ich hatte nur sechs im ganzen.

Das ist gerade der Schirm, den ich möchte; was soll er kosten? Vierzig Schillinge! Das ist eine ziemlich hohe Summe; ich werde leider auf den Schirm verzichten* müssen.

Das werden Sie sicher bereuen. Schauen Sie nur die Seide an. Und diesen reizenden Griff.* Es ist keineswegs ein gewöhnlicher Schirm. Es ist sozusagen ein Meisterstück.* Meiner Meinung nach ist der Schirm ziemlich billig. Sie werden wahrscheinlich keinen so schönen Schirm wieder finden.

Nun denn, hier ist das Geld.

Reden wir offen mit einander; ich glaube der Kaufmann handelte nicht ehrlich gegen Sie; er hat Sie sicherlich übertenert.* Ich beobachtete sein Gesicht genau; ich habe solche Gesichter nicht gern.

Thut nichts! Mir gefällt der Schirm sehr, und damit gut (and there is an end of it).

Proverbs: Pride goes before, and shame follows after. — An old dog learns no tricks. — Much ado about nothing. — Brevity is the soul of wit.

Quotations: A thing of beauty is a joy for ever (Keats).
Music hath charms to soothe the savage breast.
Fain would I climb but that I fear to fall. (Raleigh.)

Idiomatic Expressions: In the twinkling of an eye im Nu.
To be made an April fool sich in den April schicken lassen.
Upwards of fifteen years über fünfzehn Jahre her.
To be short of provisions knapp mit Lebensmitteln versehen sein.

Conundrum: When does a goose look like a cannon-ball?
(When it looks round.)

III. Reader Nr. 23—29.

7th Lesson.

Pronouns.

II, §§ 67—90.

13. On English Letter-Writing.

Would you kindly assist me in writing an English letter? I should feel greatly obliged to you if you would do so. An English friend of mine has written to me; he is a very intelligent man, and I have made up my mind to answer him in his own language, but I fear I shall not be able to do it by myself quite properly.

With all my heart. I will just wash my hands, for I have been working in the garden.

Have you a garden of your own? I was not aware of that.

Oh yes, and a very nice one too, in which I have taken my recreations after work these ten years. But, please, tell me, how is it that you, who are so clever, and who speak our language so well, should not be capable of writing an English letter by yourself?

Never mind my cleverness, but please, let me rather profit a little by your own. Besides, you English people are so very particular in letter-writing that I fear I should make some blunders and therefore I like to have your advice.

You are not quite mistaken. It is true, the composition of English letters requires an acquaintance with certain formalities the observation of which must not be neglected. First some general rules. The note-paper which you write on must be white and clean, the ink you make use of, quite black, the writing clear and legible. Now put the name

of the place that you write from along with the date and your address on the top, to the right of the first page; in your case it will be: London, W. C., the 22nd of August 1893, or London, August the 22nd, or London, 22nd August, which latter is to be read: London, the 22nd of August. Mind not to forget the comma between the name of the place and the date!

Then follows, not in the middle, but more to the left, the address of the person whom you write to, as either: 'Dear Friend', or, 'My dear Friend', or, 'Dearest Friend', or, 'My dear Mr. Smith', with a comma after it instead of a note of exclamation as you Germans ordinarily do. When writing to other persons, we commence with 'Sir', or 'Madam'; in case of a nearer acquaintance with 'Dear Sir', 'Dear Madam', etc. The very same title of 'Madam' we also give to unmarried ladies of rank, whilst unmarried young ladies in general are addressed as 'Miss', with their family names; the younger daughters of a family are addressed with their Christian names, as: 'Dear Miss Lucy', etc. No such redundant, bombastic formulas or addresses as you make a frequent use of in German are admissible in English. 'Honoured Sir' is the only one still in use with older or highly respectable persons.

Then the letter itself, sometimes called the body of the letter, begins on the line below just underneath the end of the address. In answering a letter, we always begin by acknowledging its receipt, usually with: "Your letter came duly to hand", or: "I am in receipt of your kind letter", and then proceed to reply to its contents before a new subject is introduced. The style and language of a letter should be clear, simple, natural, and to the purpose; useless verbiage, round-about phrases, pleonastic expressions, low or uncommon terms should be carefully avoided; for it should always be kept in mind that epistolary correspondence is a conversation carried on in letters and that, what is written, remains; whilst a word thoughtlessly uttered may pass unheeded or soon be forgotten. The body of a letter should contain all that one wishes to write, and the letter itself not be disfigured by postscripts; it need hardly be said that there should be nothing in it that might be tedious, trifling, untrue, or even painful to the receiver.

The conclusion of the letter generally contains protestations or assurances of love, friendship, esteem, or devotion, as the case may be. The concluding sentence or passage in which the same address that was used in the beginning,

must be repeated, is arranged into three lines of which the first generally begins with 'I remain', or, 'I am ever, dear Friend', or 'Believe me, dear Sir', and the second of which contains the formulas: 'Your faithful, true, sincere, affectionate' or the like, or 'Yours faithfully, truly, sincerely, affectionately', and the last line merely the name of the writer. Mind that 'Your' must always be followed by an adjective, whilst 'Yours' requires the adverb. If the addressee be a very good friend or relation of yours, you add your 'best compliments' or 'kind regards' to his wife or his family.

Now this being done, fold the letter and put it into a gummed envelop, then write the address or direction on it. In English, we write but the simple address of a person without any honorary titles or formulas as you do in German. The title of 'Mr.' (Mister) corresponds to your German 'Herr'; instead of it, that of 'Esquire', commonly abbreviated into 'Esqre.' or 'Esq.', is used after the names of respectable or educated men. 'Esquire' or 'squire', in former times the lowest degree of the gentry, corresponds to the German 'Wohlgeboren' or 'Hochwohlgeboren'. In using this title, the Christian name or, at least, its initial must be placed before the name. Before the professional titles of 'Dr.', 'Professor', 'Captain', 'General', 'the Reverend' (this last being the honorary title of the clergy), 'the Honourable' (a title given to noblemen and to the Members of Parliament (M. P.), and the like, the title of 'Mr.' is omitted. Ladies do not receive the professional titles of their husbands; such is the custom in England.

Mind that in the English direction of letters the inverse order is observed to that in German, that is to say, the name and the number of the house which the person lives in always precedes that of the street or the place, as for instance: 22 Bedford Square, London, W. C. If the letter goes abroad, the name of the country, with the province or district in the precincts of which the addressee is living, comes the last.

These are about all the formalities and rules to be observed in English letter-writing. Many of them, it is true, are observed throughout all civilised nations; however, there is no people but has its peculiarities. Whoever does not comply with them, will be liable to serious mistakes.

Now having finished the letter, you must stamp it and then post it or drop it into the letter-box. Where does this friend of yours live, in England or on the Continent?

He lives in the county of York where he cultivates his own lands, his parents having died some years ago. He has his younger brothers and sisters with him. He has invited me to spend some time with him, and I intend to go there one of these days.

Then you will have to put one penny stamp on your letter which is the postage throughout the United Kingdom, whilst a letter to any part of the Continent, if not exceeding half an ounce in weight, costs twopence half-penny. A letter insufficiently stamped or prepaid is charged with double its deficiency to the receiver. Should you like to have your letter registered? The registration fee is two pence.

Oh no! I shall do no such thing; it is not important enough for that. But I'll take this wrapper of newspapers along with it to the post-office to send it by book-post. What will be the postage?

Newspapers as well as any printed papers are sent at the rate of one halfpenny for every two ounces. Since you are going to the post-office, will you be so kind as to get for me a shilling's worth of penny stamps, ten post cards for England and five foreign post-cards? And also a postal order for five pounds, if you please!

With great pleasure. Which way must I take?

Go up this street to the next turning at the corner of which, you must turn to your right and follow the street for about a hundred yards; at the end of it you'll see the post-office just in front of you. If you don't find it, ask any of the policemen; they are, as it were, the "Providence of strangers."

Example:

Stamp

James White, Esq^{re}.,

Rose Hill,

27 Field Street,

Wetherby,

Yorkshire.

London, 22nd of August, 1893.
19 Bedford Square, W. C.

My dear Mr. White,

Many thanks for your welcome letter of the 14th inst. which duly came to hand, and for the expressions of kind remembrance and friendship which it contained and which have afforded me the greatest pleasure. Indeed, it is a long time since I have seen you, and therefore I most willingly accept your kind invitation to spend a short time with you on your estate, embracing it as an opportunity of renewing our old friendship and of my becoming an eye-witness of your success in practical life. Besides, fond as I may be of a life in town, I can assure you I am far more partial to a life in the country, and no enjoyment that I can think of would yield me a greater delight than to fly from the confinement of the London streets to the free range of the open fields and to exchange our smoky atmosphere for the clear and invigorating air of the country.

I need hardly tell you, that, since my arrival in London, I have made the most of my sojourn in strolling and looking about. To my great satisfaction, I have also been fortunate enough to meet with an old acquaintance of mine in whose company I spend the greater part of my time and to whose kindness and familiarity with London curiosities I am greatly indebted. He is, indeed, the truest Cockney that I have ever come across. But I must conclude this epistle lest it tire you. Hoping I shall be of no trouble to you and yours, I shall make free to come and see you this day week. Meanwhile with kindest regards,

Believe me, my dear Mr. White,
Yours sincerely,
Alfred B.

Exercises.

1. Form sentences with two objects, a direct and an indirect one, and change these into personal pronouns:

Example: He wrote a letter to his friend — he wrote him a letter — he wrote it (to) him.

2. When is the possessive pronoun to be used in English instead of the definite article in German? Give instances! (§ 73.)

3. Which are the numeral adjectives the definite article must be placed after? Form examples of sentences!

4. Form examples of verbal substantives with possessive pronouns!

5. When is "that" to be used as a Relative Pronoun? (§ 84.)

6. Complete: I took the letter with —. He set the inkstand before —. He grows his — potatoes. Put on — hat! This letter contains — protestations of friendship. I hardly ever read. — plays do you like? — of these buildings do you like best? I am your — friend. I remain yours —. This is no book — —.

7. Translate in different ways:

Woran denkst du? Die Person, an die ich schreibe, ist in England. Die Stadt, in der ich lebe, ist prächtig. Die Familie, in deren Hause ich wohne, ist freundlich. Der Herr, auf dessen Brief ich antworte, ist ein Engländer. Der Baum, in dessen Schatten ich ruhe, ist ein Apfelbaum. Die Tinte, mit der ich schreibe, ist schwarz.

8. Form other similar sentences!

9. Turn into English:

Es sind zwei Engländer. Es ist meine Schwester. Haben Sie ein eigenes Heim? Unsere und euere Verwandten. Das ist nicht deine Sache. Dies (das) sind leichte Sätze. Ich habe ihn seit fünf Jahren nicht gesehen. Hast du davon gehört? Hast du darauf geantwortet? Bist du damit zufrieden? Wer nicht hören will, muß fühlen. Eine solche Stadt wie London existiert nicht mehr. Welche von allen Hauptstädten, die du kennst, gefällt dir am meisten? Wer von euch ist da gewesen? Das Kind kann noch nicht allein gehen. Es giebt keinen Menschen, der nicht seine Fehler hätte. Keine Stadt, die ich kenne, ist so reich. Ein Brief, der nicht leserlich geschrieben ist, ist eine Unhöflichkeit.*

14. Ein Brief.

London, den 2. August 1893.

Mein lieber Vetter,

Dein lieber* Brief vom 23. d. Mts.* kam mir richtig zu Handen; mein Hausherr händigte* ihn mir vorgestern selbst ein. Ich war äußerst* erfreut darüber und besonders über die interessanten Nachrichten, die er enthielt.

Du schreibst davon, nach London zu kommen (Gerund). Nichts könnte mir ein größeres Vergnügen bereiten. Dann würdest Du mit Deinen eigenen Augen alle die Wunderdinge* sehen, die sich mir jetzt darbieten. Fast alles, was man sieht, ist merkwürdig. Der Wein ist, wie Du bemerkst, zwar teuer; aber ich trinke nicht viel davon; ich ziehe das Bier demselben vor. Die Herren und Damen, mit denen ich bis jetzt gesprochen habe, waren alle sehr liebenswürdig; die ersteren sind hier höflicher als sie bei uns sind, und die letzteren ungezwungener*

und natürlicher als die unserigen. Von der königlichen Familie habe ich noch niemanden gesehen, doch habe ich seit meinem ersten Briefe viel Schönes und Interessantes gesehen. Wer London nicht kennt, glaubt nicht, was man da an einem Tage (alles) sehen kann. Du, der Du Berlin kennst, kannst Dir kaum eine Vorstellung* davon machen (form). Die Londoner Brücke und der Verkehr,* der auf und unter ihr stattfindet, ist allein etwas Wunderbares. Heute Morgen habe ich wieder eine Viertelstunde darauf gestanden. Ein solches Leben, wie auf dieser Brücke, hat etwas Betäubendes.*

Ich war auch im Zoologischen Garten. Die Tiere, die ich dort gesehen und deren Fütterung* ich beigewohnt habe, waren im allgemeinen ganz dieselben wie in unserem Berliner Zoologischen Garten. Dort traf ich auch einen unserer Freunde, von dessen Anwesenheit* in London ich keine Ahnung* hatte, und in dessen Gesellschaft ich den Tag zugebracht habe.

Dann habe ich auch einige Parks und einige öffentliche Gebäude, wie die Westminster Abtei, besucht. Es giebt keine Kirche in Berlin, die (sich) mit ihr vergleichen könnte. Es ist die prachtvollste Kirche, die ich je gesehen habe.

Auch ein Theater habe ich besucht und ein Shakespeare'sches Stück gesehen. Der Platz, auf dem ich saß, war sehr günstig, so daß ich alles verstehen konnte. Doch war die Vorstellung* nicht gut, und ein Shakespeare'sches Stück, das nicht gut aufgeführt wird, verliert ungemein.*

Heute über 14 Tage werde ich London verlassen und zum Besuch* aufs Land gehen.

Es thut mir sehr leid, daß die liebe Tante Marie und der gute Onkel Moritz krank sind; bringe ihnen meine herzlichsten Grüße mit meinen besten Wünschen. Schreibe bald wieder oder komme lieber selbst.

Indessen verbleibe ich

Dein aufrichtiger Vetter

Alfred.

Proverbs: Style is the dress of thought. — Pen and ink are the best witnesses. — Who knows nothing, doubts nothing. — Self's the man. — The world is for him who has patience. — That which a fool does in the end, a wise man does in the beginning. — An old dog learns no tricks.

Quotation: Things ill got had ever bad success. (Shakesp.)

Idiomatic Expressions: The letter was badly worded der Brief war schlecht abgefaßt.

To make a smart (tart) reply eine spitzige Antwort geben.

He took it into his head er setzte es sich in den Kopf.
She took it very much to heart sie nahm es sich sehr zu Herzen.
In times out of mind vor undenklichen Zeiten.
He turned his back on me er kehrte mir den Rücken.
He knits his brows er runzelt die Stirn.

Conundrums: Why did the children of Israel not starve in the desert? (Because of the sandwiches (sand which is) there.)

Where did they get the sandwiches from?
(They had mustered (mustard) and bred (bread) there.)

III. Reader Nr. 30—33.

8th Lesson.

Indefinite Pronouns.

II, §§ 91—101.

15. On English Climate and Diseases.

How do you do, my dear fellow? I was told that you had been ill during the last few days.

So I was. But can it be wondered at if one falls ill with this ever changing weather that usually reigns in your country and in London in particular? You rise in the morning with the brightest sunshine; you breakfast whilst a heavy rain is pouring down; you go to your business during a dreadful tempest, return in a burning hot sun, and dine whilst a thunder-storm with hail is raging terribly outside; you take a walk during the calmest weather, and are overtaken by the densest fog, "a London particular, as thick as pea-soup", as people say, so as to have to grope your way along the houses; you return in "a good Scotch mist", that is to say, in a black fog mixed with rain, and light a fire in the evening in order to keep yourself warm in the midst of summer. That's your English climate!

Good gracious! How you rage! One might be quite frightened at hearing you fire away like that! What is the matter with you? You don't seem to be ill any more!

I am thankful to say, I am not. But I was so and seriously so for some days. Returning home one evening, I felt rather chilly; shortly after, I was a little feverish, and soon, shivering all over, at the same time feeling a dull head-ache and pains throughout all my limbs, I went to bed; and then my whole body began to shake. I began to fear some fever might have seized me.

But you should have sent for the physician!

So I did. Happily there lived one in the neighbourhood. He came immediately, felt my pulse, and called it a bad case of influenza; at least he said so. But fortunately it turned out to be only a slight attack. However, I kept my room for a whole week.

And I think you did quite well. Poor fellow, how I pity you! And do you feel any better now?

Yes, I do; I even feel a great deal better; and I hope I shall be allowed to go out in a few days.

I hope so too. But you should really take more care of yourself and your health. I have often told you so. You ought to know that one must be very careful of one's clothing in England. We all wear flannel because of the changeableness and dampness of the climate. Otherwise people easily catch cold and get coughs and sore throats.

Well, I never thought of wearing flannel; but henceforth I shall not fail to do so.

And you will fare all the better for it. Those, however, are but slight indispositions. Yet if one is subject to rheumatism, one can easily catch it, especially in the evenings, when the air gets damp and chill. And yet, upon the whole, it is generally accepted that the English climate is not so unhealthy as might be expected from its character; it is said that the death-rate in London, for instance, is lower than in most large towns of the Continent. By the by, do you think influenza catching? It is generally believed to be so.

Why, people say so, and I think so too; for the physician tells me that there are a great many cases in town and some with a fatal issue. So there seems to be quite an epidemic; some will die of it, others will recover.

You don't say so! Then I shouldn't wonder if I also caught it; for there's hardly any illness or disease in existence, I have not had. There were first the measles, which my brother and I caught when we were children; but neither of us cared much, being free from school all the time; then we got the shakes or the intermittent fever which altérnately shook us every other day; then followed the scarlet fever, a rather dangerous illness of children; then the small-pox, which happily left no traces on either of us. When the typhoïd fever or the typhus was raging in London, of course, I was not to escape it, and finally I was laid up with pneumónia, also called inflammation of the lungs for at least a whole month. They say in-

fluenza is often followed by the latter or that at least it will leave some serious traces behind? Do you think so?

I cannot answer either of these points, yet hope, that neither of these possibilities will happen to me. But how is your cousin of whom you spoke to me the last time of our meeting? Is there no hope of recovery for him?

None, I am sorry to say. Púlmonary consumption has made too much progress already with him to be cured. He was quite well last month, at least he appeared so; but when the rough weather set in, he relapsed, and now he is getting worse every day and is past all hope, so the physician says. How little one would have thought it a twelvemonth ago when he was still all life and gaiety! Then all of a sudden he began to sicken; yet no one thought of a serious disease. Some said it might be but a very bad cold in the head, others a slight attack of fever; and now he is only the shadow of what he was.

How sorry I am for him! He was such a nice and true-hearted fellow; I think he scarcely possessed any enemy. He never spoke ill of anybody. By the by, people say that patients often like fruit. Would you not give him some if he wanted any? As for me, I liked any fruit whatever when I was cónvaléscent.

I should feel too happy if I could but please him with anything, and I should bring him anything whatever if he but uttered a wish. At any rate, I'll ask him if he likes fruit; if he does, he shall not be without any.

Do his sisters nurse him well? They are very fine and clever girls.

Yes, they do; they nurse him by turns. Either of them is on duty for a whole day. They have watched many an hour at his bed-side. But now I will not detain you any longer. I hope you will soon recover and be quite healthy again. And mind not to forget what I have told you about our climate! I especially advise you to beware of the dreadful east-winds and the chilly evenings. I have told you everything and now you know all. Good bye!

Exercises.

1. Form sentences in the Passive Voice which are to be translated by „man".

2. Form other sentences with the verbs to believe, to hope, to say, to tell, to think in which "so" must be translated by „es". (§ 93 b.)

3. Form others with the verbs to be, to live, to stand, to arise beginning with "there". (§ 93 c.)

4. Form affirmative sentences with "any" (jeder, jeder beliebige).

5. Express in different ways:

One easily pardons one's self and one's faults.

One often forgets one's self and one's duties.

One never ought to think so much of one's self as of one's friends.

6. Complete:

Have you had — diseases? Will you name me — diseases you have had? Will you lend him — money? I do not know, whether I shall lend him —. He has had — illness you can mention. I don't see why I should wear — flannels. Should you like — fruits? I can let you have — fruit —. Should you like to have —? Which do you like more to have, a cold or a cough? I like —; I should not like —. He has had the small-pox and the scarlet fever; I should not like —; for — is agreeable. I cannot say that — would be welcome to me. What disease have you had? —. Did you tell it to —? No, I did not tell it to —? There is but — hope. There are — people that have not been ill. Some diseases are dangerous, — are not.

16. Über die Einteilung der Zeit und das Spielen.

Zeit ist Geld, sagt ein englisches Sprichwort; ich aber sage, sie ist mehr als Geld, sie ist Leben. Unser ganzes Leben ist entweder gut oder schlecht angewendete Zeit. Wie die Zeit, (so) flieht auch unser Leben dahin (away). Darum soll man beides gut anwenden. Jedes von beiden ist kostbar, denn keines kehret zurück. Man hört oft die Leute sagen: ich habe keine Zeit. Das ist nicht wahr; Zeit haben sie alle, aber sie teilen sie nicht gut ein und nützen* sie nicht aus. Man kann wohl sagen: ich habe nicht Zeit genug, wenn man zu viel unternimmt.*

Es ist etwas Merkwürdiges um (about) die Zeit: wenn man sie am meisten ausnützt, hat man gewöhnlich am wenigsten, und je weniger Zeit man übrig* hat, desto zufriedener und glücklicher ist man; denn dann arbeitet man viel, und wer viel arbeitet, ist glücklich. Doch wer seine Zeit gut einteilt, hat immer etwas Zeit übrig. Diese Zeit sollte man stets zur Erholung verwenden.

Als ich in England war, verkehrte* ich viel mit jungen Engländern aus allen Ständen. Man arbeitete viel, aber man hatte auch viel Zeit zum Spielen. Man spielte Cricket und

Lawn-Tennis einen Tag um den andern. Man glaubt kaum, wie kräftig man durch das Spielen wird. Ganz England arbeitet und spielt viel. Man sagte mir, daß sogar ältere Leute spielen. Ich kannte einen gewissen Herrn John, der alle Tage und den ganzen Tag lang Lawn-Tennis spielen konnte. Es war ein sehr reicher Herr und ganz Leben und Bewegung beim Spiel. Ganz plötzlich fand ich auch Lust* daran und lernte es auch. Es ist ein schönes Spiel, und jedermann kann es lernen, der beweglich ist.

Ich weiß nicht, ob es Engländer giebt, welche die englischen Spiele nicht lieben, doch kenne ich einige, die nicht spielen, dagegen* viele, welche jedes Spiel spielen. In England spielen die meisten Leute; nirgends wird so viel gespielt. Man spielt überall, in Städten und Dörfern; darum ist man auch im großen und ganzen sehr gesund in England, wenigstens glaube ich es.

Als ich zu spielen anfing, thaten mir alle meine Glieder weh,* doch bald fühlte ich mich um so besser. Auf jeden Fall bin ich sehr gesund dadurch geworden. Ich habe auch gelernt, meine Zeit gut einzuteilen und auszunützen. Eine jede Stunde des Tages muß ihre Bestimmung haben, keine darf vernachlässigt* werden. Manche Leute werden nie fertig* mit ihren Arbeiten, weil sie keine Zeiteinteilung haben. Darum teile man die Zeit gut ein und benütze sie gut. Wird man in Deutschland auch wieder spielen lernen? Ich hoffe es.

Proverbs: After dinner sit a while,
After supper walk a mile.
Health is above wealth. — Hungry stomachs have no ears.
None but the brave deserve the fair. — "They say so", is half a lie. — By doing nothing, men learn to do ill.

Idiomatic Expressions: To find fault with etwas auszusetzen haben.
A woe-begone look ein leidendes Aussehen.
To put one to shame einen beschämen.
To tax one with a fault jemand beschuldigen.
It stands to reason es ist nur billig.
It's Greek to me es sind mir böhmische Dörfer.
Never say die nur nicht verzweifeln.

Quotation: God helps them that help themselves. (Franklin.)
Care is an enemy to life (Shakesp.)

Conundrum: Which travels at greater speed, heat or cold?
(Heat, because you can catch cold.)

9th Lesson.

The Infinitive. The German „lassen".

II, §§ 102—106.

17. The English House.

Will you come and pay us a visit to-day? My parents bid me tell you that they will be happy to make your acquaintance and to have you stay for luncheon. They have just sent me word. If you would come a little before lunch-time, which is at one o'clock, I might show you all over our house, which, I am proud to say, is the model of an English house. My grand-father caused it to be built some thirty years ago by a first-rate architect.

I hardly dare to accept your kind invitation, as I have sent my dress-coat to be ironed.

You need not trouble about that; it is only at our dinners that every one has to appear in his best clothes, called full-dress — which consists of a dress-coat, black trowsers, and a white tie. — There we also appear in our best humour in order to enliven the meal. Only a few friends are bidden to come. Now I think you had better accept our invitation and stand no longer on ceremony; besides, you need not fear to move in English society, for you speak and behave quite like an Englishman. You are never at a loss what to say and how to act, as a countryman of yours was last year; he scarcely dared to open his mouth when being spoken to. Whenever I bade him come and see us, he always tried to avoid doing so; and when he accepted, my mother hardly durst address him for fear of embarrassing him. He was always greatly puzzled how to handle his knife and fork. You know that in England it is not allowed to put one's knife to one's mouth or to take one's fork in one's right hand. But what of that to you? Will you permit me to take you with me at once?

Very well then; I thank you for your kind invitation and polite compliments.

Then let us go. There is no time to be lost. — Here we are. — This little subterranean court-yard which you perceive in front of our house is called the *ārea*. It is a sort of dry ditch between the street and the house-wall, reminding us of the ancient moat surrounding the lordly castles of olden times. You know that even nowadays an Englishman calls his house his castle!

I think this proud saying is the more justified as English houses are generally inhabited by one family only.

Just so. And here you see a little gate in the railing from which a flight of steps leads down to a door in the basement-story inhabited by the servants whom we order to enter this way. Likewise all the trades-people, as the greengrocer, the butcher, the baker, the fishmonger, the milkman etc. have to come this way into the house; they dare not pass that little stone-bridge leading across the area to the front-door, nor either use the knocker or ring the bell.

What is the use of the *bell* and the *knocker?* Would you teach me how to use them properly?

Then you must know that, in England, we guess by the ringing of the bell and the sound of the knocker what kind of people are at the door. There are commonly two bells, a right-hand bell for the visitors only, and a left-hand one to be rung by the servants of other families. The knocker is to be used by all other persons who have to announce their social position by the manner of their knocking or ringing.

How is this to be done?

To teach you all the various modes of knocking and ringing would be too tedious for you to remember. Know only that "the postman's knock" is a short double knock; if he brings a registered letter, he adds a third loud knock after a little pause. The telegraph porter announces himself by a treble knock. If there is no bell at the door, visitors knock long and hard, servants give several gentle taps.

And now I am going to knock in order to get the door opened. Somebody comes to answer it. We enter *the hall* which generally consists only of a narrow passage. The chief object to be observed in it is the *hall-stand,* an article of furniture that serves various purposes; as an umbrella-stand, a hat-rack, and a looking-glass in order to let you see if your dress is quite in order.

The first room to be seen is the *parlour.* Please to walk in. It is the *sitting-room* of the family where we receive our friends and acquaintances. Like all our rooms it is carpeted all over; we have even our stair-cases covered with carpets or other coverings as you will see.

Is this your much renowned *fire-place* where you make your friends sit down and around which you gather in the long winter evenings reading aloud to each other or telling stories, whilst the gentlemen are smoking their pipe or a cigar; is it not?

What a shocking idea! To smoke in the presence of ladies would be considered an offence not to be pardoned in

England. Know then, my dear friend, that you are not allowed to smoke anywhere but in a smoking-room; fashionable people do not even smoke in the streets.

Oh gracious God! I find your English customs rather awkward for a German; however, I will try to comply with them, although I had rather not eat than deprive myself of smoking. But where is your smoking-room?

It is up-stairs on the first floor. I will show it you in a moment. But my good fellow, will you allow me first to advise you never to use the name of God or the devil in good society, which is considered as a sign of ill-breeding. Instead of 'gracious God' we say 'Good gracious', and the Evil One, we call 'the deuce', or 'old Nick', or 'the old gentleman'.

I am much obliged to you. You seem to me rather overpolite towards the prince of darkness; now is it fear or reverence that makes you treat him so cautiously and politely?

You should not crack your jokes at such serious things in England, if you do not wish to be considered as rude or irreligious.

O dear, I think I shall never enjoy your English formalities! But I assure you, I shall no more suffer myself to be carried away by my German good humour, and you shall never hear me use those two names again, if I can help it. But, please, tell me what are these implements for which I see near the chimney?

You mean the shovel, the poker, and the tongs lying on the fender? They are used for keeping up the fire on the grate; the fender is to prevent the glowing coals from falling out into the room. These marble slabs enclosing the fire-place are called the mantle-piece, the top one is decorated with all kinds of knicknacks. By-the-by, my good friend, you must not call the fire-place a chimney. The chimney is but the opening in the wall above the grate to let out the smoke.

Thanks. I dare say these fire-places are very cheerful and comfortable in winter.

More cheerful than comfortable; for there are constant draughts between the door and the badly fitting windows and the fire-place so that we have to make use of a hearth-rug in order to keep our feet warm. Your German porcelain stoves are preferable by far.

I am glad to hear you say so, for I am very much prepossessed in favour of our German stoves. — What a multitude of flowers you have! You must be very fond of flowers!

There are some in nice baskets on the table, others are to be seen in china vases on the mantle-piece, and some very beautiful ones on the flower-stand in the corner and in flower-pots on the window-sill. But what a curious kind of window you have! They don't turn on hinges like our casement windows, as I see!

No, these are sash-windows, consisting of an upper and a lower half that are moved by means of pulleys. Now, look here, I make them move up and down. I dare say you never saw such windows before.

Indeed, I never did. — Do you hear that fine music! Where does it come from?

It is my sister playing on the piano in the *music room.* She is a very good player, I must confess; yet I wish you could hear her sing! She has a splendid treble voice. One of our first professors taught her to sing, and I dare assert, she knows how to sing. I hope you will hear her sing by and by. She dares not sing in the presence of strangers although she need not be afraid. But, be sure, I'll make her sing. She has also learned to speak French and German pretty well. — Now come along, I have still some more apartments to show you. — Here, this adjoining room is our *dining-room* with the large dining-table and a great number of cane-bottomed oak-chairs. And this one is our *drawing-room.*

Good gracious, what an elegant room! I hardly dare to enter it. What princely luxury, comfort, and splendour everywhere! Let us sit down to admire it for a minute! There is no end of mirrors, splendid hangings, exquisite paintings, steel-engravings, vases, and all sorts of articles of luxury! This room is really so brilliant as to dazzle me. Suffer me to stay a while, for I would have you tell me the names and uses of all these various articles of furniture which I see standing about the room. What, for instance, do you call this large and comfortable piece of furniture in the middle of the room?

This we call an *ottoman.* You may take it to pieces and thus obtain two easy-chairs and two settees or small sofas like the French 'causeuses'. What you call an ottoman in Germany, we call a *lounge,* that is to say, a couch without a back.

This one seems to be your finest piece of furniture; what is it?

It is a *cabinet* of elegant artistic workmanship. My father got it made by a most skilful cabinet-maker. It is

of ebony, as you see. We keep our most precious things in it, as china, gold and silver vessels, and the like.

This is indeed a most elegant room, but I fear almost too elegant to dwell in.

There you may be right. I, for my own part, prefer our *library* which is at the same time our *smoking-room*. Will you come and see it?

With all my heart. — Now this is a nice room to live in. And what valuable books there are on the shelves! They are mostly scientific works, are they not?

Yes, they are. But you must not overlook the standard works of our great modern authors which I keep in this book-case. — There still remain the *bedrooms* to be looked at, but I think the lunch-bell was heard to ring. So there is no time to lose. Let us go to my bedroom in order to make ourselves tidy whilst I show you the various objects in it. But allow me first to call the footman to get our boots cleaned. — This way, please. — This is my bed, composed of the bedstead, a spring-mattress and a hair-mattress, the pillows, sheets, blankets, and the counterpane.

Well, this is rather too complicated a matter to be retained by my weak brains.

And here is the washing-stand with a white marble slab and a china service. Underneath is a chest of drawers of mahógany to keep my linen in, and above, there is a large looking-glass for you to look in. This is the basin and the ewer to supply you with fresh water, this the soap-dish with the brush-tray; there are the combs and different sorts of oils and perfumes for your hair. There on the towel-horse are several towels. — But now I think we ought to go. Are you ready?

Yes, I am. I think we are to blame to be thus waited for.

Then come along! And how do you like our English houses? I'm sure you prefer your German ones to them!

You don't mean that. I am not such a prejudiced fellow as to deny the superiority of your English houses to our German dwellings.

Oh, I'm very glad to hear you say so. Now come and let me introduce you to the ladies.

Exercises.

1. After which verbs is the Infinitive without **to** to be used? (§ 103.)

2. When must **to** be used after the verb "to bid" and the verbs of "perception" and "sensation"? (§ 103 c, d.)

3. Give instances in which the Infinitive is used
a. as a Subject,
b. as a Predicate,
c. as an Object (§ 104 a).

4. Form sentences with the auxiliaries "to have" and "to be" with a following Infinitive, and explain what they signify (§ 104 c, d).

5. When must the Infinitive of the Passive be used after "to be"? (§ 104 e).

6. In what different ways can the German „lassen" be rendered into English? Give examples. (§ 105.)

7. What Subordinate Sentences can be abbreviated by the Infinitive, and how are they to be translated into German? (§ 106.)

18. Möblierte* Zimmer.

Ich muß mich jetzt nach einer Wohnung* umsehen*; wollen Sie mich begleiten?

Sehr gern. Wir brauchen gar nicht weit zu gehen; es sind möblierte Zimmer in unserer Nähe* zu vermieten.

Dann lassen Sie uns gehen; wir haben nicht viel Zeit zu verlieren; denn ich muß (to have) noch einen Besuch machen.

Dort ist ein Zettel zu sehen. Klingeln Sie, bitte. Ich höre jemanden kommen, um die Thüre zu öffnen. — Guten Tag, Madam; Sie haben möblierte Zimmer zu vermieten, nicht wahr? Dieser Herr wünscht eins zu mieten.*

Jawohl, mein Herr; ich habe mehrere Zimmer zu vermieten. Bitte, treten Sie ein. Wir müssen hinauf* gehen; das eine ist im (on) ersten Stock.* Hier ist es. Es ist ein großes, helles* Vorderzimmer* mit einem Balkon* und einem hübschen Kamin. Das Mobiliar ist ganz neu; ich habe es erst im vorigen Jahre machen lassen. Auch die Tapeten* habe ich erst in diesem Jahre erneuern* lassen; die weißen Vorhänge werde ich noch in dieser Woche waschen lassen. Und hier sehen Sie dieses schöne Sopha; ich glaube kaum, daß man in einer Mietswohnung* ein schöneres sehen kann (Pass.). Dann diesen Kleiderschrank* aus Mahagony habe ich aus meinem eigenen Wohnzimmer heraufbringen lassen. Auch das Bett ist sehr gut; es ist eine Sprungfeder* und eine Roßhaar*-Matratze* darin. Und diese Vorhänge, die ich erst in dieser Woche habe aufmachen* lassen . . .

Das ist alles sehr schön; ja mir scheint das Zimmer fast zu fein, um darin zu wohnen. Und dann die Hauptsache,* die zunächst zu erwähnen wäre (Inf. Pass.), ist doch* der Preis desselben.

Wünschen Sie das Zimmer auf (by) die Woche oder auf den Monat zu mieten?

Ich glaube ich thäte besser, es auf den Monat zu mieten.*

Und wünschen Sie es mit Kost* oder ohne Kost?

Mit voller Kost. Was verlangen* Sie für Kost und Wohnung den Monat?

Zehn Pfund mit der Bedienung. Ihre Kleider und Stiefeln können Sie durch das Mädchen reinigen* lassen.

Das ist sehr viel; können Sie es mir nicht billiger lassen?

Es thut mir sehr leid, doch kann ich nichts ablassen,* wenn ich die hohe Hausmiete* bezahlen soll (Inf.). Und außerdem müssen Sie nicht vergessen, daß Sie in einem der schönsten Stadtteile* wohnen* (Inf.), und daß gut wohnen das Leben angenehm macht.

Dem ist nicht zu widersprechen* (Pass.), aber es ist ein zu hoher Preis, daß ich ihn zahlen könnte (Inf. Pass.). Ich bin nicht so reich, daß ich so viel für Kost und Wohnung ausgeben könnte (Inf.).

Dann will ich Ihnen ein anderes Zimmer im dritten Stock zeigen; es ist nur etwas kleiner. Ich werde den Schlüssel durch das Mädchen bringen lassen. Es ist noch etwas unordentlich,* aber ich werde es noch heute in Ordnung bringen lassen. Wie gefällt es Ihnen?

Ich glaube, mein Freund, Sie thäten besser, das erstere zu behalten.

Aber dann weiß ich nicht, wie ich mit meinem Gelde auskommen soll (Inf.).

Thut nichts! Sie wissen, daß es in England nicht Sitte ist, in den Zimmern zu rauchen; darum (so) werden Sie nicht rauchen und viel Geld sparen.*

Das wage ich nicht zu versprechen; doch sei es (so)! Ich werde es nehmen. Hier ist das Aufgeld.* Wann darf ich meine Sachen bringen lassen?

Heute Abend, wenn Sie wollen. Guten Tag, meine Herren.

Guten Tag, Madam.

Proverbs: He that is down need fear no fall. — First come, first served. — Sweep before your own door first. — Truth and oil are ever above. — To err is human, to forgive divine.

Idiomatic Expressions: He adds fuel to the flame Er gießt Öl ins Feuer.
It never entered my mind es kam mir nicht in den Sinn.
I wish you safe home kommen Sie wohl nach Hause!
He is within er ist zu Hause.
I'll see you home ich werde Sie nach Hause begleiten.

Quotation: Dare to be true, nothing can need a lie. (Herbert.)
It is the mind that makes the body rich. (Shakesp.)

Conundrum: Why are jokes like nuts?
(Because the drier they are, the better they crack.)

III. Reader, Nr. 41—45.

10th Lesson.

The Accusative with the Infinitive.

II, §§ 107—111.

19. London Curiosities.

What were you doing all the day long yesterday, the weather being so very bad?

Why, I think I could hardly have employed it better than I did. I have visited some of the most remarkable curiosities of London in company with a countryman of mine who lives in the same house with me and whom I at first believed to be an Englishman for he spoke English so well. He desired me to accompany him, and as I knew him to be a perfect gentleman from his refined manners and to be thoroughly acquainted with London, I willingly accepted his offer. And I was not to regret it; for he proved himself to be a very clever guide and an amiable and instructed companion.

Well, I am extremely glad you should have chanced so well whilst I imagined you to be prevented from going out by the nasty weather. But please to let me know where you have been and what you have seen!

Very well! Then allow me to begin at the beginning. — We first hired a cab and ordered the cabman to drive us to the *British Museum* which, as you know, is thought to be one of the finest and richest museums in the world.

No doubt. It is quite a modern building constructed in the Italian style and contains one of the largest collections of books, valuable manuscripts and autographs kept in glass-

cases, of prints [1] and drawings, coins and metals, vases, porcelains and the like.

Quite so; but what most attracted my attention were the curious antiquities to which my companion soon requested me to follow him. There were Egyptian, Phœnician, Assyrian, Greek, Roman, and other antiquities in great number; but I was particularly struck with the Egyptian mummies lying or standing about in their quaint coffins; some of them are said to date from about 3000 B. C. (before Christ). Then we admired the famous *'Elgin Marbles'*. They are the remains of the Parthenon frieze at Athens, executed by the celebrated Phidias, which are declared to be the finest specimens of sculpture in existence, comprising figures of incomparable beauty. Lord Elgin, British ambassador at Constantinople in 1801—3, caused them to be brought to London where he sold them to the English government for the sum of £ 35,000.

You are talking like a book. But allow me to add that Lord Elgin acquired them at the cost of £ 70,000. But did you not visit the *Reading-Room?*

Certainly I did. My cicerone, who was in possession of a 'Reader's ticket', obtained permission for me to enter. Visitors are permitted only to look at it from the entrance and not suffered to talk aloud. It is a magnificent circular hall, said to be larger than the dome of St. Paul's which we saw shortly afterwards. It contains ample and convenient accomodation for 360 readers sitting in circles round the centre which is occupied by the superintendent and his officials. None but students, at least 21 years old, are allowed to make use of it for purposes of scientific study, reference, or research. The library is said to contain more than a million and a half of printed books the number of which is continually increasing.

After having spent three hours in the Museum, from 10 o'clock, which is the hour of opening, till one o'clock, I confessed myself to be quite exhausted with gazing, admiring, and walking about. We then drove to the Strand in order to take an early dinner in one of the good restaurants, where you can have a dinner for three and sixpence or even at half a crown (2 s. 6 d.), as you know. Of course, beer has to be paid for extra. Wine is generally bad and very expensive.

Our next aim was *St. Paul's Cathedral*, London's most prominent building; it is conspicuously situated on a slight

[1] Prints is the generic term for woodcuts, steel-engravings, and copper-plates.

eminence on Ludgate Hill. In pagan times, a temple of Diana is supposed to have occupied the site of the present cathedral which was built by the famous architect Sir Christopher Wren from 1675 to 1710, after old St. Paul's had been completely destroyed by the Great Fire in 1666. It is designed in the form of a Latin cross of 500 ft. in length and 118 ft. in breadth; its height from the pavement to the top amounts to 370 ft. St Paul's is the third largest church in Christendom being surpassed only by St. Peter in Rome and the Cathedral of Milan. Its mighty dome, with a lantern above it, surmounted by a ball and an enormous gilt cross, is allowed to be the finest in the world. The façade is flanked by two lofty belfries one of which contains a fine peal of 12 bells, and the other the largest bell in England, called 'Great Paul'.

What a retentive memory you have! But did you not visit the interior to admire the beauty and vastness of its proportions?

So we did. We entered it from the west and approached the choir at the moment when the majestic peal of the organ, which is said to be one of the finest in Great Britain, filled the mighty edifice with its swelling harmonious sounds. I never can hear an organ sound without experiencing a vivid sensation of delight, which this time was further increased by the imposing aspect of the sacred building.

Did you also look at the tombs and monuments which fill the church and the crypt in great number?

Yes, we did so; but I only remember those of the Duke of Wellington and of the Admirals Nelson and Napier which appeared to me the most remarkable. — Then my companion bade me follow him to the 'Whispering Gallery' in the interior of the cupola, to be reached by a flight of 260 steeps, and most remarkable for a curious acoustic effect. When we arrived there, he asked me to remain at one side of the gallery, whilst he went away to the opposite one, where I saw him whisper a few words close to the wall; and though faintly uttered at a distance of more than a hundred feet, I understood them quite perfectly. Then he wished me to do the same; and, when I did so, he repeated to me word for word what I had whispered ever so faintly against the wall.

From St. Paul's we went to the *Tower*, the ancient fortress and gloomy state-prison of London and historically the most interesting spot in England. But instead of a single fortified tower which I had expected to find, I was

surprised to see before me an irregular mass of buildings surrounded by battlement walls.

You know that the Tower is presumed to stand on the spot where in Roman times a fort had been erected! The oldest portion of the present pile of buildings, *the White Tower*, dates from the reign of William the Conqueror. Originally built as a fortress, it has frequently been used as a royal residence down to the reign of Queen Elizabeth, but is chiefly known as a prison for state-prisoners.

Quite so, and the darkest crimes of English history have been committed within its walls. No room or spot, but has been sprinkled with the blood of cruelly murdered victims. Here Richard II. was made to abdicate his crown in favour of Henry of Bolingbroke, afterwards Henry IV.; here the weak-minded Henry VI. was caused to be murdered; here the villanous Richard of Gloucester caused his two little nephews, Edward V. and the Duke of York, to be smothered; here the bloody-minded tyrant Henry VIII. ordered two of his six wives, Anne Boleyn and Catherine Howard, to be beheaded, and here the innocent Lady Jane Grey, who had been queen for twelve days against her will, and her husband were condemned to suffer the same fate by her bigoted cousin Queen Mary, called the Bloody Mary. Here on Tower Hill, within the precincts of the Tower, the brilliant young Earl of Essex, the once beloved favourite of Queen Elizabeth, was doomed to suffer death for having offended the Queen's vanity, and his enemy, the celebrated navigator, discoverer, and historian, Sir Walter Raleigh, was condemned to die on the same spot after sixteen years of imprisonment. I declare, I felt my heart tremble within me when I beheld the scenes of so much bloodshed, cruelty, and crime.

I quite understand your feelings; but I hope you will have been comforted at the thought that the Tower is no longer used for such cruel deeds, but has to serve more peaceful purposes. Now the ill-famed *White Tower* is turned into a kind of arsenal with a very interesting collection of arms, and another tower, called the *Wakefield Tower*, holds the 'English Crown Jewels' or 'Regalia', that is to say, all the insignia used at state ceremonies, as crowns, sceptres, swords, and other precious jewels and ornaments which altogether are valued at three millions of pounds sterling.

We saw them too. We caused ourselves to be conducted by one of the attendants and arrived at a large glass case in which the jewels are kept, surrounded

and protected by a strong iron cage. The most interesting object among them seemed to me Queen Victoria's Crown, adorned with 2783 diamonds.

Speaking of the attendants, did you not see the *'Beef-eaters'* standing at the entrance and at different parts of the Tower?

No, indeed, I did not? What or who are they?

Why, the *'Beef-eaters'* are the warders of the Tower, officially designated *Yeomen of the Guard,* old soldiers of meritorious service and quaintly attired in the costume of the 16th century. The term is commonly supposed to be a corruption of *Buffetier,* attendants at the royal Buffet or sideboard; but it is more probably a nickname bestowed on the ancient Yeomen of the Guard to whom portions of beef were ordered to be served when being on duty.

A few steps from the Tower lead us to the *Tower Subway,* a tunnel, as you know, passing under the Thames and leading to *Southwark.* Although quite tired with walking the whole day I suffered myself to be conducted through it by my obliging companion. Thence, although my guide would have me walk the whole way back again, we went to the nearest *Metropolitan* or *Underground Railway Station*[1] to take the train which went through the *Thames Tunnel* a little farther down the river. Thus I had passed twice under the Thames within a few minutes.

Exercises.

1. Form sentences in which the Acc. with the Inf. is used without **to** before the following infinitive (§ 108):

a. after verbs of perception,

b. after the verbs to bid, to make, to let, and to have preceded by will.

2. Give instances in which the acc. c. inf. is followed by **to** before the infinitive:

a. after verbs expressing a wish or desire (§ 109 a)

b. after verbs expressing an order, a command, or a defence (b);

[1] The *Underground Railway* consists of several circular lines, the inner, the middle, and the outer circle, which run partly in tunnels beneath the streets and the houses. They are managed by two Companies, the *Metropolitan* and the *Metropolitan District Company* which are often at variance with each other.

c. after verbs expressing a permission (c);

d. after verbs of 'saying' and 'thinking' (d).

3. Change, in the following sentences, the infinitive active into the inf. passive:

We caused him to build a house. The general commanded the army to attack the enemy. The officer forbade the soldiers to shoot the traitors. He required me to follow him (§ 111). We ordered the cabman to drive us to the British Museum.

4. Change a. the Accusative Case of the sentences in the §§ 108 a, and 109 a, b, c, d into sentences with a Nominative and the Infinitive (§ 110).

b. the Nominative Case of the sentences in § 110 into the Accusative Case with the Infinitive.

5. Form sentences like those in § 111.

20. Im Speisehaus.

Wo haben Sie gestern zu Mittag gespeist? Ich sah Sie mit einem Herrn gehen, den ich für Ihren Landsmann hielt.

Ganz recht. Es war Herr Professor Schneider. Er wünschte, daß ich mit ihm speiste, da auch er allein war. Wir gingen in ein Speisehaus im Strand, wo wir uns ein gutes Diner servieren ließen.

Speisten Sie nach der Karte* oder zu festen Preisen*?

Wir haben ein Diner zu 3 s. 6 d. bestellt, das aus einer Nudelsuppe,* Steinbutt,* Rinderbraten mit Bratkartoffeln* so viel wir wollten, und Cheshire Käse bestand. Dazu haben wir jeder ein halbes Quart Ale getrunken. Dann nahmen wir eine Droschke und befahlen dem Kutscher, uns durch Hyde Park zu fahren, da es noch nicht spät war. Zuletzt wollte mein Landsmann noch, daß ich mit ihm ins Theater ginge, um den Abend angenehm zu verbringen.

Nun, ich muß erklären, daß Sie Ihre Zeit gut ausgenützt haben. Wollen Sie mir nun das Vergnügen machen, Sie heute in ein anderes Speisehaus in Piccadilly Circus zu führen, wo man sehr gut nach der Karte speist? Ich weiß, daß Sie ein kleiner Feinschmecker* sind, und erwarte daher, daß Sie nicht ablehnen* werden.

Sie sollen sich nicht geirrt* haben; ich werde mich von Ihnen führen lassen, da ich weiß, daß Sie Ihr Wort einlösen* werden.

Darüber* dürfen Sie beruhigt* sein. — Hier sind wir schon. Bitte, treten Sie ein. — Kellner, die Speisekarte.*

Was für Suppe wünschen Sie zu essen? Hier steht* Ochsenschwanzsuppe, Schildkrötensuppe,* Gemüsesuppe,* Erbsensuppe,* Fleischbrühsuppe, und noch einige andere.

Ich meine (fancy), daß eine Ochsenschweifsuppe das Beste ist, was wir essen können; ich wenigstens esse sie sehr gern.

Einverstanden.* Und welche Beigerichte wünschen Sie, daß nachher serviert werden? Es giebt frische Austern, das Dutzend zu 2 M. 50 Pf., Caviar mit gerösteten Brotschnitten,* Sardinen,* kleine Krabben,* Krebse* und geräucherten Lachs* und Hummer.*

Dann bitte befehlen Sie dem Kellner, daß er uns zwei Dutzend Austern mit gerösteten Brotschnitten bringt. Außerdem denke ich mir (imagine), daß eine Flasche Weißwein dazu sehr gut sein wird.

Ah, ich sehe, Sie verstehen sich darauf.*

Was für Fisch befehlen Sie zu servieren, meine Herren? Wir haben Lachs, Forellen,* Kabeljau,* gebratene Seezunge* und Makrelen.*

Ich glaube, daß gebratene Seezunge sehr gut nach Austern sein wird. Lachs halte ich für zu schwer. Wenn Sie damit einverstanden* sind, dann möchte ich, daß Sie einen Braten wählten.

Ich bekenne, daß ich mit den englischen Bezeichnungen noch wenig vertraut bin. Ich vermute, daß Sie größere Übung darin haben.

Es ist zu haben heißer Rinderbraten, das Nationalgericht* der Engländer, Beefsteaks mit Austernsauce,[1] Lendenstück,* gebratene Hammelkeule,* Hammelrücken,* Kalbsbraten,* Schweinebraten. Von Wild* giebt es Rebhuhn,* Fasan* und Rehbraten.* Nun, was befehlen Sie, daß man Ihnen serviere?

Ich denke, daß ein Stückchen Rehkeule mit Kopfsalat* und Kartoffelpüree* ganz passend sein wird.

Sehr gut, und nach diesem schlage ich Ihnen vor, uns ein feines Gemüse, wie grüne Bohnen,* Blumenkohl,* Spinat,* Erbsen oder Champignons* und zum Schlusse ein Stückchen zarten Hühner-* oder Entenbraten servieren zu lassen. Frische Spargel* giebt es in dieser Jahreszeit leider nicht.

O du meine Güte! Halten Sie mich für unersättlich*? Ein Stückchen Geflügel, meine ich, dürfte ganz hinreichend sein. Höchstens* noch etwas Früchte oder Käse zum Nachtisch; denn ich bin kein Freund von süßen Speisen, von Puddings oder

[1] Unter sauce versteht der Engländer nur künstlich gemachte Saucen, von denen stets eine Anzahl in Flaschen auf dem Tische stehen; die bekannteste davon ist die sogen. Worcester(shire) sauce (Uusterschir); die aus dem Fleisch quillende natürliche Brühe nennt er 'gravy'.

Pasteten,* von denen die Engländer so eingenommen* sind. Rhabarber-Pastete jedoch erkläre ich (to be) ganz nach (to) meinem Geschmacke.

Dann wollen wir den Kellner veranlassen, uns welche zu bringen

Nun, wie hat Ihnen unser Diner geschmeckt*?

Vortrefflich.* Die englische Küche hat sich als (to be) besser erwiesen als ihr Ruf.* Nun lassen Sie uns bezahlen und gehen.

Kellner, wie viel zusammen?

Ein Pfund vier Schillinge und sechs Pence.

Können Sie mir auf eine Fünf-Pfund-Note herausgeben*?

Ja, mein Herr; hier sind drei Pfund fünfzehn Schillinge und sechs Pence.

Und hier ist ein Schilling für Sie.

Danke Ihnen, Herr. Guten Tag, meine Herren.

Proverbs: Praise a fair day at night. — Be still and have thy will. — Every day in thy life is a leaf in thy history. — Waste not, want not. — Short accounts make long friends.

Quotations: I awoke one day and found myself famous. (Byron.)
Coming events cast their shadows before. (Campbell.)

Idiomatic Expressions: Keep it a secret behalte es für dich.
It is next to an impossibility es ist beinahe unmöglich.
I was like to be killed ich wäre beinahe getötet worden.
To take offence (umbrage) at sich beleidigt fühlen über.
What's your charge? } Wie viel habe ich zu bezahlen?
What's the damage? } Wie viel macht es?

Conundrum: What word becomes shorter by the addition of a syllable? (Short.)

III. Reader Nr. 46—50.

11th Lesson.

Participles and Gerund.

II, §§ 112—119.

21. Amusements.

You wish to know something of our amusements, our pleasures, and pastimes, in which, as you say, we surpass all other nations? There is, I think, no denying this fact; I am even inclined to maintain that on our culti-

vating so much the out-door games and pastimes depends in a great measure our being so healthy, sturdy, and energetic a people. Another source of our general well-being may, besides, be found in our eagerly pursuing the invigorating exercises of country life. For too much sitting and studying behind books, as you do in Germany, does not agree with our natural temper. Besides, early rising, temperate living, regular working, and frequent travelling are greatly conducive to health. All these things, strictly observed, will make a man vigorous and tend to prolong his life.

Entering more closely upon our subject, let me observe that we distinguish between open-air or out-door sports and in-door games and amusements. The latter are calculated for sharpening the intellect and passing away the time agreeably, whilst the former are appropriate to exercise and fortify the body. The long winter evenings are particularly fit for playing in-door games.

Thus ladies like to amuse themselves with playing draughts and forfeits and, if inclined for merry-making, at blind-man's buff or with dancing, whilst gentlemen prefer playing at cards, at chess, at dice, or dominoes, or at a game of billiards. Musical people entertain themselves with playing on the piano, on the violin, or on the flute, or with singing.

Out-door games and sports are particularly the recreations of youth. During the fine weather, we see our children playing at catch-ball, at hide-and-seek, and battledore, and shuttle-cock, we see them swinging in the swing, and flying the kite, we hear them shouting while bathing in the brook, chasing the bee or butterfly, or while whipping the whiptop in the streets or squares; we hear them singing while wandering through the cornfields and meadows or running through the woods.

These games and amusements, however, are, strictly speaking, but pastimes and pleasures; whilst there is a higher sort of recreation or exercise, commonly called "sports" which are intended for developing the strength and agility of the body and forming the character. Some of them, as *cricket* and *foot-ball,* may be properly designated as national games. A great number of other sports, as boating, hunting, horse-racing, and the so-called athletic sports of boxing, wrestling, running, and jumping, the modern game of *Lawn-tennis* and others are greatly

cultivated in England, most of them may be considered as thoroughly English games and amusements.

There is no better opportunity of observing, enjoying and studying all these games than on a trip along the banks of the Thames which for miles are studded with beautiful towns, villages, and country-seats with numerous playing-grounds. I, therefore, propose taking an afternoon's walk with me through some of these places and fields, unless you decline walking. But in this case nothing prevents us from hiring a cab and thus taking it easily.

Why, then, I cannot help remarking that I am not very fond of strolling about in the dusty roads; wherefore I rather prefer driving along.

Very well; then I will have a cab hired immediately. Be ready in a moment; I will only get my boots cleaned and my clothes brushed and be back in the twinkling of an eye.

. .

Here we are. Yonder is a cricket-ground. In crossing this field we shall get to it. Excuse my leading the way. Now I think we remain standing here; for we are not allowed to approach beyond this line. It is to prevent people's drawing too near. There is a cricket-match just being played. Do you see the two 'wickets' pitched opposite each other? They consist each of three 'stumps' fixed in the ground at 22 yards distance from one another, with two small pieces of wood, called 'bails', lying across on the top of them. These preparations being finished, the game begins.

There are two sides playing against each other, either consisting generally of eleven players or cricketers, commonly called the "eleven", with an 'umpire' on each side who has to decide on doubtful cases of playing. The side which is 'batting', is said to be 'in'; it is their "innings"; the other side is 'bowling' and 'fielding'; their men are placed all over the field in certain positions to catch the ball. The player throwing the ball is the 'bowler'. His 'bowling' is very fine; I never saw it done like this. His aim is to hit the wicket of the opponent party, whilst the 'batter', placed before it with the 'bat' in his hands, has to defend it by stopping or striking the ball and sending it away as far as possible. This done, he has to make his "runs" from one wicket to the other till the ball is returned. If the wicket be hit with the ball by one of the antagonists before his returning to his position, he is

'put out" and has done playing for the first inning. The batters or batsmen have to do the lion's share of the 'running'. The 'runs' are scored or reckoned up by the scorer who enters them in a book.

The side that is bowling and fielding has to get the other 'eleven' out before they can have their 'innings'. Bowling, batting, and fielding require much skill and swiftness of the eyes, hands, and legs, as you see. A regular cricket-match has only two innings on either side, but there are matches lasting sometimes for three days.

But in spite of my explanations, I fear I have not been able to give you a full insight into the game without entering into all the details of its technicalities. The best thing for you would be to try playing it yourself one day. It is really worth learning.

I cannot forbear showing my surprise at so much skilfulness and dexterity and I shall not neglect trying to learn this capital game while staying in England.

There is a game of *foot-ball* [1] going on not far from here. Did you ever see it played?

No, I did not, but I should very much like to do so.

Then let us not tarry any longer. Some friends of mine are playing in this field: at least I remember their telling me so the other day. — There they are; they just come running in this direction.

"Foot-ball" is a very old game; there is no saying when it was invented. Shakespeare (1564—1616) speaks of it in his "Comedy of Errors". — You see the two parties placed before their respective "goals" opposite to each other at a distance of about 80 to a 100 yards? The goals consist of two upright 'posts' joined by a 'cross-bar' eight yards long at a height of ten feet from the ground. The main object in playing is to kick the large ball, made of india-rubber and covered with leather, through the opposite goal either above or below the cross-bar according to the system of playing. The practice of the "Rugby Union" of picking up the ball and running with it to the front of the goal and trying to kick it over, often gives rise to rough and dangerous fighting called "scrimmaging". According to the new rules of the "Association Game" the "goal-keeper" only, who has to defend the goal, is allowed to touch the ball with his hands; and the whole play is done by kicking

1 This involves a little anachronism; for the two games are played a different seasons, cricket in spring and summer, foot-ball in autumn.

the ball with the foot. By the observing of these rules I think more skill and agility may be brought into play and much roughness and many accidents avoided.

And still from what I have seen I cannot avoid remarking that the game must be very rough and apt to develop the brutal senses in man.

There is no gainsaying the fact that violent quarrels and serious accidents, as broken arms, legs, ribs, and collar-bones, are of frequent occurrence.

Then let us pass on to that *lawn-tennis ground* just across this field, where I see a number of ladies and gentlemen playing this nice and fashionable game. After having seen that too, I think we may return.

Just as you like. But what a pity! They have just left off playing, and so it is no use crossing over. But never mind, my dear fellow; there is no end of playing *lawn-tennis* in England and you can see it anywhere. We also have a lawn-tennis ground in our gardens with the "net" and a number of balls and "rackets". I shall get the net put up for to-morrow. Whilst practising I can teach you the rules; there is no better means of learning them than by practising. You will much admire my sister's playing; she is a first-rate hand at it. Her taking the balls seems quite wonderful to me. — I expected her coming with us to-day, but she was prevented by a visit. Should you like some of our lady-friends visiting us and playing with us to-morrow? I'll have them invited instantly!

Thank you most heartily; but I had rather not. Being quite a new hand at it, I should not care about being too much observed or criticized at my very first beginning; for I am sure they often would burst out laughing at me.

Well, please yourself.

Exercises.

1. Give some sentences in which the Present Part. is used to qualify the action of a verb (§ 113 b).

2. Translate: a. Laßt uns fortfahren zu spielen, zu singen u. s. w. Sie kamen herbei (along) gegangen. Sie fingen an zu trinken. Sie hörten auf zu spielen.

b. in two ways: Ich höre meine Schwester singen. Wir sehen die Leute spielen. Ich fühle den Schmerz zunehmen (to grow).

c. Ich sah den Ball stoßen. Wir hörten die Glocken läuten. Wir sahen das Spiel spielen.

3. Form subordinate sentences with the Present Participle having:

a. one common subject with the principal sentence;

b. a separate subject from it (absolute participial clause) § 114.

4. Form other participial clauses to be translated by relative sentences (§ 114 b).

5. Give some sentences with a gerund being

a. the subject, b. the object, c. the predicate, d. the attribute (§ 116).

6. Give sentences with a gerund preceded

a. by the definite article,

b. by a pronoun,

c. by a preposition.

d. by an adjective (§ 115).

7. Translate by making use of the gerund:

Ich hoffe, daß Sie morgen zurückkehren werden. Wünschen Sie, daß ich Sie begleite? Ich finde, daß Ihre Schwester sehr gut spielt. Viel Geschick wird entfaltet* beim Werfen des Balles. Das Studieren der englischen Sprache ist nicht leicht. Sein Studium (ger.) der englischen Sprache ist bald beendigt. Durch das Studieren der englischen Sprache wird man auch mit den englischen Sitten bekannt. Wir erwarten, daß Ihre Freunde uns begleiten werden. Durch vieles Spielen sind die Engländer ein kräftiges Volk geworden. Man kann nicht daran zweifeln, daß die Engländer uns im Spielen überlegen sind. Es hilft nichts, diese Thatsache zu leugnen. Ich kann nicht umhin, die Engländer wegen ihrer Körperkraft* zu bewundern. Das Kricketspiel ist des Sehens wert. Wir sind fertig mit Schreiben.

22. Wasservergnügen.*

Zwei der schönsten Vergnügen der Engländer, Bootfahren* und Schwimmen, hat man viel Gelegenheit an der Themse zu beobachten. Es ist nicht zu leugnen, daß uns die Engländer darin weit voraus sind, wie sie (es) auch früher in der Kunst gewesen sind, Schiffe zu bauen und zu lenken.* Die größten und schönsten Fahrzeuge,* welche um die Welt fahren, sind in den Londoner Docks zu sehen; ein solch stattliches* Schiff ist wohl des Sehens wert. In alter Zeit war die einzige Art, Schiffe in Bewegung zu setzen* durch Rudern*; aber auch die Segelschiffe* sind schon sehr alt. Im Anfange unseres Jahrhunderts erfand man die Dampfschiffe,*

welche vermittelst des (of) Dampfes fortgetrieben* werden.

Alle Engländer sind sehr vom Bootwettfahren* eingenommen. Sie unterscheiden Ruderfahren* und Segelfahren.* Die gebräuchlichsten Boote sind die Acht-Ruderboote,* die für acht Ruderer* und einen Steuermann,* der das Steuerruder* bedient, eingerichtet* sind. Gutes, gleichmäßiges* Rudern ist nicht leicht; aber auch sicheres Steuern* ist keine leichte Aufgabe.

Das Hauptereignis des Jahres auf der Themse ist das Ruderwettfahren, welches zwischen den Ruderern der Universitäten Oxford und Cambridge stattfindet und 'Oxford and Cambridge Boat Race' genannt wird. Die Londoner strömen hinaus, um (for) die Boot-Wettfahrt zu sehen, indem sie entweder die dunkelblauen* Farben von Oxford oder die hellblauen von Cambridge zur Schau tragen.* Ganz England teilt sich an diesem Tage in zwei Parteien, die Dunkelblauen und die Hellblauen, und selbst die Dienstboten bleiben nicht zurück, (um) ihre Sympathien für die eine oder die andere Universität zu zeigen.

Heute kann man auch viel Rudern sehen. Dort sind drei Boote; sie kommen gerade auf uns zu gerudert. Ihr Rudern ist vortrefflich.* Man hört ihre Ruder nicht ins Wasser tauchen.* Laßt uns ein wenig niedersetzen, während sie vorüber fahren. Die jungen Leute,* die am Steuer (pl.) sitzen, scheinen sehr ruhig und fest* zu sein. Ich glaube, die Hellblauen gewinnen; sehen Sie, wie sie die andern überholen*? Es ist kein Zweifel daran, daß sie die stärksten sind. Jetzt haben sie das Ziel* erreicht

Nachdem dies geschehen, lassen Sie uns weiter gehen. Schwimmen Sie gern? Hier wäre eine schöne Gelegenheit zum Baden. Badehosen* können wir in jener Badeanstalt* haben. Dort giebt es einen Schwimmplatz* und auch Badezellen.* Ich schlage Ihnen vor, ein Bad zu nehmen. Ich bin ein großer Freund vom Baden. Denn durch vieles Baden und Schwimmen wird man gesund und kräftig.

Proverbs: The river past and God forgotten. — Fools grow without watering. — More haste, less speed. — There is no disputing about tastes. — There is no reaping without sowing. The proof of the pudding is the eating.

Quotations: The world is ashamed of being virtuous (Sterne.)

If all the year were playing holidays, to sport would be as tedious as to work. (Shakesp. Henry IV.)

Idiomatic Expressions: He has thought better of it er hat sich eines Bessern besonnen.
The saying will hold good das Sprichwort wird sich bewahrheiten.
It stands to reason es ist nur billig (läßt sich hören).
To play at sight vom Blatte spielen.
The tables are turned das Blatt hat sich gewendet.
Just in the rick of time gerade im rechten Augenblick.

Conundrum: Why is cricket unlikely to succeed in future?
(Because it was intended for pastime (past time).

III. Reader Nr. 51—55.

12th Lesson.

The Conjunctive Mood. — Conjunctions.

II, §§ 120—121. II, §§ 122—129.

28. English Country-Life.

How glad I am to see you! *May* you feel happy and make a long stay with us! I only *regret* you *should* not have come a few days earlier when we had some very pleasant friends staying with us. It was a good idea of yours to come and pay us a visit in the country; for apart from our pleasure, it is chiefly in the country that English life and manners can be well observed and studied, and if I *be* not mistaken, I think this to be the main object of your coming to England. As a rule, the better classes of English society are not to be found in large towns, except on business. Our ladies and gentlemen do not loiter about the streets or sit before 'cafés' and 'restaurants' till midnight, *as* you will have seen in France, *nor do they* spend their evenings in open-air concerts and pleasure-gardens, *as* you do in Germany: the Englishman's home is the country, the fresh, deep green, healthful country, where he spends the greater part of the year, and where domestic and social habits, virtues, occupations, and amusements receive their highest cultivation. Even our tradespeople, *whatever* be their business, will either hire *or* build a small villa or cottage in the country, *provided* their means be not too limited. Therefore, *whosoever* may *wish* to see and learn something of our English homes and English life, let him *come* into the country and *leave* behind him the smoky, incongenial atmosphere of large towns.

And now, please, come in *that* I may *offer* you some refreshments — a glass of port or sherry with some

biscuits — for dinner will not be ready till one o'clock (we have early dinners in the country) and show you your room and our house afterwards. — Our English country houses are commonly but of two stories; yet they are quite large enough as they are inhabited by one family only. Country-houses of larger dimensions are generally called 'mansions', 'manor-houses', or 'country-seats'. Those neat little houses with gardens or small parks round about them as you have seen in the suburbs of London and on your way in coming are called 'villas' or 'cottages'.

This is a splendid old house; I dare say you must be very comfortable in it. — Now I should very much like you to tell me something about English society, unless your business claim your presence elsewhere for the moment.

With the greatest pleasure. I am entirely at your disposal and shall be happy to give you any information you like. In the first place, I think it is just you should know something of our social conditions. Let me begin with a few facts as to my own social position.

I belong to the class of gentlemen-farmers, called "yeomen" in former times, that is to say, land-owners that cultivate their own lands themselves. Our number is but small in England, although continually increasing. Most of our 'farmers' are only 'tenants', holding their lands in lease from the great landlords, formerly called 'squires', a title no longer in use except in the form of 'Esquire' employed in the direction of letters. We gentlemen-farmers belong to the 'gentry', that is to say, the well-educated and independent classes of society, that do not belong to the nobility. There is to be distinguished a 'titled' gentry, as 'baronets' and 'knights', and an 'untitled' one to which belong our officers, scholars, great land-owners, great merchants, and the clergy. Our nobility comprises five degrees: dukes, marquesses, earls, viscounts, and barons, who are commonly called 'Lords', a title which is also given to Bishops, called spiritual Lords, and the Mayors of London, York, Dublin, and Edinburgh, and, "by courtesy", to the sons of dukes and marquesses, and the eldest sons of earls. The wives of the temporal Lords are addressed as 'Ladies'; while those of spiritual Lords are addressed only as Mrs. Temple or the like. — Baronets and knights, often called the 'lower nobility', are entitled to use 'Sir' before their Christian names; whilst in conversation their family names are usually dropped. The titles of 'baronet' and 'knight' are generally titles of merit; the first of them only is heréditary.

I am very much obliged to you for your interesting information. But, please, to tell me now, how you spend your time.

My chief occupation is farming, and although I do not exactly till the ground myself by following the plough, by sowing the grain or handling the sickle or the scythe, I am obliged to look sharply after things lest they be neglected or badly done.

And do you find that farming pays you well?

Not overmuch, except when the seasons be propitious and no epidemic diseases break out among the herds of cattle or flocks of sheep of which I always keep a great stock. Besides, agricultural labourers are very scarce and exacting at the present time and, in consequence, the wages are very high. — But as it is a fine morning, suppose we go into the farm-yard and to the orchards and fields to have a look at the growing crops which are very promising this year! I think we shall have a good harvest, provided there be no rough and inclement weather, as storms of hail, violent thunderstorms or blights. For many things may occur before it be harvested. Yet we must be resigned, howsoever it may fall, and work away, whatever may be the results of our labour.

Indeed, your fields promise well; I wish you may have a very fine harvest. And are there also any amusements in the country to pass the time agreeably when there is not much work to do?

No end of them, had I but time to attend to them! Notwithstanding I do not deny but that town-amusements and pleasures may be more attractive; ours, however, are at least as rational and wholesome. No village but has its cricket and football clubs practising on certain days in the week or playing matches with other clubs in the neighbourhood; there are croquet and lawn-tennis grounds, especially for young ladies, and athletic sports of all kinds for our young men to keep them strong and muscular; there are even boat-races and swimming matches in summer and skating and *paper-chases* in winter.

Please, what do you mean by paper-chases?

It is strange you should never have heard of them. Well, the paper-chase is a kind of chase particularly played at schools and colleges, in which one or two fellows represent the game. They start about a quarter of an hour before the rest, who represent the hounds, and run across fields and woods, jump hedges, walls, and ditches, and occa-

sionally throw out bits of paper, "the scent", to mark the track. They often may run for hours before they be caught; sometimes they are not caught at all.

It must be a very exciting game, I dare say.

So it is, and very healthy too, requiring besides a great deal of pluck, agility, good lungs, and perseverance on either side. But as for myself, I prefer real chases to fictitious ones. There are two sports I like most, viz. *fishing* and *hunting*. I often take my fishing-tackle to catch a few trout in the brook near by. I only practise fly-fishing with artificial flies which I keep in my fly-book; I don't care either for 'trolling' or 'bottom-fishing'. But one must be very careful and cautious lest one catch no fish whatever; for trout are very shy.

It seems fishing is a great passion with you.

As with most Englishmen; however hunting keeps a still greater hold on me than any other rural sport. We distinguish three branches of it: 'hunting', 'coursing', and 'shooting', all three comprised in the common appellation of the 'chase'. The first is done with hounds and hunting-horses without the use of guns, and comprises fox und stag-hunting; it lasts until the game be either tired out or overtaken by the hounds. Coursing is the chasing of game especially of hares with grey-hounds in the former manner, and shooting is done with dogs and fire-arms on all sorts of game, the flesh of which is fit for eating, particularly of fowls. But in order to form a correct idea of our country-life, you should spend the winter with us; for winter is the pleasantest season of all the year. Then our fashionable people, that have spent the season in London or in rambling about the Continent, return to their homes in the country, and then begins a time of merry-making, particularly of feasting, dancing, playing and the like. I wish you were here and could join in it! If I were you, I should return at Christmas.

You are very kind indeed; I myself wish I might be able to return, were it only for a short time. But alas! I fear I shall not come back so soon; it will be years perhaps ere I may return.

What a pity then you should not be able to stay long! You certainly would be pleased and soon make friends with our rector[1] who is a capital man, a fine preacher, and

[1] A rector or parish priest is the head of a parish and enjoys the whole income or prebend of it. He often keeps a substitute or 'curate' whom he pays from his income, generally 100 £. A 'vicar' is an independant clergyman receiving only part of the parish income. The term 'parson' is applied indifferently to all ranks of the clergy, and often used to convey a feeling of contempt or ridicule. (Cf. the German 'Pfaffe'.)

a very agreeable companion. He is something of a banker and a doctor, and acts sometimes as a lawyer and a general agent. He is ever ready to arbitrate in family differences on condition they should not be of too serious and too complicated a nature; he is expected to procure occupation for lads and maidens who wish to go out into the world. He is at the head of the school committee, and a member of all the benéficent institutions of the community; then he has to do duty as a house-to-house visitor among his parishioners and to inquire into their personal griefs and necessities; he is in fact the soul and centre of the neighbourhood to whom everybody, whatever may be his calling or education, refers for help or advice and never returns without having obtained some comfort or relief. Therefore it is quite natural that he should be loved and revered by everybody. He also manages our public or circulating library and directs our *'penny-readings'*.

May I ask you what you understand by penny-readings?

They are a sort of popular concerts or evening entertainments in which amateur readers, reciters, players, and singers act together to entertain the village audience. The entrance-fee is one penny, hence the name of 'penny-readings'.

This seems to me a very laudable institution, particularly calculated to inspire the lower classes with a taste for higher amusements and to keep them from spending their evenings in beer-houses.

There you are quite right. Besides, our country people are not so insensible but that they should not reap some benefit from them. Have you nothing like it in Germany?

I am sorry to say, we have not. I am sure they would be a great benefit to our country people in many ways, were it but to bring about the mutual accord of the different classes of society. Who knows but we may have something like them some day?

And that's what you want very badly in your country, I dare say. — But should we not go and pay our Rector a visit after dinner? For although he spend(s) most of his time in serving and helping others, he is always glad to welcome visitors whether they be parishioners or not. — There you see the rectory on this side of the church, a substantial building, set in a splendid garden, girt with a hedge of fuchsias, myrtle, and laurel. — Now the bell rings for dinner. I hope you have got a good appetite.

Exercises.

1. Form a few sentences in the Subjunctive Mood expressing:

a. an intention, and beginning with 'that' or 'lest' (§ 121 b).

b. after verbs expressing a desire, regret, or fear (§ 121 c).

2. Complete the following

a. concessive sentences:

Our clergyman assists all the poor of our parish although —. He gives his advice to everybody whether he — or —. He never refuses his assistance whosoever —. He arbitrates in family differences except they —.

b. conditional sentences:

He invites him to return if —. I prefer real chases provided —. I like to go a fishing on condition —. You will stay with us in case you —. Every Englishman chooses to live in the country unless —.

c. adverbial sentences:

We are not quite sure of our crops till they —. The hunters often hunt for hours before —. Are you hungry? It will be some time ere —.

3. Form sentences with impersonal clauses.

24. Englische Feste* und Feiertage.*

Vorausgesetzt daß es Ihre Zeit erlaubt, würde ich Ihnen sehr verbunden* sein, wenn Sie mir etwas über die englischen Feste und Feiertage sagen wollten.

Sehr gern, doch unter der Bedingung, daß Sie mich gütigst entschuldigen (wollen), wenn ich manchmal abgerufen werde. Und es ist möglich, daß dies mehrere Male eintritt,* da gegenwärtig viel zu thun ist. — Wir feiern eine große Menge Feste in England, teils religiöser, teils weltlicher Art. Das schönste von allen ist das Weihnachtsfest.* Ich wünschte Sie könnten hier sein wenigstens von Weihnachten bis zum Dreikönigstage; denn während dieser Zeit ist jedermann lustig, wofern er nicht durch Krankheit oder irgendwelchen Umstand verhindert ist. Sie sollten wirklich bei uns bleiben, es sei denn daß Ihre Pflicht Sie zurückruft. Während dieser Zeit läd jede Familie ihre Freunde ein oder giebt Bälle, vorausgesetzt daß sie die Mittel dazu hat. Auch heidnische* Gebräuche werden noch beobachtet, wie z. B. das Aufhängen des Mistelzweiges* in

den Bauernhäusern.* Es ist zu bedauern, daß dieser Brauch nach und nach ausstirbt* (will). In diesen Tagen ist jeder willkommen, wer es auch sei. Es ist nur zu natürlich, daß auch alle Armen kommen (will), damit sie nicht vergessen werden. An diesen Tagen, wie an allen englischen Feiertagen, wird viel gegessen (there is —), besonders Rinderbraten, Truthahn, Plum-Pudding und Mince-Pasteten.* Es giebt Leute, die da meinen sie hätten Weihnachten nicht gefeiert, wofern sie sich nicht sehr satt* gegessen haben. Am Weihnachts-Montag erhalten die Dienstboten Geschenke von ihren Herren, die sogenannte Weihnachtsschachtel.* Man wünscht sich gegenseitig Glück,* und der gebräuchliche* Glückwunsch, den man in diesen Tagen hört, ist: „Eine fröhliche* Weihnacht und ein glückliches Neujahr!" Es ist seltsam, daß auch alle Briefe um diese Zeit mit dieser Formel geschlossen werden (should).

Andere religiöse Festtage sind der Palmsonntag,* Grüne Donnerstag,* Charfreitag,* Ostersonntag, Himmelfahrtstag* und Pfingsten.* Obgleich der Charfreitag ein religiöser Festtag ist, der z. B. bei Ihnen in Deutschland sehr feierlich begangen* wird, ist es in England einer der geräuschvollsten und lustigsten Tage des Jahres; es ist ein sogenannter Ausflugstag.* Ob dies recht oder unrecht ist, will ich nicht entscheiden. Es ist ferner seltsam, daß in England der zweite Tag der christlichen Hauptfeste nicht kirchlich* gefeiert wird.

Zu den rein weltlichen Festen gehören der Fastnachtsdienstag,* wo ganz England Pfannkuchen* ißt, der Johannistag,* welcher als der größte Festtag in den westlichen Grafschaften gilt,* Michaelis,* dem zu Ehren die meisten Gänse in England sterben müssen, und Neujahrstag, der größte Festtag in Schottland, wo es höchst lustig zugeht.*

Proverbs: Do on hill as you would do in hall. — Liars should have good memories. — A fool, unless he know Latin, is never a great fool. — Were things to be done twice, all men would be wise. — As he has sown, so must he reap.

Quotation: To live in hearts we leave behind is not to die.
(Campbell.)

Idiomatic Expressions:
He resides on his estates er wohnt auf seinem Landgut.
He is very long in coming er läßt lange auf sich warten.
There's nothing like peace at home and abroad es geht nichts über den Frieden in und außer dem Lande.
The fields yield well die Felder sind sehr fruchtbar.
You are before your time du kommst zu früh.

Conundrum: Why is a door always in the subjunctive mood?
(Because it is always (wood) or should be.)

II.

Sprachlehre (Grammar).

B. Satzlehre (Syntax).

I. Der Artikel (the Article).

§ 1. Der bestimmte und der unbestimmte Artikel dienen zum Hervorheben eines oder mehrerer Dinge oder Begriffe aus der Gesamtheit.

Da die englische Sprache zur Bezeichnung von Geschlecht und Zahl je nur einen Artikel besitzt, **the** und **a** (an), so ist die Wiederholung derselben bei Aufzählungen von Substantiven verschiedenen Geschlechts und verschiedener Zahl nicht nötig, ausgenommen, wenn die einzelnen besonders hervorgehoben und wenn verschiedene Personen oder Dinge bezeichnet werden sollen:

The Old World or Eastern Hemisphere.
The French and the Spanish armies.

A. Der bestimmte Artikel (the Definite Article).

§ 2. 1. Gebrauch. Der bestimmte Artikel steht wie im Deutschen:

a. Vor Personennamen und geographischen Namen, wenn sie von einem Adjektiv begleitet sind: the cruel Nero, the diligent Charles, the mighty England.

Ausnahmen: Verschmilzt das Adjektiv mit dem Namen zu einem Begriffe, dann fällt der Artikel weg: Old John, Poor Henry, Young Roland, Little Tom, St. Paul, Merry Old England.

b. Ferner steht der bestimmte Artikel vor Personennamen, wenn sie für Schiffsnamen gebraucht sind: J came with **the** Nelson.

c. Vor den Namen der Flüsse, Meere, Berge und Himmelsgegenden; vor Namen von Ländern im Plural:

the Neva, the Tiber; the Baltic, the Mediterranean; the Caucasus, the Himalaya, the Alps; the north, the south (Ausnahme nach from; from east to west); the Netherlands, the East-Indies.

Außerdem vor folgenden Ländernamen im Singular: the Crimēa, the Tyrol, the Palatinate, the Morēa.

d. In einigen Redensarten:

It is the fashion es ist Mode, it is the custom es ist Sitte,
at the expense of auf Kosten von,
to be out of the question außer Frage sein,
to have the (a) tooth-ache, head-ache Zahn-, Kopfschmerzen haben.
with the (a) view, the (a) intention, the (a) purpose in der Absicht.

§ 3. 2. Wegfall. Der bestimmte Artikel fällt weg:

a. Vor Personennamen (Ausnahmen § 2, 1 a u. b).

b. Vor Titeln und Verwandtschaftsnamen mit unmittelbar folgenden Eigennamen: Queen Victoria, King William; uncle David.

Ausnahme bei folgendem **of**: the Duke **of** Wellington; ferner bei den Titeln czar, emperor, archduke, Erzherzog, grandduke, Großherzog, elector, Kurfürst, princess; demnach: the Czar Alexander, the Emperor William I., the Princess Mary u. s. w.

c. Vor Ländernamen im Singular und vor Städtenamen; Ausnahme the Hague.

d. Vor Namen von Straßen, Plätzen, Brücken und Gebäuden, die nach einer Person oder einem Orte benannt sind: Regent Street, Bedford Square, London Bridge, Buckingham Palace.

e. Vor den geographischen Bezeichnungen lake, mount, Cape: Lake Mælar, Mount Everest, Cape Horn.

Ausnahme: the Cape of Good Hope.

f. Vor den Namen der Tage, Monate und Jahreszeiten: The London season is in the midst of summer, whilst in winter it is the fashion of wealthy people to live in the country.

g. Vor den Namen der Mahlzeiten: breakfast, luncheon, dinner, tea, supper: after breakfast; I went to dinner; we take tea at six o'clock.

h. Vor Stoffnamen und Abstrakten: Ale by itself is bitter; wine is very strong in England; iron is more useful than gold; I prefer liberty of movement to comfort.

i. Vor Gattungsnamen im Plural: Horses are very vigorous and swift in England. Dagegen: **the** horse of my coachman. Hierher gehören auch man und woman im Singular und Plural, und mankind:

Men are more active in England than anywhere else; women enjoy a greater liberty there.

Ausnahmen: Wenn die unter f, g, h und i genannten Substantive durch einen Zusatz näher bezeichnet werden, erhalten sie den bestimmten Artikel: In the summer of 1891: the Sunday after Easter; the English beer is too strong for me. The second breakfast. The finest horses I have ever seen. He had the eloquence of a Cicero.

k. Vor religiösen Begriffen: God, Heaven, earth, Providence, Hell und nature: Thanks to Heaven! Nature is a kind mother to all.

l. Meist vor den Superlativen: most, least, last und fewest: Most of them go a hunting; on last Sunday; auch vor prädikativen Adjektiven und Adverbien: there I shall be nearest to the centre.

Zu merken: at best am besten, at worst am schlimmsten.

m. Vor den Präpositionen **at, from, in, to** in Verbindung mit den Wörtern school, college, church, bed, town, court und prison; I go to school; I come from town; we were at church.

n. In einigen Redensarten: At hand bei der Hand, at play beim Spiel, to be of opinion der Meinung sein, at war im Kriege, at peace im Frieden, to put to rout, to death in die Flucht schlagen, töten, to cast, to weigh anchor Anker werfen, lichten, to lose sight of aus den Augen verlieren, to say grace das Tischgebet sprechen, to give battle eine Schlacht liefern, on condition unter der Bedingung, in prison im Gefängnis.

§ 4. 3. Stellung. Der bestimmte Artikel steht im Englischen nach den Wörtern all (all und ganz), both, double, triple (treble) und half: All the dry land of the globe. The New World is only half the size of the Old World. The water occupies triple the extent of the land.

Ist half mit dem Substantiv zu einem Begriff verbunden, dann tritt der Artikel vor: the halfpenny, the half-crown.

B. Der unbestimmte Artikel (the Indefinite Article).

§ 5. 1. Gebrauch. Der unbestimmte Artikel wird im Englischen für den bestimmten gebraucht:

a. Bei Angaben von Menge, Maß, Gewicht und Zeit: Two shillings **a** dozen (das Dutzend); sugar costs 4 d. **a** pound; the fare by time is 2 s. 6 d. **an** hour; half-and-half costs 6 d. **a** pint.

b. Nach den Verben des Seins, Werdens und Scheinens to be, to become, to seem und to appear, to remain und einigen andern Verben wie to live, to die, to fall, um einen Stand, Beruf, Nationalität oder Religion zu bezeichnen:

The Lord Mayor is generally **an** alderman. He seemed to me **a** Cockney. Nelson lived and died **a** hero; he fell **a** victim in the battle of Trafalgar. William III., King of England, was **a** Dutchman; he became **an** Englishman. He was **a** Protestant.

Ausnahme: Nach to turn werden, steht das Prädikat ohne Artikel: I will not turn critic on this occasion.

c. Zuweilen vor dem Partizip Präsens (Gerund vgl. § 115), wo der unbestimmte Artikel aus der ursprünglichen Präposition **on** auf, entstanden ist: To go **a** hunting, **a** fishing. Hierher gehören auch Verbindungen wie: ahead voraus, ashore ans Ufer, afoot zu Fuße, im Gange, asleep im Schlafe, eingeschlafen, alive am Leben, lebendig u. s. w.

d. Vor den Zahlbegriffen **a** hundred, **a** thousand, **a** few einige, a little ein wenig, etwas, a great many sehr viele, a great deal sehr viel.

e. Vor Büchertiteln: A new English Dictionary.

f. Nach **as** und **for**: I had him as **a** guide; I took him for **an** Englishman; as **a** rule in der Regel.

g. In einer Reihe von Redensarten:

To have a mind Lust haben,
to have, to feel an appetite Appetit haben,
to have a (the) tooth-ache, a (the) head-ache Zahn-, Kopfschmerzen haben.
to have an air das Aussehen haben,
to be at a loss in Verlegenheit sein,
to be in a hurry in Eile sein,
to be in a passion, in a fury im Zorn sein,
to be at an end zu Ende sein,
to be under a necessity gezwungen sein,
to make it a rule es zur Regel machen,
to take a fancy lieb gewinnen, Neigung haben,
to make a noise Lärm machen,
to fly, to get into a passion in Zorn geraten,
to bring to an end zu Ende bringen,
to lend a hand die Hand leihen,

on a first view beim ersten Anblick,
under a pretence unter dem Vorwande,
at a distance in einiger Entfernung,
from a fear aus Furcht.

§ 6. 2. Wegfall. Der unbestimmte Artikel fällt weg:

a. Vor den Substantiven part und plenty: I walked part of the way. I had plenty of time ich hatte Zeit genug.

b. Meist nach never und ever vor einem Hauptwort: Never did city make so overpowering an impression on me.

§ 7. 3. Stellung. Der unbestimmte Artikel steht:

a. Nach quite, such, many, half und what (im Ausrufe): Quite a different thing. Such a long time! Many a time. The fare is half-a-crown. What a magnificent sight!

Bei half kann, wenn es mit dem folgenden Substantiv zu einem Begriffe verschmilzt, der unbestimmte wie der bestimmte Artikel auch vorausgehen: A half-hour; a halfpenny; a half-crown.

b. Nach den Adjektiven, wenn as, too, how, however wie auch, was für auch, so und too vorausgehen: I am too lazy **a** correspondent. So overpowering **an** impression. How grand **a** promenade. However magnificent **a** ramble. As interesting **a** town.

c. Nach den Adjektiven im Komparativ, denen no vorausgeht: No more interesting **a** study.

II. Das Substantiv (the Substantive).

§ 8. A. Numerus (Number).

Eine Reihe dem Italienischen entlehnter Substantive auf **o** mit vorhergehenden Konsonanten nehmen im Plural nur ein **s** an:

canto — cantos Gesang solo — solos Solo(gesang)
grotto — grottos Grotte quarto — quartos Quartband
portico — porticos Säulenhalle.

Dagegen aber schreibt man meistens volcanoes Vulkane, und mottoes Mottos.

§ 9. Einige Fremdwörter haben ihren ursprünglichen Plural beibehalten:

crītērium — criteria Kennzeichen,
errātum — errata Irrtum, Druckfehler,

gēnus — genera Geschlecht,
focus — focī Brennpunkt,
gēnius — geniī Schutzgeist,
phenómenon — phenomena wunderbare Erscheinung,
rādius — radiī Strahl,
triúmvir — triumvirī Triumvir,
chérub — cherubim Cherub,
séraph — seraphim Seraph,
beau — beaux Stutzer.

Einige davon haben auch einen englischen Plural: criteriums, focuses, phenomenons, radiuses, cherubs, seraphs und geniuses, in der Bedeutung von Genie.

§ 10. Doppelformen im Plural haben (Vgl. I. Teil § 2 g):

staff {staffs Generalstäbe
Stab {stāves Stäbe

pea {peas einzelne Erbsen
Erbse {pease Erbsen im allgemeinen

die {dies Münzstempel
Stempel, Würfel {dice Würfel.

§ 11. Unverändert bleiben im Plural die Völkernamen auf **ese** und **ss**:

The Chinese der Chinese — the Genoese der Genuese
the Portuguese der Portugiese — the Swiss der Schweizer.

Gleiche Formen im Singular und Plural haben ferner: series (dreisilbig) Serie, Reihe; apparātus Apparat; species (spēzheez) Art, Spezies; rēbus bildet rebuses und banditto, banditti oder bándits.

§ 12. In den zusammengesetzten Substantiven (compound substantives) erhält das Grundwort das Pluralzeichen: salt-cellar**s**, sugar-basin**s**, rabbit-pie**s**, tea-spoon**s**, mutton-chop**s**; father**s**-in-law, tooth-brush**es**.

Besonders zu merken sind: forget-me-not**s** Vergißmeinnicht, good-for-nothing**s** Taugenichtse, looker**s**-on Zuschauer, passer**s**-by Vorübergehende, attorney-general**s** Kronanwälte.

§ 13. Die mit **man** zusammengesetzten Substantive verwandeln **man** in **men**: Englishman — English**men**, Frenchmen, clergymen, aldermen, noblemen, countrymen. Dagegen bilden einen regelmäßigen Plural: German — German**s**, Roman — Roman**s**, Norman — Norman**s**, Mussulman — Mussulman**s**.

§ 14. Folgende Gattungsnamen (generic nouns) bleiben unverändert, wenn sie im kollektiven Sinne gebraucht werden:

fruit Frucht, Obst	fowl Vogel, Geflügel
fish[1] Fisch, Fische	deer Hirsch, Rotwild
cattle Rindvieh, Rinder	sheep Schaf, Schafe
swine[2] Schweine	foot Fuß, Fußvolk
hair Haar, Haare	horse Pferd, Reiterei
sail Segel, Segelschiff(e)	people[3] } Leute, Volk
cannon Kanone(n)	folk(s)[4] } Leute, Volk

Die Substantive fruit, fish (pike, trout etc.), fowl, hair nehmen das Pluralzeichen an, wenn von einzelnen die Rede ist.

His few hairs are grey. Two fishes; several trouts. The fruits on the table.

Fruits wird im bildlichen Sinne stets im Plural gebraucht: The fruits of his labour.

§ 15. Mit dem Pluralzeichen stehen die Bestimmungen von Maß, Wert und Preis, Gewicht und Alter, wenn ein Zahlwort vorausgeht:

This room is twenty feet long. The merchandise is worth thirty pounds; it costs ten shillings a yard. He is nearly sixty years old.

§ 16. Unverändert bleiben dagegen auch bei vorausgehendem Zahlwort die Ausdrücke pair,[5] couple,[6] brace[7] Paar, dozen Dutzend, head Stück (Vieh), piece Stück, score zwanzig Stück (ohne of), auch pound, wenn darnach die Zahl der Schillinge angegeben ist:

I gave four pound five shillings. He is about three score years old. Three dozen of handkerchiefs. Four brace of partridges.

Ebenso unverändert bleiben in zusammengesetzten Hauptwörtern die einem Zahlworte folgenden Substantive: a ten-pound note; a four-wheel carriage ein vierrädriger Wagen.

[1] pike Hecht, Hechte, carp Karpfen, trout Forelle, Forellen, salmon Lachs, Lachse.

[2] Jetzt selten; dafür pig und pigs.

[3] Der Plural peoples für nations ist selten.

[4] Folks gebräuchlicher als folk.

[5] Nur von zusammengehörigen Dingen: a pair of gloves, boots, shoes etc.

[6] Zufällig verbundene Dinge: a couple of eggs; aber auch ein Ehepaar: this young couple.

[7] Von Wildpret (zusammengebunden): a brace of partridges ein Paar Rebhühner.

§ 17. Die Eigennamen (proper names) bilden einen Plural, wenn mehrere Personen desselben Namens gemeint sind: The Coopers, the Stuarts, the Henrys.[1]

Geht dem Namen ein Titel oder Verwandtschaftsname voraus, so erhalten diese das Pluralzeichen und der Name selbst bleibt unverändert:

The Brothers Cooper; Messrs. Wright and Sons; the Misses Jefferson.

Der Titel Mr., Herr, fällt im Englischen vor andern Titeln weg: Dr. Dawson, Captain Locksley, Professor Ward. Frauen erhalten nicht die Titel ihrer Männer: Frau Dr. Dawson heißt einfach Mrs. Dawson oder Dr. Dawson's wife. (Mrs., gespr. Missis, ist entstanden aus mistress Herrin.) Ihr Herr Vater: your father; Ihre Frau Mutter: your mother; Ihre Fräulein Schwester: your sister; Ihr Herr Gemahl: your husband; Ihre Frau Gemahlin: your wife.

§ 18. Nur im Plural werden gebraucht:

a. Die Namen von Gegenständen, welche aus zwei gleichen Teilen bestehen, wie:

bellows Blasebalg	pincers } Zange
breeches } Beinkleider	tongs } Zange
trowsers } Beinkleider	scales Wage
lungs Lunge	scissars Schere
nut-crackers Nußknacker	spectacles Brille

whiskers Backenbart

Eine Brille heißt aber a pair of spectacles, eine Schere a pair of scissars. Man sagt auch my spectacles, my scissars etc.

b. eine große Anzahl von Substantiven, wie:

annals Jahrbücher, Annalen	morals Sittlichkeit
contents Inhalt	nuptials Hochzeit (veralt.) dafür [wedding
environs Umgebung	oats Hafer
éntrails } Eingeweide	regimentals Uniform (veralt.)
bowels } Eingeweide	odds Verschiedenheit, Überzahl
eaves Dachrinne	relics Reliquien
embers glühende Kohlen	riches (frz. richesse) Reichtum
fetters Fesseln	seeds Same
gallows Galgen	thanks Dank
lodgings Wohnung	tidings Nachricht
the middle ages Mittelalter	victuals (spr. vittlz) Lebensmittel
nécessaries Bedürfnisse	wages Lohn.

[1] Das y in Eigennamen wird im Plural nicht verändert.

§ 19. Verschiedene Bedeutung im Singular und im Plural haben:

arm Arm — arms Waffen
ash Esche — ashes Asche
cloth Tuch — clothes Kleider (cloths Tuche)
blind Blende — blinds Jalousie, blinde Fenster
colour Farbe — colours Fahne (veralt.) und Farben
cómpass Kompaß — compasses Zirkel, Umfang
draught Zug, Schluck — draughts Damenspiel, Züge
drawer Schublade — drawers Unterhosen
honour Ehre — honours Ehrenbezeugungen
light Licht — lights Lunge der Tiere, Lichter
pain Schmerz — pains Mühe, Schmerzen
part Teil, Anteil — parts Teile, Fähigkeiten (veralt.) dafür talents
physic Arznei — physics Arzneien, Physik
sand Sand — sands Sandbänke
spectacle Schauspiel — spectacles Brille
respect Achtung — respects Kompliment
spirit Geist — spirits Geister, geistige Getränke, high spirits heitere Gemütsstimmung, frohe Laune
stair Stufe — stairs Stufen, Treppe
wit Witz, Witzbold — wits Witze, Witzbolde; gesunder Menschenverstand.

§ 20. Fast nur im Plural gebraucht werden die Namen verschiedener Wissenschaften und Krankheiten:

mathemátics Mathematik
mechánics Mechanik
methaphysics Lehre vom Übersinnlichen
measles Masern
politics Politik, Staatswissenschaft
purples Scharlach
optics Optik, Lehre vom Licht.

§ 21. Eine Reihe von Stoffnamen (nouns of materials) bilden einen Plural, um die verschiedenen Arten der Stoffe oder die daraus gefertigten Gegenstände, Wiederholung oder Menge zu bezeichnen:

cottons Baumwollenware
silks Seidenwaren
cloths Tuche
coppers Kupfermünzen, Kupfergeschirr
teas Theesorten
wines Weinsorten
spices Gewürze, Gewürzarten
sands Sandbänke (§ 19)
rains Regengüsse
colds Kältetage } Zeiten (selten)
heats Hitzetage } Zeiten (selten)
snows Schneemassen.

§ 22. Viele Abstrakte (abstract nouns) bilden einen Plural, wenn eine Wiederholung ausgedrückt werden soll, oder wenn sie sich auf mehrere Personen beziehen:

affliction, afflictions } Trübsal
calamity, calamities }
death, deaths Tod, Todesfall
distress, distresses Not
fear, fears Furcht, Befürchtung
health, healths Gesundheit
life, lives Leben
mind, minds Geist, Sinn, Absicht.
misery, miseries Elend
pardon, pardons Verzeihung
return, returns Wiederkehr
slumber, slumbers Schlummer
suffering, sufferings Leiden
suspicion, suspicions Verdacht
taste, tastes Geschmack
thank, thanks Dank
cry, cries Geschrei

Thousands of families lead most miserable lives.

§ 23. Singularisch und pluralisch gebraucht werden folgende Pluralbildungen:

alms Almosen
news Neuigkeit, Nachricht, auch a piece of news,
odds Ungleichheit, Überzahl
pains Mühe (§ 19)
means Mittel (by all means auf alle Fälle; by no means keineswegs)
summons Aufforderung.

Hierzu zählen auch ferner folgende Städtenamen:

Algiers Algier
Athens Athen
Brussels Brüssel
Lyons Lyon
Naples Neapel

Athens is the capital of Greece, Brussels that of Belgium, Algiers that of Algeria.

§ 24. Keinen Plural haben:

advice Rat
business Geschäft
knowledge Kenntnis, Wissen
strength Kraft
merchandise Ware, dafür goods
produce Produkt
progress Fortschritt
small-pox Pocken, Blattern

§ 25. Eigentümlich ist im Englischen der Gebrauch des Plurals von Körperteilen, sobald dieselben auf mehrere Personen bezogen werden:

The two clergymen have turned their backs to the chimney. They shook their heads; they opened their mouths.

§ 26. Sammelnamen (Kollektiva, collective nouns) werden als Substantive im Plural betrachtet, d. h. Verben und Für-

wörter stehen im Plural, wenn an eine Gesamtheit und nicht an ein Einzelwesen gedacht wird:

aristocracy } Adel	family Familie
nobility }	parliament Parlament
assembly Versammlung	peasantry Landvolk
infantry Infanterie	corporation Behörde der Stadtverordneten
cavalry Kavallerie	senate Senat
company Gesellschaft	society Gesellschaft, Genossenschaft
party geladene Gesellschaft	regiment Regiment
crowd Volkshaufen, Menge	enemy Feind

crew Schiffsmannschaft.

Die Kollektiva horse, foot, people, folks Leute (§ 14), public Publikum, clergy Geistlichkeit, cattle Rindvieh, mankind Menschheit werden stets mit dem Plural des Verbs und der Fürwörter verbunden.

The company consists of all the upper ranks of society; they have just departed. Where the corporation have their sittings. Parliament is assembled; they hold their sittings. The family was not rich, but they were all very laborious and economical. The regiment had laid down their arms. The crew were all asleep. Not so much as English people generally do. People say so. The clergy with their prerogatives. I know all the people and their names.

B. Fälle (Cases).

1. Der Nominativ.

§ 27. Das Subjekt steht in der Regel vor dem Prädikat.

Die Inversion (Umstellung) findet stets statt:

a. in der direkten Frage: Are you afraid? Did you speak to him?

Ausnahme: Wenn who, which, what und whose (letzteres in Verbindung mit einem Substantive) Subjekt des Fragesatzes sind: Who comes here? What makes you ask this question? Which is your brother? Whose house is that?

b. In Wunschsätzen: Could they only be exterminated! Long live the king!

c. In Bedingungssätzen ohne if: Had I some more bread. I really should, were they secured in iron cages. Were they but conscious of it.

d. Die Inversion findet gewöhnlich statt, wenn ein Fürwort oder ein demonstratives, beschränkendes oder verneinendes Adverb an der Spitze des Satzes steht:

Such is my opinion. Here sits one by himself. There comes the keeper. Nowhere have I found such extensive parks. Seldom have I seen so many rare plants. Scarcely had they time to get wet. Little did I think. Never shall I forget it. No sooner do you throw down the bread than the chase begins. Thus ends our excursion.

e. Nach betonten Adverbien wie: up, down, on, away, wenn das Substantiv kein persönliches Fürwort ist:

Up flies the balloon. Away run the boys. Down go the rowers.

f. Nach adverbialen Bestimmungen, namentlich wenn das Subjekt einen Zusatz hat:

Not far off are the bears, and close by is the bear-pit which we must not forget to visit. In that direction lies Kensington Palace.

2. Der Akkusativ.

§ 28. Der Akkusativ gleicht dem Nominativ, steht aber nach den transitiven Verben.

Viele Verben regieren im Englischen den Akkusativ, die im Deutschen den Dativ oder eine Präposition nach sich haben; die gebräuchlichsten sind:

to answer antworten, entsprechen	to order befehlen
to advise raten	to menace } drohen
to approach sich nähern	to threaten } drohen
to assist beistehen	to please gefallen
to contradict widersprechen	to resemble gleichen
to enter eintreten	to resist widerstehen
to flatter schmeicheln	to serve dienen
to follow folgen	to thank danken.
to help helfen	

It quite answers my purpose. We approach the lion-house. Let us enter it. He resembles him. Let us follow the keeper. They wish to assist them. God helps those that help themselves.

§ 29. Ein doppelter Akkusativ findet sich nach den sogen. faktitiven Verben, die zu etwas machen, ernennen, erwählen u. s. w. bedeuten:

to name ernennen zu	to think } halten für
to make machen zu	to esteem } halten für
to appoint ernennen zu	to deem } halten für
to choose erwählen zu	to believe } halten für
to elect wählen zu	to consider (as) } halten für
to crown krönen zu	to announce } ausrufen, erklären als, zu
to declare erklären als, für, zu	to proclaim } ausrufen, erklären als, zu

to show zeigen als.

Die deutschen Partikeln **als**, **für** und **zu** bleiben unübersetzt.

I deem him the most intelligent elephant. I must pronounce them the finest zoological gardens. He made himself master of the land.

Im **Passivum** haben diese Verben einen doppelten Nominativ:

The parks may be considered as the lungs of London. Hyde Park is generally regarded as the more fashionable. He has lately been appointed overseer.

§ 30. Manche Verben können zugleich **transitiv** und **intransitiv** gebraucht werden:

to drop fallen, fallen lassen	to hang hängen, aufhängen
to fly fliegen, fliegen lassen	to pass vorübergehen, weitergeben
to grow wachsen, bauen	to ring klingeln, läuten, schellen

to sink sinken, versenken.

The fruit drops from the tree; I shall drop down some bread. The balloon flies; the boys fly a balloon. The corn grows; they grew corn and potatoes. We pass by the antilopes; please to pass me the cruet-stand. The bell rings; please to ring the bell! The ship sinks; the ship was sunk by the enemy.

§ 31. Zu merken sind noch die **Akkusative** des **Maßes** und der **Zeit**:

The park covers 472 acres of ground. How many miles may they walk a day? The aviary is 170 feet long. This gentleman is sixty years old.

Weitere gebräuchlichere **Akkusative** der **Zeit**:

Last night gestern Abend	a day or two ein paar Tage
the day before yesterday vorgestern	a week ago vor einer Woche
the day after to-morrow übermorgen	a few days since vor einigen Tagen
the other day neulich	all day long den ganzen Tag lang
this day week heute über 8 Tage	once a week einmal die Woche
this day fortnight heute über 14 Tage	twice a year zweimal im Jahre
every other day einen Tag um den andern	eyery seven years alle sieben Jahre

Das Adverb **lang** wird nach einem Zeitakkusative mit **for** übersetzt: Eine Zeit **lang**: **for** some time; zwei Jahre lang: for two years.

3. Der Dativ.

§ 32. Viele Verben regieren im Englischen den Dativ der Person neben einem Akkusativ der Sache:

to afford darbieten, gewähren	to owe schulden, verdanken
to allow gestatten	to pay bezahlen, abstatten (Besuch)
to announce verkündigen	to procure verschaffen
to bring bringen	to promise versprechen
to forgive vergeben	to propose vorschlagen
to give geben	to refuse verweigern
to leave hinterlassen	to show zeigen
to lend leihen	to teach lehren
to offer darbieten	to tell sagen

to wish wünschen.

Die Dativpräposition **to** wird weggelassen, wenn der Dativ unmittelbar dem Verbum folgt; das kann nur geschehen, wenn ein Akkusativ folgt oder an der Spitze des Satzes steht. Steht der Dativ jedoch nach dem Akkusativ, so darf **to** nicht fehlen:

Let us pay the monkey-house a visit. Give them some sweetmeats! It offers us a welcome opportunity for rest. He tells her everything. They afford them great liberty of movement. The excursion has procured me great pleasure.

The Zoological Gardens offer great enjoyment to the public. Shall I give a piece of biscuit to him?

§ 33. Im Allgemeinen schließen sich die persönlichen Fürwörter unmittelbar an das Verbum an:

Let us give him a piece of bread.

Nach **it** steht das persönliche Fürwort in der Regel ohne **to**, doch ist auch der Dativ mit **to** nicht selten:

Give it me! Give it to him, to me, to them etc.

§ 34. Der Dativ sowohl als der Akkusativ können im Englischen Subjekt des passivischen Satzes werden:

Aktiv: I show you the various deer and cattle.

Passiv: Akk.: The various deer and cattle are shown to you. Dativ: You are shown the various deer and cattle.

§ 35. Bei manchen Verben ist das Abwerfen der Dativ-Präposition nicht zulässig:

to add hinzufügen	to confine beschränken
to announce ankündigen	to communicate, to impart } mitteilen
to ascribe, to attribute } zuschreiben	to describe beschreiben

to explain erklären	to reply erwidern
to mention erwähnen	to relate erzählen
to prefer vorziehen	to reveal offenbaren
to present vor-, darstellen, überreichen, anbieten	to say sagen
	to yield nachgeben.

We shall confine ourselves to the two finest parks. I shall describe to you everything. Our walk has greatly added to my knowledge.

The younger always yield to the older. I said to him; he said to me; aber: he told me.

§ 36. Viele Verben, die im Englischen den Dativ regieren, erfordern im Deutschen verschiedene Präpositionen:

to accustom to gewöhnen an	to object to einwenden gegen
to agree to / to consent to } einwilligen in	to pretend to Anspruch machen auf
to amount to sich belaufen auf	to refer to / to relate to } sich beziehen auf
to appeal to sich berufen auf	to speak to sprechen mit
to apply to sich wenden an	to tie to binden an
to attend to achten auf	to be used to / to be accustomed to } gewöhnt sein an
to compare to vergleichen mit	
to listen to horchen auf	
to be owing to herrühren von.	

Did you speak to the keeper? Compare their fore-legs to their hind-legs! Shall we listen to the music? This is owing to the kind treatment. They are quite used to it. I do not object to it. Their number amounts to about fifty.

§ 37. Auch eine Anzahl von Adjektiven werden mit der Dativpräposition **to** konstruiert, die im Deutschen andere Präpositionen nach sich haben:

attentive to aufmerksam auf	favourable to günstig für
attached to anhänglich an	obliged to verpflichtet (verbunden) gegen
comparable to vergleichbar mit	offensive to anstößig, angreifend gegen
civil to / polite to } höflich gegen	open to offen für
cruel to grausam gegen	necessary to nötig für
essential to / material to } wesentlich für	just to gerecht gegen
kind to gütig gegen	inferior to untergeordnet / superior to überlegen } mit Dativ
painful to schmerzlich für.	

The parks are open to the public; they are quite superior to anything alike in the world. The day is favourable to it. He was civil to me. Their frightful howling is painful to me. The old elephant is attached to his keeper and attentive to his words; he is never offensive to anybody.

§ 38. Bei der Bezeichnung von Verwandtschafts-, Zugehörigkeits-, Abhängigkeits-, Freundschafts- und Feindschaftsverhältnissen steht nach Substantiven die Präposition **to**, wenn der bestimmte Artikel nicht vorausgeht:

He is nephew to the king. He is servant to my brother. He is a friend to none, that is a friend to all.

Dagegen: He is the nephew of the king.

4. Der Genitiv.

§ 39. Der sächsische Genitiv (Saxon Genitive) kann nur von Personen und von Maß-, Wert- und Zeitbestimmungen gebraucht werden:

My father's house. Our to-day's excursion; our afternoon's walk. About a mile's distance. A shilling's worth of tea.

Von mehreren zusammengehörigen Wörtern erhält nur das letztere das Zeichen des Genitivs:

King George III.'s reign. Queen Victoria's birth-place. My father and mother's room. Our brother-in-law's garden.

§ 40. Das den sächsischen Genitiv regierende Substantiv fehlt zuweilen:

a. wenn es aus dem Vorhergehenden ergänzt werden kann:

This is a work of Shakespeare's (works). Here is a book of my brother's (books).

b. wenn es die Bezeichnung einer allgemein bekannten Örtlichkeit ist wie: house, shop, church, hotél, óffice:

I have seen St. Paul's in London and St. Peter's in Rome. He has been at the hatter's. We come from our uncle's.

Die aus Adjektiven gebildeten Substantive können nicht den sächsischen Genitiv annehmen:

The miseries of the poor, nicht aber the poor's miseries.

§ 41. Der Gebrauch des mit **of** gebildeten Genitivs ist ausgedehnter als der sächsische Genitiv und kann überall an die Stelle des letzteren treten:

Queen Victoria's birth-place — the birth-place of Queen Victoria. Our to-day's excursion — our excursion of to-day.

§ 42. Der Genitiv mit **of** wird gebraucht:

a. nach den Bezeichnungen für Menge, Maß und Gewicht (wie im Französ.):

A glass of wine; a cup of tea; a piece of bread; a pound of coffee; a pair of gloves; a lump of sugar; a brace of partridges; a couple of shillings.

Ebenso steht **of** nach million: five millions of inhabitants.

b. Nach den Gattungsnamen name, title, month, isle und island, town, city, village, kingdom, empire, fortress (Festung), duchy (Herzogtum) und university:

The name of Charles; the title of professor; the month of May, the isle of Wight, the town of Mánchester, the city of London, the kingdom of Spain, the Empire of Germany; the fortress of Gibráltar; the grand-duchy of Baden, the university of Heidelberg.

Die geographischen Bezeichnungen river, mount, cape und lake jedoch werden ohne **of** gebraucht:

The river Thames, Mount Vesuvius, Cape Horn, Lake Mælar. Ausnahme: the Cape of Good Hope, und die nach Städten benannten Seen: the Lake of Geneva.

§ 43. Die Genitiv-Präposition **of** wird nach einer Reihe von Zeit- und Eigenschaftswörtern gebraucht, die im Deutschen den Genitiv oder die Präposition von regieren.

to accuse of anklagen	aware of gewahr
to assure of versichern	capable of fähig
to boast of sich rühmen	conscious of bewußt
to convince of sich überzeugen	fond of eingenommen von
to deprive of berauben	full of voll
to get rid of sich befreien von	guilty of schuldig
to hear of hören von	sick of überdrüssig
to speak of sprechen von	tired of } müde
to be ashamed of sich schämen	weary of } müde

worthy of würdig.

I must pronounce them the finest I have ever heard of. No other city can boast of such a beautiful specimen. No creature feels happy being deprived of its liberty. Thank you, I was not aware of it. I am tired of walking.

§ 44. Folgende im Englischen mit **of** verbundene Zeit-, Eigenschafts- und Hauptwörter erfordern im Deutschen verschiedene Präpositionen:

to consist of (in) bestehen aus	to taste of schmecken nach
to despair of verzweifeln an	to remind of erinnern an
to doubt of zweifeln an	to think of denken an
to judge of u. from urteilen über, nach	to be afraid of sich fürchten vor
	to be glad of sich freuen über
to smell of riechen nach	desirous of verlangend nach

envious of neidisch auf
jealous of eifersüchtig auf
ignorant of unbekannt mit
innocent of unschuldig an
proud of stolz auf
vain of eitel auf
characteristic of bezeichnend [für
careless of sorglos wegen
prodigal of verschwenderisch mit
a view of Übersicht über
a sight of Anblick, Ansicht von
lack, want of Mangel an
loss of Verlust an.
a horror of einen Abscheu vor

I doubt of it. He reminds me of an old acquaintance of mine. I warn you of the lama. Are you afraid of them? I am very glad of it. How jealous they are of each other and how envious of every tit-bit. Are you not desirous of a little rest? He does not seem to be very prodigal of it. I shudder at the sight of them. I have a horror of snakes and reptiles. We can have but a general view of it to-day. I am proud of your praise.

III. Das Eigenschaftswort.
(The Adjective.)

1. Zur Steigerung (Comparison).

§ 45. Von mehreren Adverbien des Ortes wird auch ein Komparativ und Superlativ gebildet, welche beide als Adjektive gebraucht werden:

Positiv:	Komparativ:	Superlativ:
In innen	inner innerer	the inmost, innermost der innerste
out außen	outer, utter	the outmost, utmost, uttermost äußerste
up oben	upper	the uppermost der oberste
fore, before } vorn	former	the foremost der vorderste
behind, hind } hinten	hinder	the hindermost der hinterste

The undermost der unterste und the topmost der höchste. Diese Adjektive werden nur attributiv gebraucht.

To occupy the foremost rank. The inner part; the uppermost part of the chapel.

§ 46. Bei der Vergleichung von nur zwei Gegenständen muß der Komparativ und nicht, wie häufig im Deutschen, der Superlativ gebraucht werden:

Of these two poets, Shakespeare was the greater (der größte).

Zur Verstärkung des Komparativs dienen still noch, somewhat etwas, far weit, greatly, much, a great deal viel, sehr viel:

The former is a great deal older than the latter.

§ 47. Der absolute Superlativ wird durch Vorsetzen von most höchst, äußerst, überaus, jedoch ohne den bestimmten Artikel gebraucht:

Some of the monuments are most beautiful. This most memorable building. It is a most wonderful place.

Das deutsche „am" vor dem Superlativ bleibt unübersetzt:

Shakespeare's name shines brightest in dramatic poetry.

Verstärkt wird der Superlativ durch very: the very finest der allerschönste; The last of all, the worst of all der allerletzte, allerschlimmste.

2. Stellung (Place).

§ 48. Die attributiven Eigenschaftswörter und Partizipien stehen auch mit dem dazu gehörigen Adverb vor dem Hauptworte:

Gracefully vaulted arches; wonderfully combined effects. The first really great English poet.

Mit andern als adverbialen Erweiterungen steht das attributive Adjektiv oder Partizip nach dem Substantiv:

Towers 215 feet high. A tree rich with blossoms ein blütenreicher Baum.

§ 49. Soll das attributive Adjektiv stark betont werden, so wird es nachgestellt:

Almighty God — God Almighty
the following chapter — the chapter following,
the previous day — the day previous,
all imaginable pains — all pains imaginable
the opposite house — the house opposite.
Duties omitted are sins committed (Prov.).

§ 50. Beziehen sich zwei oder mehrere durch und verbundene Adjektive auf ein Substantiv, das zwei gleichartige Dinge bezeichnet, so steht dieses entweder

a. im Plural: the French and English fleets, oder

b. der Artikel wird wiederholt, und das Substantiv bleibt im Singular: the French and the English fleet.

The Old and New Testaments — The Old and the New Testament. The old and new coronation chairs — the old and the new coronation chair.

§ 51. Das prädikative Adjektiv steht in der Regel nach dem Verb, zur größeren Betonung auch an der Spitze des Satzes:

Great is the Lord. Hallowed be Thy name. Worthy of note is Isaac Newton's grave.

Auch die durch so, as, too und however bestimmten Adjektive stehen nach dem Substantiv:

A task too long and tedious to be accomplished.

§ 52. Nach einer Reihe intransitiver Verben, welche ein Sein, Werden, Scheinen oder Bleiben ausdrücken, und nach einigen andern wie to look, to lie, to feel, to appear, to die, to fall, to stand und to rise folgt als Ergänzung ein Adjektiv anstatt des Adverbs, wenn nicht die Handlung, sondern ein Zustand oder eine Beschaffenheit bezeichnet werden soll: (Vergleiche auch § 64.)

Edmund Spenser died poor and forgotten. Lord Byron was not deemed worthy of this great honour. Shakespeare's name shines brightest in dramatic poetry. Queen Mary lived happy at the court of France. We stand silent at her tomb. The storm grew more violent der Sturm wurde heftiger. The high rising bundle-pillars. He looks pale and exhausted (erschöpft). He remained speechless er blieb sprachlos. We arrived safe in the harbour wir kamen wohlbehalten im Hafen an.

§ 53. Mehrere Adjektive können nur prädikativ gebraucht werden: Worth wert, afraid bange, alike gleich, akin verwandt, alive lebendig, asleep schlafend, alone allein, ashamed beschämt, awake wach, und das adjektivisch gebrauchte Adverb well wohl, gesund.

He is the best man alive (that is alive) er ist der beste Mensch von der Welt. Here they are all alike. They are peacefully asleep. All's well that ends well. I am quite well. It is not worth the while es ist nicht der Mühe wert.

3. Substantivisch gebrauchte Adjektive.

§ 54. Das mit dem Artikel gebrauchte Adjektiv wird zum Substantiv und bezeichnet entweder:

a. als Abstraktum einen allgemeinen Begriff, wie: the good das Gute, the beautiful das Schöne, the sublime das

Erhabene, the mysterious das Geheimnisvolle, the past das Vergangene, the present, the future etc.;

b. einen Gattungsnamen im Plural ohne das Pluralzeichen: The rich and the poor die Reichen und die Armen, the wise, the brave, the heroic, the high and the low die Hohen und Niedrigen, the good and the wicked die Guten und Bösen.

Zur Bezeichnung einzelner Individuen muß man, woman oder one hinzugefügt werden: der Reiche the rich man oder the rich one, die Reiche the rich woman oder the rich one, Plur. the rich ones.

Auch Superlative werden substantivisch gebraucht, wie the best das Beste und die Besten, the greatest das Größte und die Größten, the worst das Schlimmste und die Schlimmsten ꝛc.

Einige Partizipien des Perfekts können auch als Substantive zur Bezeichnung von Personen gebraucht werden: the ashes of the deceased; the accused der Angeklagte, the condemned der Verurteilte, the betrothed oder the engaged der, die Verlobte.

Hierher gehören auch die Adjektive, die eine Farbe bezeichnen: the blue, the green, the red, the yellow.

Viel Schönes heißt many a fine thing; alles Gute all that is good, etwas Gutes a good thing.

§ 55. Einige Adjektive sind zugleich Substantive und nehmen als solche das Pluralzeichen an:

Christian christlich	a Christian ein Christ
Catholic katholisch	a Catholic ein Katholik
Protestant protestantisch	a Protestant ein Protestant
Lutheran lutherisch	a Lutheran ein Lutheraner
Puritan puritanisch	a Puritan ein Puritaner
republican republikanisch	a Republican ein Republikaner
divine göttlich	a divine ein Geistlicher
(divine service Gottesdienst)	
worthy würdig	a worthy ein verdienter Mann
sage weise	a sage ein Weiser
native eingeboren	a native ein Eingeborener
black schwarz	a black ein Schwarzer
white weiß	a white ein Weißer
infidel ungläubig	an infidel ein Ungläubiger
patient geduldig	a patient ein Patient
equal gleich	my equal meinesgleichen
saint heilig	a saint ein Heiliger
savage wild	a savage ein Wilder

Bayerische Staatsbibliothek MÜNCHEN

inferior geringer — my inferior mein Untergebener
superior überlegen — my superior mein Vorgesetzter
male männlich — a male ein Männchen
female weiblich — a female ein Weibchen
liquid flüssig — a liquid eine Flüssigkeit
green grün — a green ein grüner Platz (greens Gemüse).

Die Plurale der Substantive lauten: Christians, divines, sages, natives, blacks, whites, infidels, patients etc.

§ 56. Folgende aus Adjektiven entstandene Substantive kommen nur im Plural vor:

The Ancients die Alten
the moderns die Neueren
the classics die Klassiker
the nobles die Adeligen
the Commons die Gemeinen (die Abgeordneten d. Unterhauses)
goods Güter
greens Gemüse
eatables Eßwaren
drinkables trinkbare Dinge
movables bewegliche Dinge
combustibles brennbare Dinge
necessaries Bedürfnisse
particulars Einzelnheiten
sweets Süßigkeiten
valuables Wertsachen
my betters vornehmere Leute als ich, meine Vorgesetzten

4. Adjektivisch gebrauchte Substantive.

§ 57. Stoffnamen und Eigennamen (besonders von Städten) können unverändert als Adjektive gebraucht werden:

An iron screen; the marble monuments; a stone ceiling; silk scarfs; the London police die Londoner Polizei; a Newfoundland dog ein Neufundländer; Chester cheese Chester-Käse.

Anstatt wool und wood braucht man die Adjektive woollen wollen und wooden hölzern: woollen stockings, a wooden leg ein hölzernes Bein.

Golden für gold wird nur in bildlicher Bedeutung gebraucht: the golden age das goldene Zeitalter; the golden middle die goldene Mitte; golden veins of language.

5. Zahlwörter (Numeral Adjectives).

§ 58. a. Grundzahlwörter (Cardinals):

Hundred und thousand sind sowohl substantivisch als adjektivisch. Als Adjektive sind sie unveränderlich, als Substantive nehmen sie das Pluralzeichen an:

A thousand miles; two hundred soldiers. There were hundreds of birds; several thousands.

Million ist Substantiv und wird mit dem folgenden Substantiv durch **of** verbunden:

London has above five millions **of** inhabitants.

Vor anderen Zahlen steht million ohne Pluralzeichen und ohne **of:** 3 million 5 thousand 2 hundred inhabitants.

Auch andere Zahlwörter können substantivisch gebraucht werden: They marched by two**s**; your fours look like sevens; two thirds; three fourths. (Vgl. § 59.)

§ 59. b. Ordnungszahlen (Ordinals):

Die Ordnungszahlen stehen nur nach den Namen von Regenten, wo sie groß geschrieben werden: Henry the Fourth, Louis the Fourteenth, Charles the Tenth.

Zur Angabe des Datums und bei Überschriften können sie vor oder nach dem Substantiv stehen: January (the) first oder (the) first **of** January; in Briefen steht gewöhnlich die Ordnungszahl nach dem Monatsnamen:

London, March 15th wird gelesen: March the fifteenth oder the fifteenth of March.

IV. **Das Adverb** (the Adverb).

1. Einteilung.

§ 60. a. Adverbien des Ortes:

Home nach Hause	hence von hier, daher	veraltet, dafür:	from here, from hence
at home zu Hause	thence von da, von dort		from there, from thence
from home von zu Hause	whence von woher		from where, from whence
in doors zu Hause	hither hierhin	veraltet, dafür:	here hier
abroad draußen, hinaus, in der Fremde	thither dahin		there, da, dort
hereabout hierherum	whither wohin		where wo, wohin
whereabout wo herum	somewhere, anywhere	irgendwo	
wherein worin	nowhere nirgends.		
wherewith womit			

Wo, auf die Zeit bezogen, heißt that oder when: Now that we have well employed our day.

§ 61. Adverbien der Zeit:

Always, ever immer	as yet bis jetzt, noch immer
still, yet noch	nowadays heutzutage

ago von (von der Gegenwart an) some years ago	meanwhile / in the meantime } mittlerweile
since seit (irgend eine Zeit)	hitherto bisher
before long nächstens	hereafter hiernach, hierauf

first zuerst (Reihenfolge): first we went to the Abbey, then to the Houses of Parliament;

at first anfänglich (Gegensatz zu at last): at first I feared they would fail.

Die Adverbien der Zeit auf **ly**; early, hourly, daily, nightly, weekly, monthly, yearly können auch adjektivisch gebraucht werden:

At an early hour; a daily walk, a weekly paper eine Wochenschrift, Zeitung; his yearly income (Einkommen).

§ 62. Adverbien der Art und Weise:

Nearly / almost } beinahe, fast	pretty ziemlich
quite / entirely / all } ganz	perhaps / maybe } vielleicht
	wherefore weshalb
	therefore deshalb
altogether gänzlich, durchaus, ganz und gar	else / otherwise } sonst
accordingly demgemäß	hereby hierdurch
rather eher, lieber; etwas, ziemlich	thereby dadurch
needs notgedrungen	whereby wodurch

a. **Very** sehr, steht nur vor Adjektiven (Partizipien) und Adverbien: Very pretty, very nice, very good; very tired, very well, very soon, very early.

Very als Adjektiv vor Substantiven wahr, eigentlich, wirklich: This is the very play I should like to see; the very thing.

Much und very much werden nur in Verbindung mit Verben gebraucht: Much obliged to you. I did not like the acting very much.

b. **Thus** so, also, bezieht sich auf einen ganzen Satz, so nur auf ein einzelnes Wort: Thus to profane the dignity of the place. Thus having accomplished our visit.

Deutsches so! (Verwunderung) heißt indeed!

c. **But** nur, erst. In der Bedeutung von nur ist but identisch mit only, simply, singly, solely, merely, barely, welche alle mit nur und bloß wiedergegeben werden: It is but a five minutes' walk. The place costs but 6 s. 6 d. — I have

seen it but once. He is but a middling player. But (nur noch) another half-hour. Were it but (auch nur) to get a fair insight into it.

But in der Bedeutung von erst ist gleichbedeutend mit only, not till (until): I was there but yesterday. The ticket-office is opened but half-an-hour before the beginning.

d. **Rather** in Verbindung mit Verben heißt eher, lieber, vielmehr: I should rather prefer an old English play. I had rather not ich möchte lieber nicht.

Vor Adjektiven und Adverbien hat rather eine ähnliche Bedeutung wie pretty, somewhat, ziemlich, etwas: You are rather a lucky fellow. He ought to have spoken rather loud. I find it rather badly agreeing. Rather (pretty) early ziemlich früh.

e. **Only** heißt als Adjektiv einzig, als Adverb nur: His only son has only one child.

Only als Adverb steht stets vor dem Worte, das es bestimmt, enough stets nach: If we have time enough.

f. Die Adjektive der Art und Weise auf **ly**, wie friendly, lively, lovely, stately u. s. w. können nicht adverbial gebraucht werden; sie müssen daher umschrieben oder durch ein anderes Adverb ersetzt werden:

Lively = in a lively manner; vividly.
friendly = in a kind way; kindly u. s. w.

§ 63. Stellung der Adverbien.

Als Hauptregeln über die Stellung der Adverbien gelten:

a. Die Adverbien stehen unmittelbar vor den Wörtern (Verben, Adjektiven, Partizipien oder Adverbien), die sie bestimmen: A decidely bad taste; the stranger hardly whispers; an exquisitely wrought stone ceiling; to observe quite closely; it is pretty well done es ist ziemlich gut gemacht.

b. Verb und Objekt dürfen durch das Adverb nicht getrennt werden; dasselbe steht in einfachen Zeiten am liebsten zwischen Subjekt und Verb: London undoubtedly possesses the best singers in the world; I never thought of it ich dachte nie daran; in zusammengesetzten Zeiten zwischen Hilfsverb und Verb, Infinitiv oder Partizip: I think you should thoroughly do away with it. I have thoroughly enjoyed this walk. Oliver Cromwell was loudly

proclaimed Lord Protector. Bei intransitiven Verben (weil ohne Objekt) folgt das Adverb dem Zeitwort: We entered quietly.

Unter mehreren Adverbien nimmt das Adverb der Art und Weise die erste, das Adverb des Ortes die zweite und das der Zeit die letzte Stelle ein:

I shall walk slowly up and down before the theatre meanwhile. We arrived safely here yesterday wir kamen gestern wohlbehalten hier an.

c. Die Adverbien on, off, in, out, up, back, down, away 2c. müssen von ihrem Verb getrennt werden, wenn das Objekt ein persönliches Fürwort ist:

Take off your hat! Take it off! Pull him back. I sent her away. I took out my handkerchief — I took it out.

§ 64. Adverbial gebrauchte Adjektive.

Einige Adjektive werden in unveränderter Form als Adverbien gebraucht, wenn die dadurch bezeichnete Eigenschaft dem Gegenstande beigelegt werden soll. Eine zweite adverbiale Form auf **ly** wird daneben in veränderter (meist bildlicher) Bedeutung gebraucht:

Cheap billig, wohlfeil, **dear** teuer: To buy, to sell cheap, dear. We loved her dearly. The soldiers sold their lives dearly.

bad: To speak bad oder ill of somebody üble Nachrede über jemanden führen. He speaks English badly er spricht schlecht englisch.

close: Situated close by. I sat close beside him. To write close enge schreiben. To observe closely (genau). The prisoner was closely watched (scharf überwacht).

fair: To play fair ehrlich spielen; to copy fair ins Reine schreiben. To speak fairly offen reden; they carried it fairly (anständig) through.

fast: It rains fast (stark); to run fast (schnell); he is fast asleep (fest); to live fast (flott); to hold fast (fest).

full: I understand full well (sehr wohl); I full well agree with you. I am fully convinced of it.

hard: Hard by lies Edmund Spenser (dicht dabei); it freezes, rains hard (stark). We worked very hard (angestrengt); he tried hard (eifrig). The stranger hardly whispers (kaum); it's hardly possible. Hardly ever kaum je, fast nie.

high: To charge high hohe Preise verlangen. The wind blows high der Wind geht scharf. It is a highly interesting monument. He thinks too highly of himself er hat eine zu hohe Meinung von sich. He was highly esteemed (hoch geschätzt).

just: Just now soeben. That's just the thing das ist es gerade. I just mentioned it ich erwähnte es gerade. This must be justly condemned das muß mit Recht verurteilt werden.

late: To come late spät kommen. He died lately er starb jüngst, unlängst.

loud: To speak loud (parler haut) laut sprechen. His heart beats loud sein Herz klopft hörbar. He was loudly applauded es wurde ihm laut Beifall geklatscht.

low: To speak low (parler bas); the stranger speaks soft and low. To sell low wohlfeil verkaufen. He bowed low er verneigte sich tief.

near: Come near! Komm näher! To draw near sich nähern. They are nearly related (nahe verwandt); it is nearly done (fast, beinahe fertig); he is nearly fifty years old. Nearly opposite.

right: To speak, sing right (richtig). The flight of stairs leads right (gerade) up to the chapel. The Right (sehr) Honourable Lord. He has rightly performed his duty er hat seine Pflicht rechtschaffen erfüllt.

short: To stop short (rester court) inne halten, stecken bleiben. It does not fall short of our expectation es bleibt nicht hinter unserer Erwartung zurück. He will arrive shortly er wird binnen kurzem ankommen; shortly after kurz nachher.

slow: He walks, speaks slow und slowly. Write slowly! Schreibe langsam!

wide: The gates of brass are wide open. Its fame is widely spread. They both differ widely in opinion sie weichen in ihrer Meinung weit von einander ab.

safe: He got safe home er kam wohlbehalten nach Hause. You may safely do it du kannst es ungefährdet thun.

§ 65. Verschiedene deutsche Adverbien werden zuweilen durch Verben ausgedrückt:

Gern: To like, to be fond of: I am very fond of theatricals, I like to go to the theatre.

Lieber: To like better, to prefer. I think you had better book some places. I like better to stay outside.

Zufällig: To happen, to chance: Since we happen to be quite close to it.

Wahrscheinlich: To be likely: I am likely to meet my friend ich werde wahrscheinlich meinen Freund treffen.

Sicherlich: To be sure: I am sure to go ich gehe sicherlich.

Vermutlich: To suppose, to hope; I dare say.

Zwar: It is true.

Leider: I am sorry to say.

Gefälligst: If you please.

Fortwährend, weiter: To continue, to keep on. Continue writing! He keeps on telling lies er sagt fortwährend Lügen.

§ 66. Adverbiale Redensarten (Adverbial phrases).

On purpose (purposely) absichtlich
in vain (vainly), to no purpose } vergebens
on a sudden (suddenly) plötzlich
all of a sudden ganz plötzlich
no doubt (undoubtedly), without doubt (doubtless) } ohne Zweifel (zweifellos)
ever and anon hin und wieder
far and wide weit und breit
at once auf einmal
not even nicht einmal
now and then hier und da
ere long binnen Kurzem
never more nie wieder
no more, no longer } nicht mehr
once more noch einmal
the other day neulich
of late (lately) neulich, erst eben
of old vor Alters
the more so um so mehr
thus far so weit
twice as much noch einmal so viel
by design (designedly) absichtlich
by chance (perchance) zufällig
by all means, at any rate, at all events } auf jeden Fall, jedenfalls
by no means, on no account } keineswegs, ganz und gar nicht

at random, at haphazard } aufs geratewohl
in time, betimes } beizeiten
by this time nachgerade
by turns, altérnately } abwechselnd
at all times zu jeder Zeit
by stealth verstohlenerweise
to and fro hin und her
as for, as to } was anbetrifft
for anything I know, for ought I know } soviel ich weiß
by and by nach und nach
by the by, by the way } beiläufig
by degrees, by little and little } allmählich
by heart auswendig
by letter brieflich
by word of mouth (orally) mündlich
in writing schriftlich
in common gemeinschaftlich
in person persönlich
of course natürlich
of an evening eines Abends
in short kurz
after all trotz alledem, am Ende
for the most part meistenteils
on (upon) the whole im ganzen
on the other hand andrerseits

the day before yesterday vorgestern	yesterday fortnight gestern vor vierzehn Tagen
the day after to-morrow übermorgen	every other day einen Tag um den andern
next Monday week Montag über acht Tage	every third day alle drei Tage
last Monday week Montag vor acht Tagen	as it were sozusagen
and so on / and so forth } und so weiter.	for instance / for example } zum Beispiel

V. Die Fürwörter.
(The Pronouns.)

1. Die persönlichen Fürwörter (Personal Pronouns).

§ 67. Die persönlichen Fürwörter stehen, abweichend vom Französischen, stets nach dem Zeitwort, sowohl in der einfachen als in der zusammengesetzten Zeit: He sent it me; he has sent them to me.

Der Dativ des persönlichen Fürwortes geht dem Akkusativ des Substantivs in der Regel voraus:

Write him a letter! Give me the paper!

Soll ein Gegensatz hervorgehoben werden, so tritt der Dativ des persönlichen Fürwortes mit **to** hinter den Akkusativ:

Write a letter to him (and not to her)! Give the paper to me (and not to him)!

Folgen zwei persönliche Fürwörter, so geht der Akkusativ dem Dativ voraus; nach **it** fällt in der Regel **to** fort:

Send them to me, to us! Send it me!

§ 68. Das persönliche Fürwort der ersten und zweiten Person wird nach einem Relativum nicht wiederholt, wie es im Deutschen geschieht: Ich, der ich da bin, heißt: I who am here; Sie, der Sie so geschickt sind: You who are so clever.

§ 69. Wenn das deutsche **es** als grammatisches Subjekt auf einen vorausgehenden bestimmten Gegenstand hindeutet, muß es im Englischen mit dem entsprechenden persönlichen Fürwort wiedergegeben werden: Es ist ein sehr gescheiter Mensch: **he** is a very intelligent man. Es ist ein vorzügliches Mädchen: **she** is an excellent girl. (Vgl. Teil I, § 8 b.)

§ 70. Nach einer Präposition steht das persönliche Fürwort anstatt des reflexiven, wenn kein Nachdruck darauf ruht: He has his brothers and sisters with him und nicht with himself, er hat seine Geschwister bei sich. She shut the door behind her sie schloß die Thür hinter sich.

2. Die besitzanzeigenden Fürwörter.
(Possessive Pronouns.)

§ 71. Die possessiven Fürwörter können durch **own** verstärkt werden: He cultivates his own lands. Have you a garden of your own?

§ 72. Zwei adjektivische Fürwörter können nicht vor ein Substantiv gesetzt werden; für this my friend, this your friend etc. sagt man daher: This friend of mine; this friend of yours etc.; für my and your work, wenn verschiedene Arbeiten gemeint sind, sagt man: my work and yours.

Merke: He is no friend (not a friend) of mine es ist keiner von meinen Freunden, oder: er ist nicht mein Freund.

§ 73. Bei der Erwähnung von Körperteilen und Kleidungsstücken wird stets das Possessivum gebraucht: I will wash my hands ich will mir die Hände waschen. He took off his coat er zog den Rock aus. (Vgl. Teil I, § 12.)

Merke: I have made up my mind ich habe mich entschlossen.

Statt my und thy steht noch zuweilen die ältere und vollere Form mine und thine vor Vokalen und stummem h: mine eyes; thine honour.

§ 74. In den Verbindungen mit all, both, half, double und triple stehen die besitzanzeigenden Fürwörter wie auch der bestimmte Artikel unmittelbar vor dem Hauptwort: double its deficiency; all his friends; half our work was done. Sie stehen auch, wie der bestimmte Artikel, vor dem Verbalsubstantiv (Gerund § 115 c.): My becoming an eye-witness of your success.

Anmerkungen: In Briefschlüssen gebraucht man entweder Your mit dem Adjektiv: Your respectable, affectionate, oder Yours mit dem Adverb: Yours faithfully, sincerely etc.

3. Die hinweisenden Fürwörter (Demonstrative Pronouns).

§ 75. Die hinweisenden Fürwörter **this** und **that** entsprechen den deutschen dieser, dies und jener, das; das erstere

weist auf das Nähere, das letztere auf das Fernere hin; sie werden auch gebraucht zur Unterscheidung von zwei Personen oder Gegenständen.

Bei gegenüber gestellten Personen oder Gegenständen beziehen sich **that** und **those** auf das zuerst Genannte, **this** und **these** auf das zuletzt genannte; dafür gebraucht man auch the former der, die, das erstere, die ersteren, und the latter der, die, das letztere, die letzteren; auch the one und the other, im Plural the ones — the others; the first und the second.

Anmerkung: Yon und yonder jener, sind veraltet und werden nur noch von Dichtern gebraucht.

§ 76. Das deutsche dies, das, wenn es auf ein Substantiv im Plural hinweist, muß im Englischen durch das Fürwort im Plural these, those wiedergegeben werden: Das sind ungefähr alle Regeln und Formeln: These are about all the rules and formulas.

§ 77. **This** und **these** werden in Verbindung mit Zeitbestimmungen gebraucht, um eine bis an die Gegenwart heranreichende Vergangenheit oder Zukunft zu bezeichnen: These ten years seit zehn Jahren, die letzten 10 Jahre. One of these days nächster Tage. Merke ferner: This morning heute Morgen, this evening heute Abend. This day week heute über acht Tage.

§ 78. Adverbiale Verbindungen wie hiervon, davon, damit, darin, darauf, darnach u. s. w. werden durch eine Präposition in Verbindung mit **this, that** oder **it** wiedergegeben: Along with it zugleich damit; not important enough for that nicht wichtig genug dazu; I have no idea of it ich habe keine Ahnung davon; write the address on it schreibe die Adresse darauf; there should be nothing in it es sollte nichts darin sein; put a comma after it setze ein Komma darnach; I was not aware of that ich war mir dessen nicht bewußt.

4. Die bestimmenden (determinativen) Fürwörter. (Determinative Pronouns.)

§ 79. Für **he who, she who** und **that which** sagt man auch zur stärkeren Hervorhebung the one who, the one which. He who und that which werden häufig, zumal in Sprichwörtern, durch who und what (frz. qui, deutsch wer, was) ersetzt: What cannot be cured must be endured Was nicht geändert werden kann, muß ertragen werden. What is written remains.

§ 80. **The same** wird adjektivisch und substantivisch gebraucht: The same address; it is quite the same. Es kann durch self, very und much verstärkt werden: The self same, the very same eben, ganz der-, die-, dasselbe; much the same so ziemlich dasselbe.

§ 81. **Such** steht stets vor dem unbestimmten Artikel: such a man ein solcher Mann, solch ein Mann.

Such am Anfang eines Satzes heißt: derartig, so groß und bewirkt Inversion: Such is the custom in England so ist der Brauch in England.

Nach such folgt as als Relativum: such a man as he so ein Mann wie er.

Merke ferner: Such a one ein solcher; no such thing nichts derartiges; suchlike (familiär) dergleichen.

5. Fragende Fürwörter (Interrogative Pronouns).

§ 82. **Who** fragt ganz im allgemeinen nach einer oder mehreren unbekannten Personen, which nach einer einzelnen Person oder Sache aus einer Anzahl bekannter Personen oder Sachen:

Who would not be happy to do so? Which of you would do it? Which do you like most? Which public buildings of London do you know?

Die Präpositionen können vor das fragende Fürwort oder an das Ende des Satzes treten:

To whom do you send this letter? Whom do you send this letter to?

6. Bezügliche Fürwörter (Relative Pronouns).

§ 83. **Whose** bezieht sich auf Personen, selten auf Sachen, und steht immer vor dem Substantiv: I met an old acquaintance of mine in whose company I spent the greater part of my time and to whose kindness I am greatly indebted.

Of whom, of which stehen vor oder nach dem regierenden Substantiv; sie müssen nachstehen, wenn demselben eine Präposition vorausgeht:

Certain formalities the observation of which must not be neglected; of which the observation etc. The district in the precincts of which the addressee is living; The next turning, at the corner of which you must turn to your right.

§ 84. **That** bezieht sich auf Personen, Tiere und Sachen. Es wird für who und which vor einschränkenden oder bestimmenden Relativsätzen gebraucht; das Komma fällt weg:

The place that you write from. A man that tells lies cannot be trusted.

That muß stehen nach:

a. all, much, nothing, something, anything, everything:

All that one wishes; nothing that might be tedious; he does much that is wrong;

b. nach einem Superlativ:

He is the truest Cockney that I know;

c. nach Verneinungen:

No enjoyment that I can think of — Zuweilen steht auch but der, die, das nicht: no nation but has its peculiarities;

d. nach dem fragenden who:

Who that does not comply with them —.

e. nach the same:

The same address that was used in the beginning.

§ 85. Die Relativa **whom, which** und **that** können ausgelassen werden in kurzen beschränkenden (bestimmenden) Relativsätzen; die Präposition tritt dann hinter das Verb:

The garden in which I take my recreations — the garden I take my recreations in. The place (that) you write from.

Zuweilen wird auch der Nominativ von Dichtern ausgelassen.

That und when werden, auf substantivische Zeitbestimmungen bezüglich, in der Regel ausgelassen:

It is a long time (that) I have not seen you.

Relativsätze können durch Weglassen des Relativs und von to be verkürzt werden:

A letter (that is) unsufficiently prepaid is charged with double its deficiency.

§ 86. Relativsätze, in welchen dem Relativpronomen eine Präposition vorausgeht, können auf eine vierfache Weise ausgedrückt werden:

The paper on which you write must be white.
The paper which you write on etc.
The paper that you write on etc.
The paper you write on (vgl. § 85).

7. Reflexive Fürwörter (Reflexive Pronouns).

§ 89. Die reflexiven Fürwörter dienen oft zur Verstärkung eines Substantivs oder Pronomens, wobei sie entweder unmittelbar nach denselben oder am Ende des Satzes stehen:

He wrote himself a letter to the lady oder he wrote a letter to the lady himself. I wrote the letter myself.

§ 90. Das Reflexivpronomen tritt häufig, zumal in Vergleichungssätzen, an die Stelle des Personalpronomens:

My brother and myself (für I) are happy to see you.
Now he is himself again nun ist er wieder er selbst (der Alte).

Anmerkung: By in Verbindung mit reflexiven Fürwörtern heißt allein, für sich: I am not able to do it by myself.

VI. Unbestimmte Fürwörter oder Indefinitpronomen.

(Indefinite Pronouns.)

§ 91. **One** substantivisch gebraucht, entspricht dem deutschen **man** und heißt auch **einer** und **jemand**. Der sächsische Genitiv **one's** sein, ist possessives Fürwort: one must be careful of one's clothing; das daraus gebildete **one's self** ist ein reflexives. (Über one, ones nach dem Adjektiv zur Vertretung von Substantiven vgl. § 54, b Anm.)

§ 92. Das deutsche **man** kann auf verschiedene Weise im Englischen ausgedrückt werden:

Unpersönlich:		Rückbezüglich:		Possessiv:	
one	should take care of	one's self	and	one's	health
a man		himself		his	
men		themselves		their	
we		ourselves		our	
you		yourselves		your	
they		themselves		their	
people		themselves		their	

a. Meistens wird jedoch **man** durch das Passiv wiedergegeben:

Can it be wondered at? Kann man sich darüber wundern? I am told man sagt mir. It is said man sagt. I am said man sagt von mir. I is generally believed to be so. As might be judged from its character wie man nach seinem Charakter urteilen könnte.

b. **You** wird besonders in Schilderungen und Beschreibungen gebraucht; your ist dann durch sein zu übersetzen, yourself durch sich:

You go to your business; you light a fire in order to warm yourself. You have to grope your way along the houses. You have to light a fire in order to keep yourself warm.

c. **They** und **people** werden mehr gebraucht, wenn von einer Ansicht oder einem Gerüchte die Rede ist:

People say so. They say influenza is often followed by a pneumonia.

One vor dem Namen einer Person heißt ein gewisser:
One Mr. Jones told me so.

§ 93. Auch das deutsche **es**, meistens **it**, kann auf verschiedene Weise im Englischen wiedergegeben werden:

a. durch **he, she, they**, wenn es sich auf eine oder mehrere bestimmte Personen bezieht (Vgl. § 69):

He was such a nice and true-hearted fellow **es** war solch ein netter und treuherziger Bursche. They are very fine and clever girls **es** sind sehr feine und geschickte Mädchen;

b. durch **so**, um eine Eigenschaft oder einen Zustand zu bezeichnen, und nach gewissen Verben als unbestimmtes Objekt, wie to believe, to hope, to say, to tell, to think:

He was quite well, at least he appeared **so**. I hope so. He said so. Do you think so? I shall not fail to do so. I tell you so. So I was. (You don't say so! Was Sie sagen!)

Oft bewirkt dieses so in Verbindung mit to be und to do Inversionen:

So I did oder so did I. So was I.

c. durch there in there is, there are etc.

Vor einzelnen intransitiven Verben wie to be, to live, to stand, to arise bewirkt there häufig Inversion:

Happily there lived one in the neighbourhood.

§. 94. **Es** wird nicht übersetzt,

a. wenn nach einem Hilfsverb ein Verbum zu ergänzen ist:
If he does (like it). Yes, I do. Yes, I would. Can you speak English? Yes, I can. Ich weiß es nicht I do not know.

b. wenn es auf einen folgenden Subjekt- oder Objektsatz hinweist; ebenso werden daran, davon nicht übersetzt:

Ich hoffe, daß **es** mir erlaubt sein wird, in einigen Tagen auszugehen: I hope I shall be allowed to go out within a few days. I never thought of wearing flannel ich dachte nie daran, Flanell zu tragen.

§ 95. **All** heißt adjektivisch und adverbial ganz, substantivisch all, alles, alle; es hat den Artikel und das besitzanzeigende Fürwort nach sich. All bezieht sich stets auf die einzelnen Teile, whole auf die Gesamtheit des Ganzen; letzteres hat den Artikel vor sich:

All my limbs. My whole body. Now you know all. A whole week or month.

He was all life and gaiety. I was shivering all over. I hope you will be all strong again. Past all hope ganz hoffnungslos.

Wir, ihr, sie alle: We all, you all, they all oder: all of us, of you, of them:

We all oder all of us wear flannels.

Zu merken:

All the world und the whole world
all the time und the whole time
all the day und the whole day, week, month, year
all day long den ganzen Tag lang
all the night und all night
with all my heart von ganzem Herzen
all at once auf einmal
all of a sudden ganz plötzlich
at all überhaupt
not at all gar nicht, durchaus nicht
after all schließlich
once for all ein für allemal
most of all am allermeisten
all the better um so besser
upon the whole im großen und ganzen.

§ 96. **Some** und **any**. Beide bezeichnen eine unbestimmte Menge oder Anzahl und entsprechen zuweilen dem französischen Teilungsartikel. Some steht in bejahenden oder behauptenden Sätzen, any in verneinenden, (auch dem Sinne nach) fragenden und bedingenden:

I was ill for some days. There are some diseases with a fatal issue.

Would you give him any (fruit)? He shall not want any. He had hardly any enemy. If he liked any.

Any im behauptenden Satze heißt jeder, jeder beliebige; anybody irgend jemand; anything alles, irgend etwas, das auch zuweilen durch whatever verstärkt wird:

I liked any fruit when I was convalescent. I would bring him anything whatever.

Some wird auch in Frage- und Bedingungssätzen angewendet, wenn der fragliche Gegenstand wirklich vorhanden ist:

Would you give him some if he wanted any?

Any wird zuweilen adverbial gebraucht:

Do you feel any (etwas) better now? I will not detain you any longer.

Not any verneint stärker als no:

You don't seem to be ill any more! He shall not want any. At any rate auf jeden Fall.

§ 97. **Either** und **neither** werden sowohl adjektivisch als substantivisch gebraucht; either einer oder jeder von beiden (frz. l'un et l'autre), neither keiner von beiden (frz. ni l'un ni l'autre).

Either of them is on duty for a whole day. Neither of us cared much for it.

Bei vorausgehender Frage oder Verneinung kann nur either folgen:

I cannot answer either of these points.

§ 98. **Every** jeder; **every one, everybody** jeder, jedermann. Bei Zeitbestimmungen wird alle durch every wiedergegeben:

Every evening. Every fortnight. Every other day einen Tag um den andern. Every now and then von Zeit zu Zeit.

§ 99. **No, none, no one** keiner, e, es. No ist adjektivisch, none substantivisch:

Is there no hope? — None.

No one hebt stärker hervor:

No one thought of a serious illness.

Am stärksten verneint not one nicht einer.

Nobody, not anybody niemand, nothing und not anything nichts.

Nach no, none, nothing wird als (außer) mit but übersetzt: None but students are allowed to make use of it (p. 57).

Sie werden zuweilen wie anything durch whatever verstärkt.

§ 100. **Little** wenig (less, least) und **much** viel (more, most) stehen vor dem Singular; der Plural von little ist few wenige (fewer, fewest), der von much ist many viele, manche, für letzteres auch several mehrere, verschiedene. A little ein wenig, etwas; I was a little feverish; not a little nicht wenig; a few einige; in a few days in einigen Tagen; not a few nicht wenige.

Zu merken:

Little less kaum weniger.
very much oder a great deal sehr viel
a great deal better sehr viel besser

many an hour manche Stunde
a great many sehr viele
most people die meisten Leute (ohne Artikel)
no fewer than nicht weniger als
once more noch einmal
one more noch eins.

§ 101. **Other**, adjektivisch, bleibt unverändert, substantivisch gebraucht, erhält es ein **s**: Some will die of it, others will recover. Another ein anderer, noch ein.

Zu merken:

Otherwise anders
one day or other an irgend einem Tage
some time or other zu irgend einer Zeit
some one else irgend jemand anderes
nobody else niemand anderes
something else etwas anderes
somewhere else irgendwo anders, anderswo
nowhere else nirgends.

VII. Der Infinitiv (The Infinitive).

§ 102. Der Infinitiv wird im Englischen stets mit vorausgehendem **to** gebraucht, wofür zuweilen **in order to** eintritt, wenn eine Absicht besonders hervorgehoben werden soll:

The English appear at their dinners in their best humour in order to enliven the meal.

Nach vorausgehendem **so** oder **such** steht **as to** vor dem Infinitiv, um einen Grad oder eine Folge zu bezeichnen:

This room is so brilliant as to dazzle me. I am not such a prejudiced fellow as to deny the superiority of an English house to our German dwellings.

§ 103. A. Der Infinitiv ohne **to**.

Dieser steht: a. nach den defektiven Verben I can, may, must, shall und will:

Will you come? I may show you all over our house. You must know.

b. Meist nach to need brauchen, und to dare wagen, dürfen. In der 3. Pers. Sing. werfen beide Verben in der Regel das **s** ab. To dare hat in der Bedeutung „dürfen" neben dem regelmäßigen dared noch eine zweite Imperfektform durst:

You need not trouble about that. I durst not address him. They dare not pass that little stone bridge. I dare say; I dare assert. She dares not sing in the presence of strangers although

she need not be afraid. You need not fear to move in English society.

Nach dare in der Bedeutung wagen steht in der Regel der Infinitiv mit **to**: I hardly dare **to** accept your invitation.

c. Nach den Verben der Wahrnehmung (Perception) und Empfindung (sensation) im aktiven Sinne: to see, to hear, to feel, to behold schauen, perceive bemerken: You shall never hear me use these names again. I wish you could hear her sing. I saw him go away. I hear you say so.

Im Passivum folgt dagegen der Infinitiv mit **to**:

The bell was heard **to** ring. He was seen **to** go away.

Für den Infinitiv wird auch häufig das Part. Präsens gebraucht (Vgl. § 113 c.):

The furniture which I see standing about.

d. Nach den Verben, die ein Gebieten, Veranlassen, Zulassen bedeuten, wie to bid gebieten, heißen, to make machen, veranlassen, to let lassen, zulassen, und to have in Verbindung mit will und would gern sehen, wünschen:

My parents bid me tell you. I'll make them move up and down. Let us go! Let me see! I would have you tell me the names ich möchte, daß Sie mir die Namen nennten.

Im Passivum folgt nach to bid der Infinitiv mit to:

Only a few friends are bidden **to** come.

e. Nach den Wendungen: I had rather ich möchte, ich hätte lieber, I had better ich thäte besser daran, I had as good ich wünschte, und rather than lieber als:

I think you had better accept our invitation. I had rather not eat than deprive myself of smoking.

§ 104. B. Der Infinitiv mit **to**.

a. Der Infinitiv mit **to** wird gebraucht (wie das Gerundium, vgl. § 115) als Subjekt, als Prädikat und als Objekt:

To teach you all the various modes etc. (Subj.)
To smoke in the presence of ladies would be considered an offence.
To err is human.
It is forbidden to put one's knife to one's mouth. (Log. Subj.)
The fender is to prevent etc. (Präd.)
He taught her to sing (Obj.)
He scarcely dared to open his mouth (Obj.)

b. Die Verben to learn, to teach, to help und to know how werden, abweichend vom Deutschen, mit dem Infinitiv mit **to** verbunden:

A professor taught her **to** sing.
She learned **to** speak French and German.
He helped me **to** do my exercise.
She knows how **to** sing sie kann singen.

c. To have mit folgendem Infinitiv mit **to** drückt eine Verpflichtung aus (deutsch müssen oder sollen):

Every one has to appear in his best clothes.
I have still some apartments to show you.
The tradespeople have to take this way.

d. To be mit folgendem Infinitiv mit **to** bezeichnet eine bevorstehende Thätigkeit oder Notwendigkeit:

We are to go down to the dining-room.
The fender is to prevent the glowing coals from falling out.

To be going und to be about vor einem Infinitiv bezeichnen eine unmittelbar bevorstehende Handlung: I am going oder I am about to knock ich bin im Begriffe zu klopfen.

e. Der Infinitiv des Passivs nach to be wird gebraucht, wenn das Subjekt des Satzes die durch den Infinitiv bezeichnete Handlung erleidet; im Deutschen steht dafür entweder der Infinitiv des Aktivs mit zu oder ein Hilfsverb:

There is no time to be lost; dafür auch: there is no time to lose. The knocker is to be used by all other persons. The left-hand bell is to be rung by the servants.

Zu merken: He is to be blamed und he is to blame er ist zu tadeln. Rooms to let Zimmer zu vermieten.

f. Der einem Substantiv folgende Infinitiv des Passivs ist als Beifügung (Attribut) anzusehen und mit einem Relativsatze zu übersetzen:

The chief object to be observed der Hauptgegenstand, der zu bemerken ist — The first room to be seen das erste Zimmer, das zu sehen ist. An offence not to be pardoned.

§ 105. Das deutsche „lassen" wird nach seiner dreifachen Bedeutung auf verschiedene Weise im Englischen wiedergegeben:

a. in der Bedeutung zulassen (franz. laisser) durch to let mit folgendem Infinitiv ohne **to**, to suffer, to allow und to permit, die letzteren drei mit **to** (vgl. Akk. m. d. Inf. § 107 ff.):

Let us go. Let me introduce you to the ladies. Suffer me to stay a while. Allow me to call the footman.

Zu merken: Let me alone! Laß mich in Ruhe! Leave me alone! Laß mich allein!

b. in der Bedeutung von veranlassen (frz. **faire**) durch to cause, Inf. mit **to**, to make, ohne **to**, to have und **to get**, die beiden letzteren mit unmittelbar folgendem Objekt und nachfolgendem Part. Perfekt:

I'll make her sing. You make your friends sit down. I'll make them move up and down. I am going to have the door opened. I will get our boots cleaned. Even our stair-cases we have them covered with carpets or coverings.

c. in der Bedeutung von befehlen durch to order und to command, beide mit **to** vor dem Infinitiv, **to bid** ohne **to:**

We order them to take this way. My parents bid me tell you.

In der Bedeutung „zurücklassen" wird es durch to leave übersetzt:

We left him behind Wir ließen ihn zurück.

Der Infinitiv des Passivs muß an Stelle des Aktivs angewendet werden, wenn das Subjekt des Nebensatzes nicht thätig ist, sondern die Thätigkeit erleidet:

Our grandfather caused our house to be built. I shall no more suffer myself to be carried away by my good humour.

Zu merken: Holen lassen heißt to send for (envoyer chercher), wissen lassen to send word, warten lassen to keep waiting.

§ 106. C. Der Infinitiv zur Verkürzung von Nebensätzen (Subordinate sentences).

Nebensätze können durch den Infinitiv verkürzt werden, wenn das Subjekt derselben mit dem des Hauptsatzes gleich ist oder leicht dem Sinne nach ergänzt werden kann:

Let us sit down to admire. This room is too elegant to live in. There is a looking-glass for you to look in.

Die Nebensätze werden im Deutschen teils durch Relativsätze, teils durch wenn, indem, da, weil, als daß (nach too) oder mit Hilfszeitwörtern wie können, müssen, sollen aufgelöst.

Besonders werden fragende Nebensätze mit **how, what,** where mit dem Infinitiv verkürzt; im Deutschen durch „sollen" aufzulösen.

You are never at a loss how to act — how you ought to act.
He was always puzzled how to handle his knife and fork.
Would you teach me how to use them properly? He did not know what to say.

Nebensätze, die einen Zweck (**aim**) oder eine Absicht (**intention**) ausdrücken, werden ebenfalls durch einen Infinitiv mit to oder in order to verkürzt; deutsch um zu:

This is a nice room to sit in.

Let us go to my bed-room in order to make ourselves tidy.

Befindet sich im Hauptsatze ein Adverb oder ein Adjektiv mit **too,** so wird der Nebensatz mit dem Infinitiv mit **to** verkürzt; im Deutschen mit als daß oder um zu aufzulösen:

This is too elegant a room to dwell in.

This is rather too complicated a matter to be retained by my weak brains.

VIII. Der Akkusativ mit dem Infinitiv.

(The Accusative with the Infinitive.)

§ 107. Ist das Objekt eines Verbs zugleich das Subjekt eines folgenden Infinitivs, so entsteht die dem Lateinischen entsprechende Konstruktion des sogen. „Akkusativs mit dem Infinitiv" (Accusativus cum infinitivo).

Auch die deutsche Sprache besitzt in beschränktem Maße diese Konstruktion: Ich hörte den Vogel singen (Vogel ist Objekt des Zeitwortes hören und zugleich Subjekt des Infinitivs singen — der Vogel sang). Ich sah dich kommen. Man ließ ihn bestrafen.

In den meisten Fällen jedoch muß der Infinitiv im Deutschen durch einen Nebensatz mit „daß" aufgelöst werden, wobei der Akkusativ in den Nominativ, also in das Subjekt des Satzes, verwandelt wird:

I know him to be a gentleman ich weiß, daß er ein feiner Herr ist.

§ 108. Der Akkusativ wird mit dem Infinitiv ohne **to** oder mit **to** gebraucht.

Ohne **to** wird der Akkusativ mit dem Infinitiv gebraucht:

a. nach den Verben des Wahrnehmens (übereinstimmend mit dem Deutschen): to see, to hear, to feel, to perceive, to behold:

I saw him whisper a few words to the wall. I hear the organ sound. I felt my heart tremble.

Nach diesen Verben kann auch anstatt des Infinitivs das Part. Präsens stehen. (Vgl. § 113 c.)

I saw him whispering.

b. Nach folgenden Verben: to bid, to make, to let und to have mit vorausgehendem will:

He bade me follow him. Please to let me know. He would have me walk back again.

§ 109. Mit **to** wird der Akkusativ mit dem Infinitiv gebraucht:

a. nach den Verben des Wünschens: to wish, to want, to desire, to choose, to ask:

He desired me to accompany him. He wished me to do the same. He asked me to remain.

b. nach den Verben des Veranlassens, Gebietens und Verbietens, mit Ausnahme der Verben in § 108 b: to cause, to order, to command, to condemn, to doom verurteilen, to forbid, to request und to require fordern:

We ordered the cabman to drive us to the British Museum. He requested me to follow him. We order them to enter this way.

Der Infinitiv steht nach diesen Verben im Passiv, wenn das Objekt die Handlung des Infinitivs erleidet:

Richard of Gloucester caused his two nephews to be smothered. Lord Elgin caused them (the Marbles) to be brought to London.

c. nach den Verben des Zulassens, Zugestehens: to suffer, to allow, to permit (mit Ausnahme von to let, vgl. § 105 b):

Allow me to add. Suffer me to begin at the beginning. Will you permit me to take you with me at once?

d. nach den Verben des Sagens und Denkens kann der abhängige Satz durch den Akkusativ mit dem Infinitiv ausgedrückt werden: to think, to believe, to confess bekennen, to declare erklären, to deny leugnen, to expect erwarten, to fancy und to imagine sich vorstellen, einbilden, to find, to know, to presume, to suppose, to prove, to propose.

I had first believed him to be an Englishman. I imagined you to be prevented from going out. I knew him to be a perfect gentleman.

Eine Ausnahme bildet to say, welches den Nebensatz mit that erfordert: He said that I was right er sagte, daß ich recht hätte.

§ 110. Nominativ mit dem Infinitiv.

Der Akkusativ mit dem Infinitiv kann in einen Nominativ mit dem Infinitiv verwandelt werden, wenn das Verb des Hauptsatzes in das Passivum tritt. Hierbei wird das Objekt zum Subjekt und der Infinitiv folgt stets mit **to**, auch bei denjenigen Verben, bei denen es im Aktivum wegfällt:

He desired me to accompany him — I was desired to accompany him. The British Museum is thought to be one of the finest museums in the world. Visitors are permitted to look at it only from the entrance. None but students are allowed to make use of it. A temple of Diana is supposed to have occupied the site. Lady Jane Gray was condemned to suffer the same fate.

§ 111. Haben Haupt- und Nebensatz dasselbe Subjekt, dann braucht man statt des persönlichen das reflexive Fürwort:

He proved himself to be a clever guide. I confessed myself to be quite exhausted. We caused ourselves to be conducted there.

IX. Die Partizipien und das Gerundium.

(The Participles and the Gerund.)

A. Das Partizip.

§ 112. Das Partizip ist die adjektivische Form des Verbs; als Partizip Präsens bezeichnet es eine werdende oder noch andauernde Handlung in aktiver Bedeutung, als Partizip Perfekt eine vollendete Thätigkeit in passiver Bedeutung. Das Partizip hat demnach den Charakter eines Verbs einerseits — eigentliches Partizip (participle), und als Adjektiv andrerseits — Verbal-Adjektiv. Das Partizip Präsens wird im Englischen auch vielfach als Substantiv — Verbal-Substantiv (Gerund) gebraucht (B. § 115).

§ 113. Das Verbal-Adjektiv wird gebraucht:

a. als reines Adjektiv:

A playing child; an invigorating exercise; broken arms.

b. Das Part. Präs. steht zuweilen, um die Thätigkeit eines Verbs näher zu bestimmen:

I think we remain standing here. They just come running in this direction. They would burst out laughing.

Im Deutschen wird hier entweder der Infinitiv oder das Part. Perf. angewendet: Ich denke wir bleiben hier stehen. Sie kommen gerade in dieser Richtung gelaufen.

c. Das Part. Präsens steht ferner häufig nach den Verben des Wahrnehmens anstatt des Akk. mit dem Inf. (vgl. § 108 a), um eine Handlung als dauernd zu bezeichnen:

We see our children playing, anstatt play; we hear them singing etc.

d. Das Part. Perfekt aktiver Verben steht nach Verben des Wahrnehmens mit abhängigem Akkusativ, um einen passiven Zustand des Objekts auszudrücken:

Did you ever see it played? I never saw it done like this.

Anmerkung: Das Partizip Präsens wird zuweilen in passivem Sinne an Stelle der periphrastischen Form gebraucht: There is just a cricket-match playing für being played. This house is building für being built. Dinner is preparing.

§ 114. Das wirkliche Partizip wird gebraucht:

1. zur Verkürzung von Nebensätzen, besonders der Zeit und des Grundes (Adverbial sentences or clauses of time and cause). Im Deutschen werden diese Sätze entweder mit indem, da, als, weil, während, nachdem aufgelöst, oder auch als beigeordnete Sätze mit dem Vordersatze durch und verbunden. Haupt- und Nebensatz haben entweder ein gemeinschaftliches Subjekt (im Hauptsatze) oder verschiedene Subjekte: Absolute Partizipialkonstruktion (Absolute participial sentence or clause).

a. Gemeinschaftliches Subjekt:

Entering more closely upon our subject, let me observe etc. I shall learn this capital game while staying in England. Having seen that too, I think we may go. While practising I can teach you the rules. Being quite a new hand at it, I should not like being observed too much.

b. Verschiedene Subjekte:

These preparations being finished, the play begins. This done, he has to make his runs.

2. Zur Vertretung von Relativsätzen:

Two small pieces of wood lying across on them. There are two sides playing against each other. The player placed before the wicket has to defend it. A large ball made of india-rubber and covered with leather.

B. Das Verbalsubstantiv (Gerund).

§ 115. Das Gerundium hat gleiche Form mit dem Partizip Präsens, bezeichnet jedoch die Thätigkeit des Verbs als Substantiv. Sein Gebrauch entspricht meistens dem des deutschen substantivierten Infinitivs mit zu, muß jedoch häufig durch einen Nebensatz aufgelöst werden. Es kann eine Thätigkeit oder einen Zustand bezeichnen, im Aktiv wie im Passiv stehen (observing und being observed) und wie das Substantiv mit und ohne Artikel, mit Adjektiven und adjektivischen Fürwörtern und mit allen Präpositionen außer **to** gebraucht werden.

§ 116. Das Gerundium steht als Subjekt, Objekt und Attribut:

a. Subjekt:

Too much sitting and studying does not agree with our natural temper. Early rising and temperate living are greatly conducive to health. Erring is human. Seeing is believing.

b. Objekt:

I propose taking an afternoon's walk. You decline walking. You will much admire my sister's playing. They left off playing. I prefer driving.

c. Attribut:

There is no better opportunity of observing all these games. The umpire has to decide on doubtful cases of playing. The sports of boxing, wrestling etc. The system of playing.

§ 117. Tritt der Artikel vor das Gerundium, so folgt das Objekt im Genitiv mit **of**, ohne Artikel oder mit adjektivischen Fürwörtern und Präpositionen folgt das direkte Objekt:

The twinkling of an eye. By the observing of these rules much skill and agility may be brought into play.

A good opportunity of studying the game. Her taking the balls is quite wonderful. Our cultivating out-door games etc. Nothing prevents us from hiring a cab. In crossing this field we shall get to it. He has to defend the wicket by stopping or striking the ball.

§ 118. Das Verbalsubstantiv dient zur Verkürzung von Nebensätzen (Substantivsätzen), wobei die Konjunktion that wegfällt. Sind die Subjekte verschieden, so wird das des Nebensatzes durch das possessive Fürwort oder den sächsischen Genitiv[1] ausgedrückt:

I fear not having been able to give you a full insight into the game. I should not like being too much observed. Should you like some friend's visiting us. (Siehe Anmerkung.) The whole play is done by kicking the ball with the foot (dadurch daß —). The latter are calculated for sharpening the intellect. Nothing prevents us from hiring a cab.

§ 119. Das Verbalsubstantiv steht immer nach folgenden Ausdrücken:

a. **There is no** man kann nicht, es läßt sich nicht:

There is no saying. There is no denying this fact.

b. **It is no use** es hilft, nützt nichts:

It is no use crossing over.

c. **I cannot help** (avoid, forbear) ich kann nicht umhin:

I cannot help remarking; I cannot forbear showing my surprise.

[1] Das Genitivzeichen wird zuweilen weggelassen.

d. **To have done** fertig sein:

He has done playing for the first inning.

e. **Worth** wert, in passiver Bedeutung:

The game is worth learning.

X. Der Konjunktiv.

(The Conjunctive Mood.)

§ 120. Der Konjunktiv wird im Englischen immer weniger angewendet; er ist, wie im Französischen, der Modus der Ungewißheit und des Zweifels, und wird besonders gebraucht zum Ausdruck einer bloßen Annahme oder einer in der Zukunft möglichen Handlung. Sobald kein Zweifel vorhanden ist, steht der Modus der Wirklichkeit, der Indikativ.

Übereinstimmend mit dem Französischen, aber abweichend vom Deutschen, stehen die Nebensätze im Indikativ.

Der einfache Konjunktiv, welcher in allen Personen des Präsens dem Infinitiv, im Imperfekt dem Indikativ gleicht (mit Ausnahme von to be, wo in allen Personen das pluralische were (2. Pers. Sing. auch wert) gebraucht wird), ist im modernen Englisch fast ganz durch die mit may, might, shall, should', will und would umschriebenen Formen verdrängt worden.

§ 121. Der Konjunktiv steht in der Regel:

a. in Wunschsätzen (sog. Hauptsätze): May you be happy! God save the Queen!

b. in Sätzen, die eine Absicht (intention) ausdrücken, gewöhnlich durch that daß, und lest damit nicht, eingeleitet:

Please come in, that I may offer you some refreshments. I am obliged to look sharp after things, lest they be neglected.

c. Nach Verben des Wünschens (desire), Bedauerns (regret), und Fürchtens (fear):

I wish you may have a very fine harvest. I wish you were here. I fear I shall not return so soon. I regret you should not have come a few days earlier.

d. in Einräumungssätzen (concéssive sentences or clauses): though (although) obgleich, except ausgenommen, es sei denn daß, whether — or ob — oder, sei es daß — oder, sowie auch oft nach den mit ever und soever zusammengesetzten Wörtern: whoever, whosoever, wer auch, jedweder, whatever was auch immer, jedwedes:

Although he spend(s) most of his time in serving others, he is always glad to welcome visitors whether they be parishoners or not. Not overmuch, except when the season be propitious. Whosoever wish(es) to see something of English life etc. Whatever may be their business.

e. in Bedingungssätzen (conditional sentences), wenn an eine (zukünftige) Möglichkeit gedacht wird, nach if wenn, provided und suppose (that) vorausgesetzt daß, wofern daß, angenommen, on condition (that) unter der Bedingung daß, in case (that) im Falle daß, unless es sei denn daß, wenn nicht, wofern nicht:

If I be not mistaken. If I were you wenn ich an Ihrer Stelle wäre. If I had but time wenn ich nur Zeit hätte. Provided their means be not too limited. Suppose we should go into the farm-yard. He arbitrates in family differences on condition they should not be too serious. Tell me something about English society, unless your business claim your presence elsewhere.

f. in Adverbialsätzen der Zeit (adverbial sentences of time), wenn das Eintreten einer Handlung als ungewiß bezeichnet werden soll, nach till, until, when, before und ere:

Many things may occur before it be harvested. It will be years perhaps ere I may return. The hunting lasts until the game be either tired out etc.

g. Nach unpersönlichen Ausdrücken wie: it is necessary, it is strange es ist sonderbar, it is natural, it is possible, it is just es ist billig, it is probable u. a., wenn nicht eine Wirklichkeit, sondern eine Annahme folgt:

I think it is just you should know something of our social conditions. What a pity you should not be able to stay. It is quite natural that he should be loved by everybody. It is strange you should never have heard of them.

Anmerkung: Werden die Konjunktionen if, though und whether weggelassen, so tritt Inversion ein:

Were it but to bring about a mutual approach. Had I but time to attend to them.

XI. Konjunktionen.

(Conjunctions.)

§ 122. Die Konjunktion **as**:

a. vergleichend, wie, knüpft an etwas Vorhergehendes an, wobei ein hinweisendes so oder such zu ergänzen ist; oft wird es ganz ausgelassen:

Neat little houses as you have seen in the suburbs of London. They do not loiter about as you have seen in France.

As und like; ersteres bedeutet Gleichheit; letzteres nur Ähnlichkeit; like ist Adjektiv und kann daher nicht zwei Sätze verbinden:

He acts as a lawyer oder like a lawyer, d. h. as a lawyer would act; aber nicht: like a lawyer would act. (Warum nicht?) They are addressed as ladies.

As steht auch in Beteuerungen: As sure as I live! So wahr ich lebe!

As to, as for, was — anbetrifft: As to myself, I prefer real chases.

Merke: As much again und twice as much noch einmal so viel. As if, as though als ob. As it were sozusagen, gleichsam. Inasmuch as insofern als.

b. Zeitlich (temporal) als, wie, indem bezeichnet die Zeitdauer und Gleichzeitigkeit (while während), when dagegen den Zeitpunkt:

He trembled as he went away. When he came, she went away.

c. Ursächlich (kausal) since da, da ja (frz. puisque):

Our houses are quite large enough as they are inhabited by one family only.

§ 123. Die Konjunktion **but** (vgl. hierzu § 62), ist ursprünglich Präposition, außer, ausgenommen, und wird

a. als beschränkende Konjunktion im Deutschen mit außer, nur nicht (save, except) und nach Verneinung und Frage mit als, anders als übersetzt:

All but one (alle bis auf einen) were lost. The last but one der vorletzte. I am all but (fast) parched with thirst (p. 35). But for you I should not have seen a Shakespearian revival (p. 33). I was anything but satisfied with the place (p. 33). He did nothing but shout (p. 34).

b. als adversative und beiordnende Konjunktionen, aber, sondern, daß nicht, ob nicht, ohne daß:

Our houses are but of two stories, but they are quite large enough. I do not deny (doubt) but that town amusements may be more attractive. Who knows but we may have something like them one day? I cannot but (ich kann nicht umhin) recommend you to do so. No village but has

its cricket and foot-ball clubs. No room or spot, but has been sprinkled with the blood of cruelly murdered victims (p. 59). The villagers are not so insensible but that they should not reap some benefit from them.

§ 124. **If**[1] und **when;** das erstere ist konditional, wofern, falls (frz. si), das letztere temporal, wann, wenn, zu der Zeit (frz. quand):

If you wish to see him you must know when he is at home.

§ 125. **Either — or** entweder — oder, **neither — nor** weder — noch. Nach einer Verneinung steht either — or, das dann durch weder — noch übersetzt wird:

I do not care either for trolling or bottom fishing.

Zuweilen steht auch nor allein, um zwei Sätze zu verbinden; es wird dann durch auch nicht, noch übersetzt und bewirkt Inversion:

Nor do they spend their evenings in open-air concerts.
Nor do I, nor I either, neither I ich auch nicht.
Ich weiß es auch nicht I do not know it either (Wie im Französ.)

§ 126. **That** daß, wird häufig in der vertraulichen Umgangssprache, besonders vor Objektivsätzen, ausgelassen. Haupt- und Nebensatz dürfen nicht durch ein Komma getrennt werden.

§ 127. **If** und **whether** ob. Bei einfacher Frage können beide stehen, in einer Doppelfrage dagegen nur whether:

He asked me if (whether) I could come. I doubt whether I shall do it (or not).

§ 128. **While** (frz. pendant que) und **whilst** (frz. tandis que); das erstere bezeichnet eine Gleichzeitigkeit, das letztere einen Gegensatz:

I learned English while I was in England, whilst you did nothing but playing.

While ist nicht mit during zu verwechseln; letzteres ist Präposition: During the night while we were sleeping.

§ 129. **After, before, since** und **till** sind sowohl Konjunktionen als Präpositionen:

a. After having seen him;	b. after a few days.
Before I shall return;	before his face.
Since I have seen you;	since a short time.
I shall wait till you come;	till to-morrow.

[1] An für if ist veraltet.

XII. Gebrauch der Zeiten.
(Use of Tenses.)

§ 130. 1. Das Präsens (The Present).

Das Präsens dient:

a. zur Bezeichnung einer in der Gegenwart geschehenden Handlung: I write a letter. I take a walk through the town.

b. Zur Bezeichnung einer Handlung oder eines Zustandes, deren Bedeutung für alle Zeiten giltig ist: I like all the produce of the garden. The English are fond of roast-beef and plum-pudding. Birds sing.

Soll die Dauer einer Handlung in der Gegenwart besonders hervorgehoben werden, so bedient sich der Engländer der mit to be und dem Part. Präsens umschriebenen Form: He is writing a letter. The birds are singing.

Das Präsens zur Bezeichnung zukünftiger Ereignisse ist im Englischen seltener als im Deutschen und muß außerdem noch von einer Zeitbestimmung begleitet sein: We go to London next week. We leave town on the 20th of this month.

Nach den Verben to hope und to expect muß, da sie auf Zukünftiges hinweisen, stets das Futurum stehen: I hope you will soon recover. I expect you will remain for some time.

§ 131. 2. Das Imperfekt und das Perfekt.
(The Imperfect or Past and the Perfect.)

a. Das Imperfekt bezeichnet eine völlig vergangene Zeit oder Zeitdauer, deren Abschluß entweder durch eine Zeitbestimmung hervorgehoben oder aus dem Sinne und Zusammenhange erraten wird: I arrived here yesterday. Next morning I left the hotel. The first great poet that was buried (Pass.) here. Your letter duly came to hand. I was born on the 11th of January.

b. Das Perfekt, gleich dem französischen passé indéfini, bezeichnet:

aa. die Vergangenheit ganz allgemein ohne jegliche nähere Bestimmung: I have been in the British Museum. It is a long time that I have seen you.

bb. eine Handlung, Zeit oder Zustand, die noch bis in die Gegenwart hineinreichen: I have been in England this year. How long have you been in England? (wenn der Gefragte noch da ist). How long were you in England (wenn der Gefragte England verlassen hat). How long have you learned English? (der Gefragte lernt noch). I have learned it

these three years. Dagegen: When did you learn English? I learned it, when I was in England.

Im Deutschen wird zuweilen auf die Frage: Seit wie lange? das Präsens mit **schon** gebraucht, wo im Englischen das Perfekt steht: Seit wie lange kennen Sie ihn schon? How long have you known him?

§ 132. 3. Das Futurum (the Future).

Das Futurum muß zum Ausdrucke jeder in der Zukunft geschehenden Handlung gebraucht werden (Ausnahmen siehe Präsens und Anm. a.):

I hope you will return soon ich hoffe, Sie kommen bald wieder. We soon shall go away wir gehen bald fort. I expect that you will do your duty ich hoffe, daß du deine Pflicht thust.

Anm. a. In Nebensätzen der Zeit nach when, till, after, before, as soon as wird gewöhnlich das Präsens angewendet, wenn das Futurum schon im Hauptsatze ausgedrückt ist:

We shall have done when you arrive. I shall work till I am tired. We shall wait before we go. He will do it as soon as he can.

Anm. b. Im Deutschen wird das Futurum gern zum Ausdruck einer Vermutung angewendet, was im Englischen durch eine entsprechende Wendung wiederzugeben ist:

Er wird wohl krank sein: He is probably ill, oder: he may be ill. Das wird vielleicht vor zehn Jahren geschehen sein: This may have happened, oder: that has likely happened ten years ago.

§ 133. 4. Gebrauch der Zeiten in Nebensätzen.

Im Englischen wie im Französischen steht die direkte Rede im Indikativ und nicht, wie im Deutschen, im Konjunktiv.

a. Die Zeit des Verbs im Nebensatze richtet sich, wie im Französischen, nach der Zeit des Hauptsatzes. (Ausn. § 132 a.) Demzufolge muß nach den Zeiten der Vergangenheit das Verb des Nebensatzes im Imperfekt und nicht, wie vielfach im Deutschen, im Präsens stehen:

Er fragte mich, ob ich ein Deutscher sei: He asked me if I was a German. Ich sagte, daß ich sie kenne: I told him that I knew her. Man sagte mir, daß Sie krank gewesen seien: I was told that you had been ill. Ich leugnete nicht, daß ich von dem englischen Hause sehr eingenommen sei: I did not deny that I was very fond of the English house.

Der abhängige Satz darf nicht durch Komma von dem Hauptsatze getrennt werden. Die Konjunktion that kann wegfallen.

b. Haben Haupt- und Nebensatz dasselbe Subjekt, so wird für alle drei Personen des Futur und Konditional **shall**

und **should** gesetzt: He told me he should go to England; aber: he would go daß er gehen wollte. He thought he should be able to do it: er glaubte, daß er imstande sein würde, es zu thun. He says he shall return next year.

§ 134. Die gebräuchlichsten starken und unregelmäßigen schwachen Zeitwörter.

Die mit einem * bezeichneten Verben können auch regelmäßig gebraucht werden.

abide, abode, abode bleiben
arise, arose, arisen entstehen, aufstehen
awake, awoke, awaked aufwachen, wecken
be, was, been sein
bear, bore, borne tragen, ertragen
bear, bore, born gebären
beat, beat, beaten schlagen
become, became, become werden, geziemen
begin, began, begun anfangen
behold, beheld, beheld sehen, erblicken
bend, bent, bent beugen, spannen
*bereave, bereft, bereft berauben
beseech, besought, besought ersuchen, anflehen
bid, bade, bidden gebieten, befehlen
bid, bid
bind, bound, bound binden
bite, bit, bitten, bit beißen
bleed, bled, bled bluten
blow, blew, blown blasen, wehen
break, broke, broken brechen
breed, bred, bred brüten, erzeugen, erziehen
bring, brought, brought bringen
build, built, built bauen
*burn, burnt, burnt, burned brennen
burst, burst, burst bersten
buy, bought, bought kaufen
cast, cast, cast werfen
catch, caught, caught fangen
chide, chid, chidden, chid schelten
choose, chose, chosen wählen
cleave, cleft, cleft (cloven adj.) spalten
cling, clung, clung sich anklammern, kleben
*clothe, clad, clad kleiden
come, came, come kommen
cost, cost, cost kosten
creep, crept, crept kriechen
*crow, crew, crown kriechen
cut, cut, cut schneiden
dare, durst, dared dürfen, wagen
*deal, dealt, dealt austeilen, handeln, verfahren
*dig, dug, dug gegraben
do, did, done thun
draw, drew, drawn ziehen
*dream, dreamt, dreamt träumen
drink, drank, drunk (drunken adj.) trinken
drive, drove, driven treiben, fahren
*dwell, dwelt, dwelt wohnen
eat, ate, eat, eaten essen
fall, fell, fallen fallen
feed, fed, fed füttern
feel, felt, felt fühlen
fight, fought, fought kämpfen
find, found, found finden
flee, fled, fled fliehen
fling, flung, flung schleudern
fly, flew, flown fliegen (fliehen)

forbear, forbore, forborne unterlassen
forbid, forbade, forbidden verbieten
forget, forgot, forgotten vergessen
forgive, forgave, forgiven vergeben
forsake, forsook, forsaken verlassen
freeze, froze, frozen frieren
get, got, got gelangen, bekommen, werden
*gild, gilt, gilt, vergolden
*gird, girt, girt umgürten
give, gave, given geben
go, went, gone gehen
grind, ground, ground mahlen, schleifen
grow, grew, grown wachsen, werden
hang,[1] hung, hung hangen, hängen
hear, heard, heard hören
hew, hewed, hewn hauen
hide, hid, hid, hidden verbergen
hit, hit, hit treffen
hold, held, held (be)halten
hurt, hurt, hurt verletzen
keep, kept, kept halten
*kneel, knelt, knelt knieen
*knit, knit, knit stricken
know, knew, known kennen
lade, laded, laden beladen
lay, laid, laid legen
lead, led, led leiten führen
*lean, leant, leant anlehnen
*leap, leapt, leapt springen
learn, learnt, learnt, learned[2] lernen
leave, left, left verlassen
lend, lent, lent leihen
let, let, let lassen
lie, lay, lain liegen
*light, lit, lit anzünden
load, loaded, loaden laden
lose, lost, lost verlieren
make, made, made machen
mean, meant, meant meinen, beabsichtigen, bedeuten
meet, met, met begegnen, treffen
melt, melted, molten schmelzen
mow, mowed, mown mähen
pay, paid, paid bezahlen
put, put, put setzen, stellen, legen
*quit, quit, quit verlassen
read, read, read lesen
rend, rent, rent zerreißen
rid, rid, rid befreien
ride, rode, rode reiten, fahren
ring, rang, rung läuten, klingen
rise, rose, risen sich erheben
*rive, rove, riven spalten
rot, rotted, rotten faulen
run, ran, run laufen
saw, sawed, sawn sägen
say, said, said sagen
see, saw, seen sehen
seek, sought, sought suchen
sell, sold, sold kaufen
send, sent, sent senden, schicken
set, set, set setzen
sew (ew = o^u), sewed, sewn nähen
shake, shook, shaken schütteln
shave, shaved, shaven rasieren
shear, shore, shorn scheren
shed, shed, shed vergießen
shine, shone, shone scheinen,
shoe, shod, shod beschlagen
shoot, shot, shot schießen
show, showed, shown zeigen
shrink, shrank (shrunk), shrunk einschrumpfen, zurückbeben

[1] hang henken, ist regelmäßig.

[2] adj. gelehrt.

shut, shut, shut zumachen, zuschließen
sing, sang, sung singen
sink, sank, sunk sinken
sit,[1] sat, sat sitzen
slay, slew, slain erschlagen
sleep, slept, slept schlafen
slide, slid, slid, slidden gleiten
sling, slang (slung), slung schleudern
slink, slank (slunk), slung schleichen
slit, slit, slit schlitzen
smite, smote, smitten schlagen (schmeißen)
sow, sowed, sown säen
speak, spoke, spoken sprechen
speed, sped, sped eilen
spend, spent, spent ausgeben, zu-, verbringen
*spill, spilt, spilt verschütten
spin, span (spun), spun spinnen
*spit, spit (spat) spit (spat) speien
spread, spread, spread aus-, verbreiten
spring, sprang, sprung springen
stand, stood, stood stehen
*stay, staid, staid bleiben
steal, stole, stolen stehlen
stick, stuck, stuck stecken, ankleben
sting, stang (stung), stung stechen
strew (ew = o[u]), strewed, strewn streuen
stride, strode, stridden schreiten
strike, struck, struck (stricken) schlagen
strive, strove, striven streben
strow, strowed, strown streuen
swear, swore, sworn schwören
*sweat, sweat, sweat schwitzen
sweep, swept, swept fegen
swell, swelled, swollen schwellen
swim, swam (swum), swum schwimmen
swing, swung, swung schwingen
take, took, taken nehmen
teach, taught, taught lehren
tear, tore, torn zerreißen
tell, told, told sagen, erzählen
think, thought, thought denken
thrive, throve, thriven gedeihen
throw, threw, thrown werfen
thrust, thrust, thrust stoßen
tread, trod, trodden treten
*wake, woke, woke (er)wachen
wear, wore, worn tragen
weave, wove, woven weben
weep, wept, wept weinen
win, won, won gewinnen
wind, wound, wound winden, sich winden
*work, wrought, wrought bewirken, ausarbeiten
wring, wrung, wrung ausringen, drehen
write, wrote, written schreiben
writhe, writhed, writhen sich winden

[1] To sit down sich setzen.

III.
Reader.

1. The British Islands.[1]

The *Island of Great Britain,* which is composed of England, Scotland, and Wales, and the Island of Ireland, form — together with the little Isle of Man in the Irish Sea, and the numerous islands about the northern coasts — the *British Empire* in Europe. The people of these islands have one and the same language, one and the same Queen, and the same laws; and though they differ in their religious worship, they all serve the same God, and call themselves by the name of Christ. All this is enough to make them brethren, in spite of many disagreements and faults which history tells of them in their intercourse with each other, when the strong oppressed the weak, and the weak hated the strong.

a. England.

The capital of the Island of Great Britain is *London,* the largest and richest city in the world. It lies on the river Thames, which divides it into a northern and a southern part lying in four different counties, the principal portion in the counties of Middlessex and Essex, the less important in the counties of Surrey and Kent.

London is divided into several parts: the *City*, the oldest and most important part of the town and the chief seat of commerce, is a separate community under the jurisdiction of the Lord Mayor and the Corporation, consisting of 26 aldermen and 206 common councilmen, called the Common Council; the *Westend* or *Westminster*, the aristocratic and

[1] The use of a good map of Great Britain will render the reading of this piece more interesting and instructive. We recommend for this purpose The British Islands by W. Hughes F. R. G. S. London, George Philip & Son, 32 Fleet Street.

finest part of the town, where the Queen holds her court when she is in London; there are the royal palaces and the mansions of the nobility, the Houses of Parliament with many other fine buildings, parks and theatres; *Southwark* or the *Borough,* on the south side of the river, forms with *Lambeth* the manufacturing district of London and contains a great number of factories of every kind, glass-works, and breweries.

Some miles from London, in the county of Berks,[1] is the famous Windsor Castle, where the Queen resides for a great part of the year; it is a very fine old castle, and stands in a beautiful and extensive wooded park.

The counties south of London, and bordering on the British Channel, have a soil almost entirely composed of chalk. They are crossed by various ranges of low hills, or downs, which look very curious when they are broken and laid bare, their sides being then as white as snow. Of this kind are the cliffs of Dover, the chief sea-port in Kent, from which the coast of France can be distinctly seen in clear weather. Kent is the largest of the south-eastern counties; it is famous for the cultivation of hops. They are planted in large fields, and trained over stakes, forming a very pretty sight, especially at the time of gathering.

Hampshire was formerly in great part covered by an immense forest, called the *New Forest.* Most of this is now cut down; but enough still remains to make it a very pretty and well-wooded country. The most remarkable town in Hampshire is Portsmouth, the largest harbour for ships of war in England. Opposite is the Isle of Wight, an island much celebrated for its beauty and its mild climate.

The eastern counties of England, those which border on the German Ocean, such as Norfolk, Suffolk, Cambridge, Essex, and Lincolnshire, are flat and unvaried beyond all other English counties. Their streams are dull and sluggish, and in many parts, especially in Lincolnshire, formerly spread themselves over the country in marshy swamps or fens, where large flocks of geese were bred for the sake of their quills and feathers. Of late years, however, large portions of the fens have been drained and converted into good land.

Among the chief towns in the east of England are, Norwich, the capital of Norfolk, a great manufacturing

[1] An abbreviation of Berkshire, like Wilts for Wiltshire, Hants for Hampshire. Shire or county, Grafschaft, in compound words pronounced with the short i. Likewise "mouth" Mündung, is shortened in compound substantives as Plymouth, Portsmouth etc.

town; and Cambridge, one of the two great English Universities.

The centre counties of England are, generally speaking, rich and fertile, and contain many important towns. Oxford, the capital of Oxfordshire, is a fine old city, and the other chief University in England. Birmingham, in Warwickshire, is a large and very populous town; its manufactures in steel and iron are very beautiful and extensive, and supply a great part of the world.

The people in the country near Birmingham are much employed in iron foundries; that is, places where iron is melted in the fire and purified from the ore in which it is found. At night, the whole country looks as if it were burning, from the brick kilns and chimneys bursting out with flame and smoke, which are scattered about as far as the eye can reach.

In Derbyshire, many of the people are employed in working in the copper and lead mines, which are numerous in this county. It is a rocky and hilly country, though none of its mountains are very high; the highest is called "the Peak." The hills are full of long dark winding caverns; and even several of the rivers flow under-ground during part of their course.

Near the borders of Wales, the country becomes more hilly and woody than most of the midland counties. Herefordshire and Worcestershire are famous for apples and pears, which are made into a kind of wine called *cider*, when it is made from apples; and *perry*, from pears. The roads are bordered with orchards full of apple and pear trees, laden with fruit in autumn, or white with blossom in spring.

The *north* of England is very different from either the middle or the south. Lancashire and Yorkshire are chiefly celebrated for their trade and manufactures. Those of Yorkshire are woollen cloths, knives, and scissors; and the chief towns at which these are carried on are Sheffield and Leeds. Sheffield supplies a great part of the world with cutlery. Another very important town in Yorkshire is Hull, a great sea-port on the mouth of the river Humber.

In Lancashire the most remarkable towns are Liverpool and Manchester. Manchester is the great market for the cotton manufactures of England. Liverpool is well known as a famous trading sea-port.

The counties of Cumberland and Westmoreland are quite covered with mountains, among which are many beautiful lakes, almost the only ones in England. The largest of these

is called Windermere. In these counties are many slate quarries; and black lead of which pencils are made is found in a mine near Keswick,[1] in Cumberland.

Devonshire, in the south-west part of England, is a very hilly county, and in parts very beautiful. In the same county is Plymouth, the largest harbour for ships, next to Portsmouth, in England. Some miles out at sea stands the famous Eddystone light-house, placed there to warn vessels from that dangerous part of the English Channel.

Cornwall is the most western county in England; it is surrounded by sea on all sides but one, where it joins Devonshire. It is terminated by a promontory of granite rock, which stretches out into the Atlantic Ocean, and is called Land's End. It faces the Atlantic, and forms a portion of the most majestically wild coast scenery in the empire. Cornwall is famous for its tin mines and its fisheries. The Cornish are the same race with the Welsh, and till about a century ago, the Cornish language, which was a dialect of Welsh, was spoken.

b. Wales.

To the west of England, along the borders of St. George's Channel, lies the Principality of Wales, so called because the eldest son of the King or Queen of England has always the title of Prince of Wales. It is divided into North and South Wales.

Although the whole country is mountainous, the north is by far the most so; its whole surface is covered with rugged sharp peaks, of which the highest is Snowdon. The valleys among these mountains are mostly full of peat bogs, like those in Ireland; they give a clear brown tint to the streams und torrents which flow down the mountain sides or leap from rock to rock. In many parts, there are slate quarries, as in Westmoreland; and all the houses, even the smallest cottages, are roofed with slate, which gives them a very neat appearance. In South Wales, the mountains are smooth, round, and green, more like high hills, and none of them rise to as great a height as Snowdon.

In all parts of Wales, the people speak Welsh, the language which was anciently spoken by all the inhabitants of Britain, until they were invaded by a tribe from Germany, and driven to Wales. English is understood, however, in

[1] Pron. Kessick.

the towns. The dress and appearance of the Welsh are very different from those of the English. They are a remarkably clean, active, industrious people; their houses and persons are very neat, and they are so careful never to lose a moment of their time, that the women carry their knitting with them wherever they go; they may often be seen with baskets or bundles on their heads, and knitting needles in their hands, making woollen stockings, night-caps, or other articles of warm clothing.

The Welsh are fond of music; their favourite instrument is a large harp, and in almost every inn, a harper may be found.

c. Scotland.

Scotland is divided into the *Lowlands* and *Highlands.* All the south-eastern part of it is called the Lowlands, because great part of it is flat.

The Lowlands are separated from England by the Cheviot Hills, which run along the borders of Northumberland, and the Solway Frith, an arm of St. George's Channel, into which the Solway runs.

The counties skirting the Irish Channel are chiefly flat, though some parts inland are mountainous. The people are much employed in manufactures. The chief town in the west of Scotland is Glasgow, which, next to London and Manchester, is the largest city in Great Britain. It is famous for its trade and its cotton manufactures.

The southern or *Border* counties, as they are called, are hilly and barren. Roxburghshire in particular is quite mountainous. These counties are best suited for sheep pasturage; and accordingly most of the inhabitants are shepherds or sheep farmers. In the *middle* of the Lowlands, the country is more fertile. In the county of Mid-Lothian stands Edinburgh, the capital of Scotland. It is a beautiful city, built on three steep ridges, and not far from the Firth of Forth, an arm of the German Ocean. Edinburgh is divided into what is called the *Old* and the *New Town.* The old town is very ancient indeed, with narrow crooked streets, and houses sometimes ten or eleven stories high. The new town is very handsomely built.

The *Northern* Lowlands stretch along the northeast of Scotland, above the Firth of Forth. The largest of these counties is Aberdeenshire, whose capital, Aberdeen, is a

considerable town, and one of the Scotch Universities. These northern lowlands are mostly flat; near the coast they are fertile, but the interior contains much barren moorland.

The Lowland Scotch are a steady, industrious people, and schools are so universal among them, that it is hardly possible to find any one who cannot read, write, and cast accounts. The Scotch are Protestants, of the Presbyterian Church.

Across the middle of Scotland run the Grampian Hills, which separate the Lowlands from the Highlands.

The inhabitants of the Highlands are a totally different race from those of the Lowlands, both in dress, language, and race. They are supposed to have been originally of the same race as the Irish, and the language they speak, which is called Gælic or Erse, is nearly the same as Irish. They are much poorer than the Lowlanders, but are often very intelligent and well-educated. Almost all the Highlanders are divided into *clans,* that is, tribes or families of people, all related to each other, and bearing the same family name. The head of a clan is called a *chieftain,* and formerly these chieftains had great power, and were accustomed to summon their followers to help them whenever they wished to make war on their neighbours; and as they were almost constantly at war with each other, this led to a great deal of fighting and bloodshed. But all this is now quite at an end; the clans never meet together except for show or amusement, and are only distinguished by each tribe wearing a different *plaid* or *tartan.* It is a kind of cloth crossed and checked with bright-coloured stripes; the men in the Highlands constantly wear it, wrapped round them like a scarf. On their head, they wear a blue bonnet, bordered with red, blue, and green. The married women wear a kind of cap called a *kirch*; the single ones tie a ribbon round their heads, called the *snood,* but all wear a plaid, which serves the same purpose as a cloak does with us.

The Highlands, as their name shows, are covered with mountains. They consist of two great districts, the west and the north. The counties of the Western Highlands, of which Argyleshire is the largest and most important, are full of beautiful lakes. Loch Lomond, one of the largest and most beautiful, lies between Stirling and Dumbarton. In this district of the Highlands, though farther north, rises Ben Nevis, the highest mountain in the British Islands, and the only one on the top of which a small patch of snow remains all the year round. The capital of the Western Highlands

is Inverary; but the most important town in the north of Scotland is Inverness.

The *Northern* Highlands are still wilder and more barren than the west. They contain no very large or remarkable towns. The north-eastern point of Scotland is Dunnet Head, a lofty promontory in the county of Caithness, and the most northern point in the British Islands.

The Hebridēs form two large groups of islands to the west of Scotland, near Argyleshire. They are mountainous and barren; the largest of them is Lewis; but the most remarkable is Staffa, which contains an immense natural grotto or cavern, called Fingal's Cave, whose walls are formed of ranges of columns or pillars of dark gray stone, and its roof of others which have been broken off. This cave is 140 feet long.

The Orkneys are a group of islands just above the northern point of Caithness. They consist of one very large one called Mainland, and about thirty small ones. These islands are in general low, bleak, boggy, and bare; and the climate is so cold and ungenial, that no wheat and but little oats or other vegetable productions will grow in them. The people live chiefly on dried fish, or the salted flesh of the Gannet or Solan goose, a large bird common in those parts, and itself tasting much like fish. Most of the men either live by fishing, or become sailors in ships employed in the whale fisheries in the North Seas, which often touch at the Orkneys. The capital of the islands is Kirkwall.

The Shetland isles are still further north, and are no less bleak and rocky than those before mentioned. The inhabitants, like those of the Orkneys and Hebrides, are chiefly employed in fishing and catching the sea fowl, whose eggs they take from their nests in the cliffs with great difficulty and danger. The pretty little ponies sometimes seen here come from Shetland; in their native islands they are suffered to run wild about the moors and plains, and when any one wishes to make use of a horse, he catches one as well as he can, and turns it loose when he has done with it.

The women and girls in Shetland are generally employed in their only manufacture — knitting stockings of the wool of the Shetland sheep, which is uncommonly fine, warm, and soft. They also make scarfs and shawls of it, so fine as to look like lace at a distance.

d. Ireland.

Ireland lying further in the west of Europe than any other country, excepting Iceland, is the first European coast which the Atlantic Ocean washes. And a beautiful island it is: well watered with rivers and lakes — adorned with many lofty mountains, green pastures, and good land for corn.

The climate is milder, but more rainy and windy, than that of England, with fewer sunny days.

Ireland is divided into four Provinces, which in ancient times had each a king or chief of its own. The province of *Leinster*, which lies on the eastern coast, opposite to England, contains the city of *Dublin*, the capital of Ireland.

Dublin stands near the mouth of the Liffey, which river divides it into two parts. Along its banks are quays, full of shops; here, too, are the Courts of Law, and the Custom-House, at which the affairs of commerce are settled.

Dublin contains many other fine and useful public buildings. There is the Bank, the general Postoffice, the Mansion House, where the Lord Mayor lives. There are the three National Model-Schools, where more than a thousand children are educated. There are also the Training or Normal Schools, in which upwards of three hundred teachers, male and female, are instructed in the principles and practice of teaching.

Dublin also contains many valuable charitable institutions; especially hospitals where the sick and those who have met with accidents are received, and where the most skilful Physicians and Surgeons attend. In the neighbourhood is the famous hospital for incurables — a large dwelling in the midst of a pleasant garden, where persons who have an incurable disease are received, where they are kindly and skilfully tended, and enjoy the comforts of easy circumstances and kind companions.

On the west side of Dublin is the Phœnix Park, a beautiful, well-wooded pasture ground, where the people can walk or drive. It contains Zoological Gardens, beautifully laid out, where birds and beasts from foreign countries are kept. Tigers and leopards may be seen in houses; bears in a pit, with a pole for them to climb; monkeys, which in fine weather are placed in little wire houses; besides all sorts of curious birds. It is a treat permitted occasionally to the scholars of public schools to walk in these gardens.

At a village called Glasnevin, near Dublin, is an institution for the deaf and dumb, to teach them to talk on their fingers, read and write, and many other things. Here also is an

extensive farm to teach agriculture to the young men who have been educated at the Model-School.

Leinster, with the exception of the county of Wicklow — celebrated for its lovely scenery — is a flat province.

In the north of Ireland is the Province of *Ulster;* not far from which, on the east — divided by a channel, which in its narrowest part is not more than twenty-three miles — lies the south-west part of Scotland. A large proportion of the people here are of Scotch descent, and have some of the thrifty and industrious habits of Scotland.

Belfast — the second city of Ireland for trade and manufactures — lies on a bay of the sea, called Belfast Lough.[1] It is the great seat of the linen manufactories, and has also numerous cotton factories, besides manufactories of glass, iron, soap, cordage, and all sorts of machinery. A great many steamers trade to Belfast; and the number of merchant vessels entering the port averages about 6,000 annually.

Armagh and Londonderry are two other large and populous cities in the province of Ulster.

The north coast of Ireland is bold and rocky. On the shore of the county of Antrim, is an immense accumulation of lofty columns of a rock called basalt. In one part they are placed on a narrow promontory, like a pier or causeway, of about 700 feet long. This is called the *Giant's Causeway;* for these columns are so large and tall, that people in old times thought they must have been placed there by a giant. But it is now known that they must have been caused by some internal convulsion, like that which produces volcanoes.

On the west coast is the province of *Connaught.* It is a wild district, where Irish is a good deal spoken, especially in one beautiful but barren tract, called *Connemara.* The people here dress differently from those of the other provinces. The great river Shannon passes through the south part of Connaught, separating it from the southern province of Munster, and forming in its course several fine lakes.

The province of *Munster* stretches from east to west, through the south of Ireland. Far in the west are the beautiful lakes of Killarney, lying among the Kerry mountains, which are visited by strangers from all parts of Europe. They contain lovely green islands, adorned with the arbutus tree, which bears towards autumn bright scarlet berries, like strawberries.

[1] Pron. Lŏk.

The province of Munster possesses several fine cities. There is *Limerick* on the Shannon, in the west; *Waterford* on the east, opposite to the Welsh coast: and *Cork* in the south, on an estuary of the sea. Cork is reckoned the second city of Ireland, and exports quantity of live stock and butter. It has some handsome public buildings and markets, and the harbour of Cork is one of the finest in the world.

The two most remarkable natural features in Ireland are its large lakes, or inland seas, and its bogs. The peat bogs cover one seventh part of the land. The immense bog of Allen extends through several counties. These vast blackish looking plains are very dreary. Some pains have been taken to drain parts of them, and render them fit for potatoes and grain.

From 4th Book of Lessons for the Use of Schools.

2. Edward I. after the Conquest of Wales. 1282.

After the Conquest of Wales King Edward I. continued for some time to reside in that country, but found great difficulties in subduing the natives. Knowing what influence the Welsh minstrels had over the minds of the people, and sensible that nothing kept alive their military valour and ancient glory so much as their traditional poetry, he barbarously ordered the unfortunate bards to be put to death. They fled to the mountains and caves, but wherever they could be followed, their enemies pursued and murdered them.

After this, all the nobility of Wales submitted to the conqueror, and the English laws and ministers of justice were established in that principality. Edward promised them a prince, a Welshman by birth, and one who could not speak a word of English. On their acclamations of joy at his liberality, he declared to them that his own son, who had just been born in Carnarvon castle, and of course could not speak English, should be Prince of Wales; and from that time, the eldest son of the king of England, has borne that title.

Stephen Percy.

3. Rule Britannia.

When Britain first, at Heaven's command,
Arose from out the azure main,
This was the charter of the land,
And guardian angels sang this strain:
 Rule Britannia, Britannia rule the waves!
 Britons never shall be slaves!

The nations, not so blest as thee,
Must in their turn to tyrants fall,
Whilst thou shalt flourish great and free,
The dread and envy of them all.
 Rule Britannia, Britannia rule the waves!
 Britons never shall be slaves!

Still more majestic shalt thou rise,
More dreadful from each foreign stroke;
As the loud blast, that tears the skies,
Serves but to root thy native oak.
 Rule Britannia, Britannia rule the waves!
 Britons never shall be slaves!

Thee haughty tyrants ne'er shall tame:
All their attempts to bend thee down
Will but arouse thy generous flame,
But work their woe and thy renown:
 Rule Britannia, Britannia rule the waves!
 Britons never shall be slaves!

To thee belongs the rural reign;
Thy cities shall with commerce shine;
All thine shall be the subject main,
And every shore it circles thine!
 Rule Britannia, Britannia rule the waves!
 Britons never shall be slaves!

The Muses, still with freedom found,
Shall to thy happy coast repair;
Blest Isle, with matchless beauty crown'd,
And manly hearts to guard the fair.
 Rule Britannia, Britannia rule the waves!
 Britons never shall be slaves!

James Thomson.

4. The Green Little Shamrock of Ireland.[1]

There's a dear little plant that grows in our Isle,
 'Twas St. Patrick himself, sure, that set it;
And the sun on his labour with pleasure did smile,
 And with dew from his eye often wet it.
It thrives through the bog, through the brake, through the mireland;

[1] The Trefoil, the national emblem of Ireland — as the Rose that of England and the Thistle that of Scotland — is said to have served St. Patrick, the Apostle of the Irish, to explain and to illustrate to them the doctrine of Trinity.

And he called it the dear little shamrock of Ireland,
The sweet little shamrock, the dear little shamrock,
The sweet little, green little shamrock of Ireland.

This dear little plant still grows in our land,
 Fresh and fair as the daughters of Erin,
Whose smiles can bewitch, whose eyes can command,
 In each climate that they may appear in;
And shine through the bog, through the brake, through
 the mireland,
Just like their own dear little shamrock of Ireland,
The sweet little etc.

This dear little plant that springs from our soil,
 When its three little leaves are extended,
Denotes from one stalk we together should toil,
 And ourselves by ourselves be befriended:
And still through the bog, through the brake, through
 the mireland,
From one root should branch, like the shamrock of
 Ireland,
The sweet little etc.

Andrew Cherry.

5. My Heart's in the Highlands.

My heart's in the Highlands, my heart is not here;
My heart's in the Highlands, a chasing the deer;
Chasing the wild deer, and following the roe,
My heart's in the Highlands wherever I go.

Farewell to the Highlands, farewell to the North,
The birth-place of valour, the country of worth;
Wherever I wander, wherever I rove,
The hills of the Highlands for ever I love.

Farewell to the mountains high cover'd with snow;
Farewell to the straths and green valleys below;
Farewell to the forests and wild-hanging woods,
Farewell to the torrents and loud-pouring floods.

My heart's in the Highlands, my heart is not here;
My heart's in the Highlands, a chasing the deer,
Chasing the wild deer, and following the roe,
My heart's in the Highlands, wherever I go.

Robert Burns.

6. The London Streets.

The appearance presented by the streets of London an hour before sunrise, on a summer's morning, is most striking. There is an air of cold, solitary desolation about the noiseless streets, which we are accustomed to see thronged at other times by a busy, eager crowd, and over the quiet, closely shut buildings, which throughout the day are swarming with life and bustle, that is very impressive. The last houseless vagrant has coiled up his chilly limbs in some paved corner, to dream of food and warmth. The drunkard, the dissipated and the wretched have disappeared: the more sober and orderly part of the population have not yet awakened to the labour of the day, and the stillness of death is over the streets. The coach-stands in the larger thoroughfares are deserted: the night-houses are closed; and the chosen promenades of misery are empty.

An occasional policeman may alone be seen at the street-corners; and now and then a cat runs across the road. A partially opened bedroom window, here and there, bespeaks the heat of the weather and the uneasy slumbers of its occupants; and the dim scanty light, through the window-blind denotes the chamber of watching or sickness. With these exceptions the streets present no signs of life, nor the houses of habitation.

An hour wears away; the spires of the churches and roofs of the principal buildings are faintly tinged with the light of the rising sun, and the streets begin to resume their bustle and animation. Market-carts roll slowly along: the sleepy waggoner impatiently urging on his tired horses, or vainly endeavouring to awaken the boy, who, stretched on the top of the fruit-baskets, forgets his long-cherished curiosity to behold the wonders of London.

Sleepy-looking men begin to take down the shutters of early public houses; and little deal tables, with their ordinary preparation for a street-breakfast, make their appearance at the customary stations. Numbers of men and women, carrying upon their heads heavy baskets of fruit, toil down their way to Covent Garden, and following each other in rapid succession, form a long straggling line.

Here and there a bricklayer's labourer, with the day's dinner tied up in a handkerchief, walks briskly to his work; and occasionally a little knot of three or four schoolboys, on a stolen bathing expedition, rattle merrily over the pavement, their mirth contrasting forcibly with the demeanour of the

little sweep, who having knocked and rung till his arm aches, and being interdicted by a merciful legislature from endangering his lungs by calling out, sits patiently down on the door-step until the housemaid may happen to awake.

Covent Garden market, and the avenues leading to it, are thronged with carts of all sorts, sizes and descriptions. The pavement is already strewed with decayed cabbage-leaves, broken haybands, and all the indescribable litter of a vegetable-market; men are shouting, horses neighing, boys fighting, basket-women talking. These and a hundred other sounds form a compound discordant enough to a Londoner's ears, and remarkably disagreeable to those of country gentlemen, who are sleeping for the first time at an inn near it.

Another hour passes away, and the day begins in good earnest. The servant of all work lights the fire and opens the street-door to take in the milk. The mail goes to the coach-office in due course, and the passengers, who are going out by the early coach, stare with astonishment at the passengers, who are coming in by the early coach, who look blue and dismal, and are evidently under the influence of that odd feeling produced by travelling. The coach-office is all alive, and the coaches, which are just going out, are surrounded by the usual crowd of Jews, who seem to consider that it is quite impossible any man can mount a coach, without requiring at least six penny-worth of oranges, a penknife, a pocket-book, a last year's almanac, a pencil-case, a piece of sponge and a small series of caricatures.

Half an hour more, and the sun darts his bright rays cheerfully down the still half empty streets, and shines with sufficient force to rouse the dismal laziness of the apprentice, who pauses every other minute from his task of sweeping out the shop and watering the pavement in front of it, to tell another apprentice how hot it will be to-day. Cabs, with trunks and hand-boxes between the driver's legs and outside the apron, rattle briskly up and down the streets, on their way to the coach-offices or steam-packet wharfs; and the cab-drivers and hackney-coachmen polish up the ornamental part of their vehicles. The shops are now completely opened, and apprentices and shopmen are busily engaged in cleaning and decking the windows for the day. The bakers' shops in town are filled with servants and children, waiting for the drawing of the first batch of rolls.

Seven o'clock, and a new set of people fill the streets. The goods in the shop-window are invitingly arranged; the

carts have disappeared from Covent Garden; the waggoners have returned, and the costermongers repaired to their ordinary "beats" in the suburbs; clerks are at their offices, and gigs, cabs, omnibuses and saddle-horses are conveying their masters to the same destination. The streets are thronged with a vast concourse of people, gay and shabby, rich and poor, idle and industrious, and we come to the heat, bustle and activity of noon. — *Charles Dickens.*

7. A Sunday in London.

On this sacred day, the gigantic monster is charmed into repose. The intolerable din and struggle of the week are at an end. The shops are shut. The fires of forges and manufactories are extinguished; and the sun, no longer obscured by murky clouds of smoke, pours down a sober yellow radiance into the quiet streets.

The few pedestrians we meet, instead of hurrying forward with anxious countenances, move leisurely along; their brows are smoothed from the wrinkles of business and care; they have put on their Sunday looks and Sunday manners with their Sunday clothes and are cleansed in mind as well as in person.

And now the melodious clangour of bells from church towers summons their several flocks to the fold. Forth issues from his mansion the family of the decent tradesman, the small children in advance; then the citizen and his comely spouse, followed by the grown-up daughters, with small Prayer-books laid in the folds of their pocket-handkerchiefs.

The housemaid looks after them from the window, admiring the finery of the family, and receiving perhaps a nod and smile from her young mistresses, at whose toilet she has assisted. Now rumbles along the carriage of some magnate of the city, peradventure an alderman or a sheriff, and now the patter of many feet announces a procession of charity scholars, in uniforms of antique cut, and each with a Prayer-book under his arm.

The ringing of bells is at an end; the rumbling of the carriage has ceased; the pattering of feet is heard no more. For a time everything is hushed.

The morning service is at an end. The streets are again alive with the congregations returning to their homes, but soon again relapse into silence. Now comes on the Sunday dinner, which, to the city tradesman, is a meal of some

importance. There is more leisure for social enjoyment at the board.

Members of the family can now gather together who are separated by the laborious occupations of the week. A schoolboy may be permitted on that day to come to the paternal home; an old friend of the family takes his accustomed Sunday seat at the board, tells over his well-known stories, and rejoices young and old with his well-known jokes.

On Sunday afternoon, the great city pours forth its legions to breathe the fresh air and enjoy the sunshine of the parks and rural environs. Satirists may say what they please about the rural enjoyments of a London citizen on Sunday, but there is something delightful in beholding the poor prisoner of the crowded and dusty city enabled thus to come forth once a week and throw himself upon the green bosom of nature.

He is like a child restored to the mother's breast; and they who first spread out these noble parks and magnificent pleasure-grounds which surround this huge metropolis, have done at least as much for its health and morality as if they had expended the amount of cost in hospitals, prisons, and penitentiaries. — *W. Irving.*

8. Richard Whittington.

In the reign of Edward the Third (1327—1377), there lived at a great distance from London, a little boy, named Dick[1] Whittington, whose father and mother died while he was very young. Poor Dick was not old enough to work, and as the people of the village were very poor, they could give him but little food.

Dick was a sharp boy, and fond of listening to the farmers, when they were talking, or to the news which the village barber told his customers. In this manner, he heard of the great city of London; and he imagined that the people who lived there were all fine gentlemen and ladies; that there was singing and music in it all day long; and that the streets were paved with gold.

One day, a waggoner with a large waggon and eight horses, all with bells at their heads, drove through the village. The thought immediately struck Dick, that it must be going to the fine town of London; and he asked the waggoner to let him walk with him by the side of the waggon. The man hearing from Dick that his parents were dead, and seeing, by his ragged condition, that he could not be worse

[1] Richard.

off, told him he might go if he liked; so they set off together for the great city of London.

When Dick aproached the city, so eager was he to see the streets paved with gold, as he thought, that thanking the kind waggoner, he ran off as fast as his legs could carry him, in hope of picking up some little pieces of the pavement; for he had seen, in his native village, how much money even a small gold coin brought in exchange. But whichever way he turned, he found nothing but stones and dirt, instead of gold.

Little Dick remained all night in the streets; and next morning, finding himself very hungry, he sat down at the door of one Mr. Fitzwarren, a rich merchant. Here he was soon seen by the cook-maid, a very ill-tempered creature, who called out, "What business have you there, you lazy rogue? If you do not go away, I will souse you with some hot dish-water."

Mr. Fitzwarren, who was returning home at the time, ordered that the poor lad should be taken into the house, and have a good dinner immediately, and that he should be kept to do what kitchen and scullery work he could.

Dick might have lived happily in this worthy family, but the cross cook took every opportunity of scolding and ill-using him. Besides this, he was put to sleep in a garret, which was sadly infested with rats and mice, so that he could hardly get any sleep.

One day, Dick saw a little girl with a cat under her arm, and offered to give her a penny for it, to which she readily agreed. The cat he put in the garret, and always took a part of his dinner to her; and she soon cleared the place of the rats and mice.

Although the cook was so cross to Dick, the footman was kind to him, and taught him to read; and he made such progress, that Mr. Fitzwarren rewarded him with a new suit of clothes, to go to church in, or to walk behind Miss Alice, when she went out to pay a visit.

About this time, the merchant, who had a ship ready to sail, richly laden, called all his servants, and asked them what they were willing to venture. All brought something, but poor Dick, who declared he had nothing but a cat, which he bought for a penny.

"Fetch thy cat, boy," said Mr. Fitzwarren, "and let her go." Whittington brought poor puss, and with tears in his eyes, handed her to the captain. Miss Alice judging the cause of his tears, gave him a penny to buy another cat with.

The kindness shown to Whittington by Miss Alice and her father, made the ill-tempered cook so jealous, that she began to use him more cruelly than ever, and scornfully asked him if he thought his cat would sell for as much money as would buy a stick to beat him with.

Unable any longer to bear this ill-treatment, Whittington determined to run away from his place; so he packed up the few things which belonged to him, and set out early in the morning. He travelled as far as Highgate,[1] and sat down on a stone, which to this day is called Whittington's stone, and began to consider what he should do.

While he sat thinking, Bow-bells[2] began to ring and he fancied the sounds thus addressed him:

"Turn again, Whittington,
Lord Mayor of London."

"Lord Mayor of London!" exclaimed he; "why, I would bear with anything to become Lord Mayor of London." So back went Whittington to the city, and arrived at the house, before Cicely, the cook, came downstairs.

The ship with the cat on board, touched at the coast of Barbary; and the captain and chief mate were invited to dine at the king's palace. Here they were surprised to see that the dinner, as soon as it was placed on the table, was devoured by numerous large rats. The captain directly returned to his vessel, and fetched from thence Whittington's cat, who sprang upon the table, when the dinner was again served up, and in a few moments killed the greater part of the rats.

The King of Barbary, delighted to see what a valuable creature puss was, gave the captain a large quantity of gold for her, and purchased all his cargo, besides.

The captain returning to England, with his ship, informed Mr. Fitzwarren of his adventure. The worthy merchant gladly called Whittington into the counting-house, and told him he was now a wealthy man, offering him his assistance as to the best way of using his large fortune.

Three years after, Whittington was married to the amiable Miss Alice, and lived happily with her for many years. He was Sheriff[3] of London in the year 1393, and

[1] Hampstead and Highgate are two hills lying to the north of London and commanding extensive views of the metropolis and the surrounding country.

[2] Cf. p. 6.

[3] The chief civil officer of a county, specially intrusted with the execution of the laws and the preservation of the peace. (Worcester).

Lord Mayor in the years 1397, 1406 and 1419; and in the last year of his mayoralty, he entertained King Henry the Fifth upon which occasion, the king knighted him, by the style and title of Sir Richard Whittington.

Sir Richard Whittington was very good to the poor, and left lands to the care of the Mercers' Company, who have built some alms-houses at Highgate, near Whittington's Stone, which are called Whittington's alms-houses.

9. Sonnet.

Composed on Westminster Bridge, September 3rd 1803.

Earth has not anything to show more fair:
Dull would he be of soul who could pass by
A sight so touching in its majesty:
This city now doth like a garment wear
The beauty of the morning; silent, bare,
Ships, towers, domes, theatres, and temples lie
Open unto the fields and to the sky,
All bright and glittering in the smokeless air.
Never did sun more beautifully steep,
In his first splendour, valley, rock or hill;
Ne'er saw I, never felt, a calm so deep!
The river glideth at his own sweet will:
Dear God! the very houses seem asleep;
And all that mighty heart is lying still!

William Wordsworth.

10. Evening by the Thames.

How richly glows the water's breast
 Before us, tinged with evening hues,
While, facing thus the crimson west,
 The boat her silent course pursues!
And see how dark the backward stream!
 A little moment past so smiling!
And still, perchance, with faithless gleam,
 Some other loiterer beguiling.

Such views the youthful bard allure;
 But, heedless of the following gloom,
He deems their colours shall endure
 Till peace go with him to the tomb.
And let him nurse his fond deceit,
 And what, if he must die in sorrow!
Who would not cherish dreams so sweet,
 Though grief and pain may come to-morrow?

Glide gently thus, for ever glide,
 O Thames! that other bards may see
As lovely visions by thy side
 As now, fair river! come to me.
O glide, fair stream! for ever so,
 Thy quiet soul on all bestowing,
Till all our minds for ever flow,
 As thy deep waters now are flowing.

Vain thought! — Yet be as now thou art,
 That in thy waters may be seen
The image of a poet's heart,
 How bright, how solemn, how serene!
Such as did once the poet bless,
 Who, murmuring here a later ditty, [1]
Could find no refuge from distress
 But in the milder grief of pity.

William Wordsworth.

11. English Dinners.

In an aristocratic country, like England, not the Trial by Jury, but the dinner, is the capital institution. It is the mode of doing honour to a stranger, to invite him to eat — and has been for many hundred years "And they think," says the Venetian traveller of 1500, "no greater honour can be conferred or received, than to invite others to eat with them, or to be invited themselves; and they would sooner give five or six ducats to provide an entertainment for a person, than a groat to assist him in any distress." It is reserved to the end of the day, the family hour being generally six, in London, and, if any company is expected, one or even two hours later. Every one dresses for dinner, in his own house or in another man's. The company sit about one or two hours, before the ladies leave the table. The gentlemen remain over their wine some time longer, and rejoin the ladies in the drawing-room, and take coffee. The dress-dinner generates a talent of table-talk which reaches great perfection: the stories are so good, that one is sure they must have been often told before, to have got such happy turns. Hither come all manner of clever projects, bits of popular science, of practical invention, of miscellaneous rumour; political, literary, and personal news: railroads, horses, diamonds, agriculture, horticulture, and wine. — *Emerson.*

[1] Collins's (1720—1756) Ode on the Death of Thomson, the last written of the poems which were published during his lifetime.

12. Saxon and Norman Names of Provisions.

The names of provisions throw some light upon the mode of living among the higher and lower classes, in England. Bread, with common productions of the garden, such as peas, beans, and some other articles which might be produced in the cottage-garden retain their Saxon names, and evidently formed the chief food of the Saxon portion of the population. Of meat, though the word is Saxon, they ate probably little; for it is one of the most curious circumstances connected with the English language, that while the living animals are called by Anglo-Saxon names, as oxen, calves, sheep, pigs, deer, the flesh of those animals, when prepared for the table, is called by names which are all Anglo-Norman — beef, veal, mutton, pork, venison. The butcher who killed them is himself known by an Anglo-Norman name. Even fowls when killed receive the Norman name of poultry. This can only be explained by the circumstances that the Saxon population in general was only acquainted with the living animals, while their flesh was carried to the castle and table of the Norman barons, who gave them names taken from their own language. Fresh meat, salted, was hoarded up in immense quantities in the Norman castles, and was distributed lavishly to the household and idle followers of the feudal possessors. Almost the only meat obtained by the peasantry, unless, if we believe old popular songs, by stealth, was bacon, and that also is still called by an Anglo-Norman name. — *Gentleman's Magazine.*

13. White Lies.

One day we met at the captain's table, where we found, as usual, a great display of plate, but very little else, except the ship's allowance. We certainly had now been cruising some time, and there was some excuse for it; but still, few captains would have been so unprovided. "I am afraid, gentlemen, you will not have a very grand dinner," observed the captain, as the steward removed the plated covers off the dishes. "Mr. O'Brien, pea-soup? I recollect faring harder than this through one cruise. We were thirteen weeks up to our knees in water, and living the whole time upon raw pork, not being able to light a fire during the cruise."

"Pray, Captain Kearney, may I ask where this happened?"

"To be sure. It was off Bermudas: we cruised for seven weeks before we could find the Islands, and began verily to think, that the Bermudas were themselves on a cruise."

"I presume, Sir, you were not sorry to have a fire to cook your provisions when you came to an anchor?" said O'Brien.

"I beg your pardon," replied Captain Kearney; "we had become so accustomed to raw provisions and wet feet, that we could not eat our meals cooked, or help dipping our legs over the side, for a long while afterwards. I saw one of the boat-keepers astern catch a large barracouta, and eat it alive — indeed, if I had not given the strictest orders, and flogged half-a-dozen of them, I doubt whether they would not have eaten their victuals raw to this day. The force of habit is tremendous."

"It is, indeed," observed Mr. Phillott, dryly, and winking to us — referring to the captain's incredible stories.

"I once saw a dead body galvanized," continued he: "it was the body of a man who had taken a great deal of snuff during his lifetime, and, as soon as the battery was applied to his spine, the body very gently raised its arm, and put its fingers to its nose, as if it was taking a pinch."

"You saw that yourself, Mr. Phillott?" observed the captain, looking the first lieutenant earnestly in the face.

"Yes, Sir," replied Mr. Phillott coolly.

"Have you told that story often?"

"Very often, Sir."

"Because I know that some people, by constantly telling a story, at last believe it to be true; not that I refer to you, Mr. Phillott, but still, I should recommend you not to tell that story where you are not well known, or people may doubt your credibility."

"I make it a rule to believe every thing myself," observed Mr. Phillot, "out of politeness; and I expect the same courtesy from others."

"Talking of courtesy," replied the captain, "you must meet a friend of mine, who has been a courtier all his life; he cannot help bowing. I have seen him bow to his horse, and thank him after he had dismounted — beg pardon of a puppy for treading on his tail; and one day, when he fell over a scraper, he took his hat off, and made it a thousand apologies for his inattention"

"Force of habit again," said O'Brien.

"Exactly so. Mr. Simple, will you take a slice of this pork; and perhaps you'll do me the honour to take a glass of wine? Lord Privilege would not much admire our dinner to-day, would he, Mr. Simple?"

"As a variety he might, Sir, but not for a continuance."

"Very truly said", replied the captain. "Variety is charming. The negroes here get so tired of salt fish, that they eat dirt by way of a relish. — Mr. O'Brien, how remarkably well you played that sonata of Pleydel's this morning."

"I am happy that I did not annoy you, Captain Kearney, at all events," replied O'Brien.

"On the contrary, I am very partial to good music. My mother was a great performer. I recollect once, she was performing a piece on the piano, in which she had to imitate a thunderstorm. So admirably did she hit it off, that when we went to tea, all the cream was turned sour, as well as three casks of beer in the cellar."

At this assertion Mr. Phillott could contain himself no longer; he burst out into a loud laugh, and having a glass of wine to his lips, spattered it all over the table, and over me who unfortunately was opposite to him.

"I really beg pardon, Captain Kearney, but the idea of such an expensive talent was too amusing. Will you permit me to ask you a question? As there could not have been thunder without lightning, were any people killed at the same time by the electric fluid of the piano?"

"No, Sir," replied Captain Kearney, very angrily, "but her performance electrified us, which was something like it. Perhaps, Mr. Phillott, as you lost your last glass of wine, you will allow me to take another with you?"

"With great pleasure," replied the first lieutenant,[1] who perceived that he had gone far enough.

"Well, gentlemen," said the captain, "we shall soon be in the land of plenty. I shall cruise a fortnight more, and then join the admiral. I am happy to say that I shall feel it my duty to make honourable mention of all the party present. Steward, coffee!"

The first lieutenant, O'Brien, and I, bowed to this flattering avowal on the part of the captain.

After coffee we left the cabin. "The captain is in a most marvellous humour to-day," observed O'Brien; "this morning he told me one or two yarns that quite staggered my politeness and my respect for him on the quarter-deck. What a pity it is that a man should have gained such a bad habit!"

"He's quite incurable, I'm afraid," replied I, "but, certainly, his fibs do no harm; they are what they call white

[1] Pron. leftènant.

lies: I do not think he would really tell a lie, that is, a lie which would be considered to disgrace a gentleman."

"Peter," replied O'Brien, "all lies disgrace a gentleman, white or black; although I grant there is a difference. To say the least of it, it is a dangerous habit, for white lies are but the gentlemen ushers to black ones. I know but of one point on which a lie is excusable, and that is, when you wish to deceive the enemy. Then your duty to your country warrants your lying till you're black in the face; and, for the very reason that it goes against your grain, it becomes, as it were, a sort of virtue."

Captain Marryat (from Peter Simple.)

14. The Luck of Edenhall.

Of Edenhall, the youthful Lord
Bids sound the festal trumpet's call!
He rises at the banquet board,
And cries, 'mid the drunken revellers all,
"Now bring me the Luck of Edenhall!"

The butler hears the words with pain,
The house's oldest seneschal,
Takes slow from its silken cloth again
The drinking glass of crystal tall;
They call it The Luck of Edenhall.

Then said the Lord: "This glass to praise,
Fill with red wine from Portugal!"
The grey-beard with trembling hand obeys;
A purple light shines over all,
It beams from the Luck of Edenhall.

Then speaks the Lord, and waves it light,
"This glass of flashing crystal tall
Gave to my Sires the Fountain-Sprite;
She wrote in it: If this glass doth fall,
Farewell then, O Luck of Edenhall!

"'T was right a goblet the Fate should be
Of the joyous race of Edenhall!
Deep draughts drink we right willingly;
And willingly ring, with merry call,
Kling! klang! to the Luck of Edenhall!"

First rings it deep, and full, and mild,
Like to the song of a nightingale;

Then like the roar of a torrent wild;
Then mutters at last like the thunder's fall,
The glorious Luck of Edenhall.

"For its keeper takes a race of might,
The fragile goblet of crystal tall;
It has lasted longer than is right;
Kling! klang! — with a harder blow than all
Will I try the Luck of Edenhall!"

As the goblet ringing flies apart,
Suddenly cracks the vaulted hall;
And through the rift, the wild flames start;
The guests in dust are scattered all,
With the breaking Luck of Edenhall!

In storms the foe, with fire and sword;
He in the night had scaled the wall,
Slain by the sword lies the youthful Lord,
But holds in his hand the crystal tall,
The shattered Luck of Edenhall.

On the morrow the butler gropes alone,
The gray-beard in the desert hall,
He seeks his Lord's burnt skeleton,
He seeks in the dismal ruin's fall
The shards of the Luck of Edenhall.

"The stone wall," saith he, "doth fall aside,
Down must the stately columns fall;
Glass is this earth's Luck and Pride;
In atoms shall fall this earthly ball
One day like the Luck of Edenhall!"

Uhland, translated by Henry W. Longfellow.

15. At the Menagerie.

It was a very curious sight, and better worth seeing than any thing in the fair. I never had an idea that there were so many strange animals in existence. They were all secured in iron cages, and a large chandelier, with twenty lights, hung in the centre of the booth, and lighted them up, while the keeper went round and stirred them up with his long pole. At the same time he gave us their histories, which were very interesting. I recollect a few of them. There was the Tapir, the great pig with the long nose, a variety of the

Hiptostamass,[1] which, the keeper said, was an amphibilious[2] animal, as couldn't live on land, and dies in the water — however, it seemed to live very well in a cage. Then there was the Kangaroo with its young ones peeping out of it — a most astonishing animal. The keeper said that it brought forth two young ones at a birth, and then took them into his stomach again, until they arrived at years of discretion. Then there was the Pelican of the wilderness, with a large bag under his throat, which the man put on his head as a night cap. The bird feeds its young with its own blood, when fish are scarce. And then there was the laughing Hyena, who cries in the wood like a human being in distress, and devours those who come to his assistance — a sad instance of the depravity of human nature, as the keeper observed. There was a beautiful creature, the Royal Bengal Tiger, only three years old, that growed[3] ten inches every year, and never arrived at its full growth. The one we saw, measured, as the keeper told us, sixteen feet from the snout to the tail, and seventeen from the tail to the snout; but there must have been some mistake there. There was a young Elephant, and three Lions, and several other animals, which I forget now; so I shall go on to describe the tragical scene which occurred.

The keeper bad poked up all the animals and had commenced feeding them. The great lion was growling and snarling over the shinbone of an ox, cracking it like a nut, when, by some mismanagement, one end of the pole, upon which the chandelier was suspended, fell down, striking the door of the cage in which the lioness was at supper, and bursting it open. It was all done in a second; the chandelier fell, the cage opened, and the lioness sprang out. I saw her body in the air, and then all was dark as pitch. What a change! Not a moment before all of us gazing with delight and curiosity, and then to be left in darkness, horror and dismay! There was such screaming, and shrieking, and crying, and fighting, and pushing, and fainting — nobody knew where to go, or how to find their way out. The people crowded first on one side, and then on the other, as their fears instigated them. I was very soon jammed up with my back against the bars of one of the cages, and feeling some beast lay hold of my behind, made a desperate effort, and succeeded in climbing up to the cage above, not, however,

[1] the Hippopotamus. [2] amphibious. [3] a common regular form for grew.

without losing a part of my coat, which the laughing hyena would not let go.

I hardly knew where I was when I climbed up; but I knew the birds were mostly stationed above. I turned round, with my back to the bars of the cage. But I had not been there a minute, before I was attacked by something which stabbed me about a dozen times. I, therefore, contrived by degrees to shift my position, until I was opposite to another cage. I was wondering what danger I should next encounter, when to my joy I discovered that I had gained the open door from which the lioness had escaped. I crawled in and pulled the door after me, thinking myself very fortunate, and there I sat very quietly during the remainder of the noise and confusion.

I had not been there but a few minutes, when the beef-eaters,[1] as they were called, who played the music outside, came in with torches and loaded muskets. The sight which presented itself was truly shocking: twenty or thirty men, women, and children, lay on the ground, and I thought at first the lioness had killed them all; but they were only in fits, or had been trampled down by the crowd; no one was seriously hurt. As for the lioness, she was not to be found, and as soon as it was ascertained that she had escaped, there was as much terror and scampering away outside, as there had been in the menagerie. It appeared afterwards the animal had been as much frightened as we had been, and had sēcreted herself under one of the waggons. It was some time before she could be found. At last the beefeaters borrowed a net or two from the carts which had brought calves to the fair, and threw them over her. When she was fairly entangled, they dragged her by the tail into the menagerie.

All this while I had remained in the cage, but when I perceived that its lawful owner had come back to retake possession, I thought it was time to go out; so I called to my companions, who were assisting the beefeaters. They had not discovered me, and laughed very much when they saw where I was. One of them shut the bolt of the door, so that I could not jump out, and then stirred me with a long pole. At last I contrived to unbolt it again and got out, when they laughed still more at my coat being torn. It was not exactly a laughing matter to me, although I had to congratulate myself upon a very lucky escape; and so did my friends think,

[1] A corruption of buffetiers, men formerly attending the royal buffet. Cp. p. 60.

when I related my adventures. I borrowed a dark silk handkerchief, which I tied round my waist, so that my misfortune might not attract any notice; and then we quitted the menagerie. Captain Marryat.

16. Rotten Row.

Five o'clock, and Rotten Row alive with equestrians! Far away, between majestic elms, now gently dipping into the hollow, now, slightly ascending the uneven ground, made as soft and as full as horse-traps can make it, runs in the very eye of the setting sun, this superb horse-promenade. And here comes a goodly company, seven abreast, sweeping along with slackened rein; the young athletes on the Elgin marbles yonder, upon the frieze of the screen, do not seem more a portion of their horses than this gay young fellows, whispering courtesies to the ladies, so bright-eyed and supple of waist, who gently govern with delicate small hands their fiery-eyed steeds Single riders trot steadily past, as though they were doing it for a wager. Dandies drawl along, superbly indifferent to everything about them, with riding-sticks "based on hip." And when I reach Albert Gate,[1] all Belgravia[2] seems pouring out through the narrow streets, on prancing, dancing, arch-necked steeds. Where all the horses come from is the wonder to me. As far as the eye can see, out far into Kensington,[3] where the perspective of the road is lost in feathery birch-trees, I see nothing but prancing, dancing horses, tossing their heads, caracolling, humbly obeying the directions of delicate wrists, or chafing at the curb of powerful bridle-hands. Nor do they end here; over the bridge and round the drive, the contingents from Tyburnia[4] pour along in troops; and now, as I come to the corner of Kensington Gardens, there is a perfect congestion of equestrians, listening to the bands of the Life Guards[5] playing a

[1] The next entrance to Hyde Park from the south after Hyde Park Corner.

[2] The southern portion of the West End and one of the most fashionable quarters of the Town, so called from the Belgrave Square lying in the middle of it.

[3] A quarter of the West End in the south-east of Kensington Gardens.

[4] A quarter of London situated to the north of Hyde Park, so called from the Tyburn, a small brook flowing into the Thames.

[5] A body of soldiers charged with protecting the person of the sovereign: a body-guard.

waltz. There they are, ranged round the great trees, English men and maidens, and English horses, all thoroughbred — as noble a group as the wide world can show, whilst over all, the thick fan-like green leaves of the chestnut-trees cast a pleasant shade.

Meanwhile the drive is gorged with carriages, moving along at a foot-pace. Let me constitute myself (for the nonce) a young man about town, and comfortably resting my arms over the railings, take a good stare at the passing beauty. I need not feel bashful. As far as I can see, for hundreds of feet on each side of me, there is nothing but young men leaning over the railing, tapping their teeth with their dandy little sticks, and making the most powerful use of their eyes. Here I watch, moving before me, the great portrait-gallery of living British beauties. Every instant a fresh profile passes in review, framed and glazed by the carriage window. Onward rolls the tide of vehicles — of dashing cabs with pendant tigers — of chariots with highly groomed horses — of open phætons, the reins of faultless white, guided by lady whips — of family coaches, ancient and respectable. Now and then some countryman and his "missus",[1] in a home-made chaise-cart, seem to have got accidentally entangled among the gay throng, and move along sheepishly enough. On they all go, where Kensington Gardens leans, like a sister, beside her bolder brother, Hyde Park; and here all alight, and pour in a bright flood of moving colour upon the emerald turf.

Ch. Dickens.

17. The Nightingale and the Glow-Worm.

A Nightingale, that all day long
Had cheer'd the village with his song,
Nor yet at eve his note suspended,
Nor yet when even-tide was ended,
Began to feel, — as well he might, —
The keen demands of appetite;
When, looking eagerly around,
He spied, far off, upon the ground,
A something shining in the dark,
And knew the glow-worm by his spark:
So, stooping down from hawthorn top,
He thought to put him in his crop.

[1] for Mrs. pron. Missis.

The worm, aware of his intent,
Harangued him thus, right eloquent:
"Did you admire my lamp," quoth he,
"As much as I your minstrelsy,
You would abhor to do me wrong,
As much as I to spoil your song;
For 'twas the self-same power divine,
Taught you to sing, and me to shine;
That you with music, I with light,
Might beautify and cheer the night."

The songster heard his short oration,
And, warbling out his approbation,
Released him, as my story tells,
And found a supper somewhere else. W. Cowper.

18. The Battle of Blenheim.[1]

It was a summer evening,
 Old Kaspar's work was done,
And he, before his cottage door,
 Was sitting in the sun;
And by him sported on the green,
His little grandchild, Wilhelmine.

She saw her brother Peterkin
 Roll something large and round,
That he beside the rivulet
 In playing there had found;
She ran to ask what he had found,
That was so large, and smooth, and round.

Old Kaspar took it from the boy,
 Who stood expectant by;
And then the old man shook his head,
 And with a natural sigh,
"'Tis some poor fellow's skull," said he,
"Who fell in the great victory.

"I find them in my garden, for
 There's many hereabout;
And often when I go to plough
 The ploughshare turns them out;
For many thousand men," said he,
"Were slain in that great victory."

[1] The battle of Höchstädt (1704), so called by the English after the village of Blindheim on the Danube in Bavaria.

"Now tell us what 'twas all about,"
 Young Peterkin, he cries,
And little Wilhelmine looks up
 With wonder-waiting eyes;
"Now tell us all about the war,
And what they kill'd each other for?"

"It was the English," Kaspar cried,
 "Who put the French to rout:
But what they kill'd each other for,
 I could not well make out.
But every body said," quoth he,
"That 'twas a famous victory!

"My father lived at Blenheim then,
 Yon little stream hard by;
They burn'd his dwelling to the ground,
 And he was forced to fly:
So with his wife and child he fled,
Nor had he where to rest his head!

"With fire and sword the country round
 Was wasted far and wide;
And many a childing mother then
 And new-born baby died! —
But things like that, you know, must be
At every famous victory.

"They say, it was a shocking sight
 After the field was won;
For many thousand bodies here
 Lay rotting in the sun! —
But things like that, you know, must be
After a famous victory.

"Great praise the Duke of Marlborough won,
 And our good prince, Eugene." —
"Why, 'twas a very wicked thing!"
 Said little Wilhelmine. —
"Nay — Nay — my little girl," quoth he,
"It was a famous victory!

"And every body praised the Duke,
 Who this great fight did win:" —
"But what good came of it at last?"
 Quoth little Peterkin. —
"Why, that I cannot tell," said he,
"But 'twas a famous victory."

Southey.

19. Westminster Abbey.

On one of those sober and rather melancholy days, in the latter part of autumn, when the shadows of morning and evening almost mingle together, and throw a gloom over the decline of the year, I passed several hours in rambling about Westminster Abbey. There was something congenial to the season in the mournful magnificence of the old pile; and as I passed its threshold, it seemed like stepping back into the regions of antiquity, and losing myself among the shades of former ages.

From the cloisters I pursued my walk to an arched door opening to the interior of the abbey. On entering here, the magnitude of the building breaks fully upon the mind, contrasted with the vaults of the cloisters. The eye gazes with wonder at clustered columns of gigantic dimensions, with arches springing from them to such an amazing height; and man wandering about their bases, shrunk into insignificance in comparison with his own handiwork. The spaciousness and gloom of this vast edifice produce a profound and mysterious awe. We step cautiously and softly about, as if fearful of disturbing the hallowed silence of the tomb; while every footfall whispers along the walls, and chatters among the sepulchres, making us more sensible of the quiet we have interrupted.

It seems as if the awful nature of the place presses down upon the soul, and hushes the beholder into noiseless reverence. We feel that we are surrounded by the congregated bones of the great men of past times, who have filled history with their deeds, and the earth with their renown.

And yet it almost provokes a smile at the vanity of human ambition, to see how they are crowded together and justled in the dust; what parsimony is observed in doling out a scanty nook, a gloomy corner, a little portion of earth, to those, whom, when alive, kingdoms could not satisfy; and how many shapes, and forms, and artifices, are devised to catch the casual notice of the passenger, and save from forgetfulness, for a few short years, a name which once aspired to occupy ages of the world's thought and admiration.

I passed some time in Poet's Corner, which occupies an end of one of the transepts or cross aisles of the abbey. The monuments are generally simple; for the lives of literary men afford no striking themes for the sculptor. Shakespeare and Addison have statues erected to their memories; but the greater part have busts, medallions, and sometimes mere in-

scriptions. Notwithstanding the simplicity of these memorials, I have always observed that the visitors to the abbey remain longest about them. A kinder and fonder feeling takes place of that cold curiosity or vague admiration with which they gaze on the splendid monuments of the great and the heroic. They linger about there as about the tombs of friends and companions; for indeed there is something of companionship between the author and the reader. Other men are known to posterity only through the medium of history, which is continually growing faint and obscure: but the intercourse between the author and his fellow-men is ever new, active, and immediate. He has lived for them more than for himself; he has sacrificed surrounding enjoyments and shut himself up from the delights of social life, that he might the more intimately commune with distant minds and distant ages. Well may the world cherish his renown; for it has been purchased, not by deeds of violence and blood, but by the diligent dispensation of pleasure. Well may posterity be grateful to his memory; for he has left it an inheritance not of empty names and sounding actions, but whole treasures of wisdom, bright gems of thought, and golden veins of language.

From Poet's Corner I continued my stroll towards that part of the abbey which contains the sepulchres of the kings. I wandered among what once were chapels, but which are now occupied by the tombs and monuments of the great. At every turn I met with some illustrious name, or the cognisance of some powerful house renowned in history. As the eye darts into these dusky chambers of death, it catches glimpses of quaint effigies, some kneeling in niches, as if in devotion; others stretched upon the tombs, with hands piously pressed together: warriors in armour as if reposing after battle; prelates with crosiers and mitres; and nobles in robes and coronets, lying as it were in state. In glancing over this scene, so strangely populous, yet where every form is so still and silent, it seems almost as if we were treading a mansion of that fabled city, where every being had been suddenly transmuted into stone.

I paused to contemplate a tomb on which lay the effigy of a knight in complete armour. A large buckler was on one arm; the hands were pressed together in supplication upon the breast; the face was almost covered by the morion: the legs were crossed, in token of the warrior's having been engaged in the holy war. It was the tomb of a crusader; of one of those military enthusiasts who so strangely mingled religion and romance, and whose exploits form the connecting

link between fact and fiction; between the history and the fairy tale. There is something extremely picturesque in the tombs of these adventurers, decorated as they are with rude armorial bearings and Gothic sculpture. They compōrt with the antiquated chapels in which they are generally found; and in considering them, the imagination is apt to kindle with the legendary associations, the romantic fictions, the chivalrous pomp and pāgeantry, which poetry has spread over the wars for the sepulchre of Christ. They are the relics of times utterly gone by; of beings passed from recollection; of customs and manners with which ours have no affinity. They are like objects from some strange and distant land, of which we have no certain knowledge, and about which all our conceptions are vāgue and vísionary. There is something extremely solemn and awful in those effigies on Gothic tombs, extended as if in the sleep of death, or in the supplication of the dying hour. They have an effect infinitely more impressive on my feelings than the fanciful attitudes, the overwrought conceits, and allegorical groups, which abound on modern monuments. I have been struck, also, with the superiority of many of the old sepulchral inscriptions. There was a noble way, in former times, of saying things simply, and yet saying them proudly; and I do not know an epitaph that breathes a loftier consciousness of family worth and honourable lineage, than one which affirms of a noble house, that "all the brothers were brave, and all the sisters virtuous."

While wandering about these gloomy vaults and silent aisles, studying the records of the dead, the sound of busy existence from without occasionally reaches the ear: the rumbling of the passing equipage; the murmur of the multitude: or perhaps the light laugh of pleasure. The cóntrast is striking with the death-like repose around: and it has a strange effect upon the feelings, thus to hear the surges of active life hurrying along and beating against the very walls of the sepulchre.

W. Irving. (Abridged from the Sketch-Book.)

20. Reflections in Westminster Abbey.

When I look upon the tombs of the great, every emotion of envy dies in me; when I read the epitaphs of the beautiful, every inordinate desire goes out; when I meet with the grief of parents upon a tombstone, my heart melts with compassion; when I see the tomb of the parents themselves, I consider the vanity of grieving for those whom we must quickly follow. When I see kings lying by those who deposed them, when

I consider rival wits placed side by side or the holy men that divided the world with their cóntests and disputes, I reflect with sorrow and astonishment on the little competitions, factions, and debates of mankind. When I read the several dates of the tombs, of some that died yesterday, and some six hundred years ago, I consider that great day when we shall all of us be contémporaries, and make our appearance together.

J. Addison.

21. This world is all a fleeting show.

This world is all a fleeting show,
 For man's illusion given;
The smiles of Joy, the tears of Woe,
Deceitful shine, deceitful flow —
 There's nothing true but Heaven!

And false the light on Glory's plume,
 As fading hues of even;
And Love and Hope, and Beauty's bloom,
Are blossoms gather'd for the tomb —
 There's nothing bright but Heaven!

Poor wanderers of a stormy day,
 From wave to wave we're driven,
And Fancy's flash, and Reason's ray,
Serve but to light the troubled way —
 There's nothing calm but Heaven!

Thomas Moore.

22. The common Lot.

Once in the flight of ages past,
 There lived a man: — and who was he?
Mortal! howe'er thy lot be cast,
 That man resembled thee.

Unknown the region of his birth,
 The land in which he died unknown:
His name has perish'd from the earth,
 This truth survives alone:

That joy and grief, and hope and fear,
 Alternate triumph'd in his breast:
His bliss and woe, — a smile, a tear!
 Oblivion hides the rest.

The bounding pulse, the languid limb,
 The changing spirits' rise and fall:
We know that these were felt by him,
 For these are felt by all.

He suffer'd, — but his pangs are o'er;
 Enjoy'd, — but his delights are fled;
Had friends, — his friends are now no more;
 And foes, — his foes are dead.

He loved, — but whom he loved, the grave
 Hath lost in its unconscious womb,
Oh she was fair! but nought could save
 Her beauty from the tomb.

He saw whatever thou hast seen;
 Encounter'd all that troubles thee;
He was — whatever thou hast been;
 He is — what thou shalt be.

The rolling seasons, day and night,
 Sun, moon, and stars, the earth, and main,
Erewhile his portion, life and light,
 To him exist in vain.

The clouds and sunbeams, o'er his eye
 That once their shades and glory threw,
Have left in yonder silent sky
 No vestige where they flew.

The annals of the human race,
 Their ruins, since the world began,
Of him afford no other trace
 Than this, — there lived a man!

James Montgomery.

23. The Plays of Old England.

The *Miracle Play* or *Mystery*, acted in churches and convents, either by the clergy themselves or under their immediate direction, was the earliest form of the English drama. The only knowledge of Bible history possessed by the rude and ignorant masses of the people, during the later centuries of the Middle Ages, was got from these plays. The subjects chosen were the most striking stories in the Book — such as the Creation, the Fall, the Deluge, Abraham's Trial, the Crucification; and these were dramatized with little regard

to the sacred and awful nature of the themes. Profane and terrible, indeed, were these mistaken teachings. Three platforms rose, one above another, forming a triple stage. The topmost, representing the heaven of heavens, was occupied by a group of actors, who personated the Almighty and his angels. Below stood those who played the parts of the redeemed. Upon the lowest, which imitated the world, the deeds of men were represented; and not far from the side of this lowest stage there smoked a fiery gulf, which stood for hell. All this is bad enough, but worse remains behind. The comic element must not be forgotten; for the poor yokels, who gather to be taught and amused, would yawn and sleep, if there were no broad jokes and boisterous fun to relieve the solemnities of the performance. And of all beings, whom should these priests of the church choose to be their first comedian, but the Prince of Darkness! He it was who, equipped according to the vulgar notion with hoofs, and horns, and tail, created the fun by which the congregation was kept awake and in good temper. This trifling with awful subjects shows us how low the religion both of priests and people was in tone and feeling. It took a week to act some of these Mysteries; and there are instances in which the whole circle of religious doctrine and history was traversed in this barbarous fashion. All the countries of western and southwestern Europe, as well as Britain, have some remains of the old Mystery literature.

Gradually these Miracle Plays changed into the *Moralities*, which formed the second stage in the development of the English drama. Here, instead of Scripture characters, we find abstract qualities personified and strutting in varied garments on the stage. Noah and Abraham have given place to Justice, Mercy, Gluttony, and Vice. The amount of morality, learned by the audiences who gathered round such actors, cannot have been great; but we must respect to some extent the intention of the authors who produced these plays, and meant them to do good. Students in the universities, boys at the public schools, town councillors, or brethren of the various trade guilds, acted these Moralities on certain great days and state occasions. An open scaffold knocked up in the market-place, or a platform of planks drawn upon wheels, served as a stage, on which such pieces as *Hit the Nail on the Head*, or, *The Hog hath lost his Pearl*, were acted by these dramatic amateurs. The Devil of the Miracle Plays was still retained, to aid the Vice in doing the comic business of the Moralities. The fun, most relished by such audiences as Old England

could then produce, consisted in calling bad names and hitting hard blows. Such contests of tongue and fist went on continually between the Devil and the Vice; but in many cases the former carried off his victim in triumph at the close of the performance.

Thus the two branches of our drama sprang from one and the same root. A Morality, broken in two, supplies the elements of both. Its serious portions form the groundwork of English tragedy; its lighter scenes, of English comedy.

The Greek and Latin drama, with the refined productions of Italy and Spain, had much to do with the moulding of our English plays into a perfect shape.

Ralph Royster Doyster, a dramatic picture of London life, written before 1551, by Nicholas Udall, is — so far as we know — the first English comedy. And the old British story of *Ferrex and Porrex*, dramatized by Sackville and Norton, which was acted in 1561 by the students of the Inner Temple, is considered the earliest tragedy in the language. The introduction of human characters, instead of the walking allegories that trod the Moral stage, is the grand distinctive feature which marks the rise of the true English drama.

By a sudden and enormous stride, the English drama reached the height of its perfection in the magnificent creations of Shakespeare. Not half a century after the court of Henry VIII. had been amused with the grotesque drolleries of John Heywood,[1] Elizabeth and her maids of honour assembled to laugh at the fortunes and misfortunes of old Jack Falstaff, and to tremble in the shadow of the finest tragedies the English stage has ever seen. Collier (History of English Literature).

24. The Theatre of Shakspere.

Within the theatre a miscellaneous crowd assembled. Most commonly the performance began at three o'clock and lasted from two to three hours. In the public theatres the centre of the building was open to the sky and without seats, only the stage and the gallery being roofed, and admission to the open space, or "yard", cost from one penny or twopence to sixpence, while as much as a shilling, two shillings, or half-a-crown was given to obtain a place in the best parts of the house. The private theatres were fully roofed, and during a performance the interior was lit with torches. Upon the rush-strewn stage sat young gallants, who drank and

[1] A fertile writer of 'Interludes' or farces.

smoked and joked while they waited for the appearance of the black-robed Prologue. Below, apprentices, tradesmen, sailors, and low women crushed and swayed, cracked nuts, and fought for bitten apples. If ladies appeared in the "rooms", or boxes, it was considered correct that they should conceal their faces behind masks. In due time a flourish of trumpet announced that the play was to begin, and a flag was hung out from the top of the building. Upon the trumpet's third sounding the prologue was delivered, the curtain divided and drew back, and the actors were discovered. They appeared in costumes which were often costly, but which made slight pretension to historical propriety. The female parts were played by boys or young men. Of movable scenery there was none. The stage was hung with arras, and overhead a blue canopy represented "the heavens". Sometimes when a tragedy was to be enacted the stage-hangings were black. At the back of the stage was a balcony which served for many purposes: it was inner room, upper room, window, balcony, battlements, hill-side, Mount Olympus, any place in fact which was supposed to be separated from and above the scene of the main action. Here Juliet appeared to Romeo, and probably here the play-king and play-queen in Hamlet enacted their parts. A change of scene was indicated by some suggestive piece of stage furniture — a bed to signify a bedchamber; a table with pens upon it to signify a counting-house; or, more simply, a board bearing in large letters the name of the place intended was brought upon the stage. While the play was going forward, the clown would amuse the occupants of the yard — the "groundlings", as they were called — with extempore joking, not set down by the poet. Between the acts there was dancing and singing, and at the end of the play the clown put the audience into good humour before they separated with a jig, that is, a farcical song accompanied by dancing and the music of his pipe or tabor. Sometimes a short epilogue was delivered. Finally the actors knelt and offered up a prayer for the Queen.

E. Dowden, *Shakspere.*

25. The Season and the Seasons.

The English nobles and a great many of the gentry, though they possess houses in town, have their fixed abodes in the country. But at the beginning of spring, Parliament is opened; and not only the members, but also many fashionable idlers eager for amusement, go with their families

"up to town." There "the Season" commences with "a drawing-room," that is to say, a public reception of the newcomers and their ladies by her Majesty the Queen. And then follows, lasting from Easter till the hottest day of July, the agitation of Parliamentary business and political intrigue, intermingled with endless dinners, routs, balls, concerts, and opera nights; a round of duties and pleasures, trying the nerves of the man and blanching the cheeks of the ladies.

Accordingly, after the prorogation of Parliament, the rest of the summer must be devoted to means for restoring the exhausted spirits. In August and September, the West End is completely deserted, as if struck with the plague; and even in the other parts of the capital, only the "nobodies" remain; persons kept back by business or poverty. Of the "somebodies," real or pretended, many go "to the seaside," frequenting the numerous watering-places along the coast; while shoals upon shoals are sailing up the Rhine, climbing the Alps, strolling along the Boulevards, or wandering about the Colosseum.

Autumn, which brings the land-owners back to their country seats, is spent in visits among the neighbours, in taking care of the poor and sick, in shooting partridges or pheasants, and hunting hares or foxes. At last comes winter, far from dismal. For in the country, no time is merrier than the Christmas season, when relatives and friends assemble to eat together the great Christmas dinner, often prolonging their visits for weeks. And while, within doors, you see happy faces glowing beside the hospitable hearth, you may, without doors, walk on green lawns, beneath the bluest sky, among holly and ivy, with twittering robins basking in the sunshine. The English, in fact, for a great deal both of the year and of every day in the year, are fond of moving about. But when they do rest, they do so thoroughly — amidst all that quiet and comfort peculiar to their firesides. — *Emerson.*

26. Polonius to his Son Laertes.

Haml. I, 3.

— — My blessing with you;
And these few precepts in thy memory
See thou charácter.[1] Give thy thoughts no tongue,
Nor any unproportion'd[2] thought his act.
Be thou familiar, but by no means vulgar:
The friends thou hast, and their adoption tried,
Grapple them to thy soul with hooks of steel;

[1] To inscribe, to engrave. [2] Inconsiderate.

But do not dull thy palm with entertainment
Of each new-hatch'd, unfledg'd comrade. Beware
Of entrance to a quarrel; but, being in,
Bear it, that the opposer may beware of thee.
Give every man thine ear, but few thy voice;
Take each man's censure,[1] but reserve thy judgment.
Costly thy habit as thy purse can buy,
But not express'd in fancy; rich, not gaudy.
For the apparel oft proclaims the man. — —
Neither a borrower, nor a lender be:
For loan oft loses both itself and friend,
And borrowing dulls the edge of husbandry.
This above all, — to thine ownself be true;
And it must follow, as the night the day,
Thou canst not then be false to any man.
Farewell; my blessing season[2] this in thee!

27. On Sleep.

Henry IV. Part II. III, 1.

How many thousand of my poorest subjects
Are at this hour asleep! — O sleep! O gentle sleep!
Nature's soft nurse, how have I frighted thee,
That thou no more wilt weigh my eyelids down,
And steep my senses in forgetfulness?
Why rather, sleep, liest thou in smoky cribs,
Upon uneasy pallets stretching thee,
And hush'd with buzzing night-flies to thy slumber,
Than in the perfum'd chambers of the great,
Under the canopies of costly state,
And lull'd with sounds of sweetest melody?
O thou dull god![3] why liest thou with the vile
In loathsome beds, and leav'st the kingly couch,
A watch-case, or a common 'larum bell?
Wilt thou upon the high and giddy mast
Seal up the ship-boy's eyes, and rock his brains
In cradle of the rude imperious surge:
And in the visitation of the winds,
Who take the ruffian billows by the top,
Curling their monstrous heads, and hanging them
With deaf'ning clamours in the slippery clouds,
That, with the hurly, death itself awakes?
Canst thou, O partial sleep! give thy repose
To the wet sea-boy in an hour so rude,

[1] Judgment, opinion, blame. [2] To ripen, bring to maturity.
[3] Viz. Sleep.

And, in the calmest and most stillest[1] night,
With all appliances and means to boot,[2]
Deny it to a king? Then, happy low, lie down!
Uneasy lies the head that wears a crown.

28. Mercy.

Merch. of Ven. IV, 1.

The quality of mercy is not strain'd,
It droppeth, as the gentle rain from heaven,
Upon the place beneath: it is twice bless'd;
It blesseth him that gives, and him that takes.
'Tis mightiest in the mightiest, it becomes
The throned monarch better than his crown:
His sceptre shows the force of temporal power,
The attribute to awe and majesty,
Wherein doth sit the dread and fear of kings;
But mercy is above this sceptred sway,
It is enthroned in the hearts of kings,
It is an attribute to God himself;
And earthly power doth then show likest God's,
When mercy seasons justice. — — —

W. Shakespeare

29. The Aged Minstrel.

The way was long, the wind was cold,
The Minstrel was infirm and old:
His withered cheek, and tresses grey,
Seemed to have known a better day;
The harp, his sole remaining joy,
Was carried by an orphan boy:
The last of all the Bards was he,
Who sung of Border[3] chivalry;
For, welladay![4] their date was fled,
His tuneful brethren all were dead;
And he, neglected and oppressed,
Wished to be with them, and at rest.

[1] Double superlative often to be found with Shakespeare.

[2] Over and above, into the bargain, moreover, besides.

[3] The Border districts of England and Scotland, rich in legends, romances, and ballads celebrating the ancient feuds, incursions, and battles of the two nations. W. Scott published a collection of those ballads under the title 'Minstrelsy of the Scottish Borders'.

[4] Welladay and welaway an exclamation, alas! corrupted from lo siehe, and woe Wehe.

No more, on prancing palfrey borne,
He carolled, light as lark at morn;
No longer, courted and caressed,
High placed in hall, a welcome guest,
He poured, to lord and lady gay,
The unpremeditated lay:
Old times were changed, old manners gone;
A stranger filled the Stuarts'[1] throne;
The bigots[2] of the iron time
Had called his harmless art a crime.
A wandering harper, scorned and poor,
He begged his bread from door to door,
And tuned, to please a peasant's ear;
The harp a king had loved to hear.

Walter Scott (from the Lay of the Last Minstrel), 1771—1832.

30. Letters.

I.

Langley Hall, June 12th 1893.

Dear Friend,

There is something indescribably cheering and inviting in a thoroughly English breakfast. The rolls and butter, the toast and eggs, the tea and coffee, the fruit and cold meats, the marmelade, and the many little extras there to be found, are refreshing and comforting to a great extent. At least I have always found them so. Then the hissing of the silver urn, the gleam of the tea and coffee pots with their fragrant steam, the rich colours of the cups and plates, the glossy table linen, in fact the freshness of the *tout ensemble* affords at least one daily picture which I have never seen successfully imitated anywhere out of England. Even the far famed Scotch breakfasts are in my opinion inferior. They are heavy, overdone as it were, and want that varied simplicity which is so peculiar to our English homes. And then in winter, with a blazing wood fire crackling on the hearth, giving light as it were to the whole room, (how I longed for an open fire place instead of those abominably grim stoves) how cheery to sit and chat, and sip, and taste, perchance the wind and snow howling dismally around outside! Alas! in such a comfortable situation ourselves, how prone are we to forget that there are those, flesh and blood

[1] William of Orange 1689.

[2] The Puritans, who declared music and particularly the dramatic art as sinful.

as we are, with the same feelings, the same physical powers both for enduring and feeling pain, and enjoying pleasure, who have no earthly shelter but the corner of some stone wall, perchance the archway of a bridge, no food save the dry, hard, tear stained crust of charity. And not always that. Oh! instead of always comparing our lot with those apparently above us, did we only contrást them with those below us, how infinitely more grateful should we feel towards Him, who is the Great Giver of all things, how much more ready to open our hearts and purses to the wants and necessities of our suffering brothers and sisters. Perhaps in no country is there more done for the relief of the poor, the sick, and the destitute, than there is in England. Take up any one of the newspapers and you will find subscription lists, societies, charitable institutions of every kind, headed by the noble in name and in heart, and yet for all this, there is no land in which remains more to be done. How fearfully are the words "Charity begins at home" wrenched from their original signification, and how much more compatible with a selfish worldliness to limit their meaning to the benefit of ourselves and families than to acknowledge to our own proud and rebellious hearts, that, unless there be "Charity at home" there can be none elsewhere. In our own hearts, by our own fireside, must the root be planted that shall blossom and bear fruit to the benefit and comfort of others, and to our own eternal reward. But I am beginning to preach I find. Well, scarcely had we taken our seats when the butler brought in the post bag, and my uncle distríbuted its contents among us according to their several destinations. My uncle, though no correspondent, has always a goodly heap of letters for his share of the daily bag He is a good, kind, frank, open hearted and honoured man; one whom the young look up to and respect, ask advice of, and take council from, whom the old speak of and regard as one of a race, now alas! disappearing from the face of fair England, a real "old English country gentleman." Helen has not a correspondent in the world I believe, at least to judge from the surprise with which she received the letter my uncle handed to her out of the bag. "From Herbert" she said, as she calmly looked at the writing and then broke the seal, "what can have induced him to think of writing to me?" Who is Herbert? I shall tell it you the next time. I desire only that my uncle should very soon hand me, at breakfast, a letter written in German and from my dear Mary.

Yours sincerely,

Mary L.

II.

Rugby, December 13th, 1893.

Dear Papa,

With much pleasure I inform you, that the commencement of our vacation is fixed for Thursday, the 19th of December; I need not say how happy I shall be to meet you, and all at home, in good health.

The up-train passes this station at eight o'clock, A.M.,[1] which is the one the London boys mostly go by. You may therefore expect me at the Euston-Square Terminus about twelve; when, unless I hear from you to the contrary, I shall be on the look-out for Henry to meet me.

Our holidays are to last five weeks, and a few days; so that the school will be re-opened on Monday, the 27th of January next.

The master desires me to say, that he is quite satisfied with the progress I have made in my studies, during the half-year; and also with my general cónduct.

The pupils were examined, on Tuesday, as to their proficiency in the classics, mathematics, etc. Afterwards, the prizes were given out; one of which I had. It was for Latin. I was examined in Horace and Xenophon.

With duty and love to all at home,

I remain

Your affectionate

Robert.

III.

Berlin, 2nd July 1892.

My dear Emma,

I have this morning received a letter from my parents, who to reward my assiduity in my studies give me permission to dispose of my vacation as I like best. My intention now is at first to make a tour to Leipzic. Think with what pleasure I inform you that I shall see you in a few days! I count the minutes which separate me from the so long desired day, and you may judge of my joy at the idea of again walking arm in arm with you. I am going to pack my trunks, so good bye for the present.

Your affectionate

Frances[2] H.

[1] **Ante** meridiem (Lat.), in the forenoon, from ante before and meridies meridian.

[2] Franziska, Fanny.

IV.

Tewksbury, May 30th, 1892.

Dear Mary,

Having heard that you and your amiable mother intend to honour this part of the country with your presence during the summer, I earnestly request that you will condescend to make my house your residence. I have a suit of apartments entirely at your service, and shall feel happy in contributing to render your abode here agreeable. We use no ceremony, and have very few visitors; therefore if you have no prior engagement, I shall expect you. I know you and your mother are fond of wild, aromatic straw-berries; well, you may gather them here on the very spot where they grow, we have some well-stocked wood in the neighbourhood. We have also a neat little Theatre and, generally, pretty good actors. Such are the amusements we can offer you; I hope they may be found sufficiently attractive to procure us the pleasure of your society. Drop me a line to inform me when I may expect you. Present my respects to your mother and believe me

Yours sincerely

Kate.

V.

London, 3rd of June 1892.

Dear Lucy,

I feel highly flattered by your very polite attention, and thank you sincerely for your kind invitation, which my mother accepts on one condition, viz. that by accepting a part of our house in the next year, you will give us an opportunity of acknowledging and reciprocating your obligation. You will not find us very troublesome inmates; we keep regular hours, and consequently do not like much company. I am passionately fond of wild, aromatic straw-berries, and I anticipate much pleasure in your charming wood. My mother's amusements are perhaps more rational: she reads very much, and I flatter myself that Mrs. Brown will find in her an agreeable companion. We intend leaving our town on the 16th; we shall sleep one night on the road, and hope to have the pleasure of seeing you all in good health on Friday morning, the 18th. Present our respects to Mrs. Brown and our loves to all your amiable family.

Yours most affectionately

Maud.

VI.

Huddersfield, Oct. 5th, 1888.

Honoured Sir and dear Friend,

I have already communicated to you that it has pleased God to give me a son and heir; and I write to-day, partly to thank you for the very kind manner in which you replied to that communication, partly to request from you the favour that you would consent to be Godfather at the Christening, which is intended to take place on Tuesday next, the 12th instant. I will say nothing more, except that by so doing you would greatly oblige both myself and Mrs. Bentley. Awaiting a speedy, and I hope favourable answer,

I remain,
Dear Sir,
Yours very respectfully,
John Bentley.

VII.

Wilmslow, April 12th, 1893.

Sir,

I come to ask your assistance in an affair of great importance to myself, and am in hopes that you will accede to my demands. My son has just attained his seventeenth year, and has had great success in his studies both in England and on the Continent; he has passed one year in France and one year in Germany, and consequently could undertake a correspondence both in German and in French.

I should take it as a great favour if you could receive him into your banking-house. I can answer for his integrity and close attention to business, and I flatter myself that he would form a valuable acquisition in any trading-house. I await impatiently your answer, and, if favourable, shall immediately arrange for him to board and lodge in a respectable family in your town.

Believe me to remain
Your humble and obedient servant,
A. F.

VIII.

Manchester, the 15th April 1893.

Sir,

It was with the greatest pleasure that I received the letter in which you signified your desire to place your son

in my establishment, as, at the present moment, I am in want of a new clerk to fill up the place of one who has just left, and as I am sure, from the education you have given to your son, he will be fully qualified to execute my business conscientiously. As far as salary is concerned, I shall commence by giving him £ 5 a month, and according to his diligence in business, it will be advanced every year. I shall always keep him under my eye, and ever have great pleasure in forwarding his interest in any way that lies in my power.

Believe me to remain,

Dear Sir,

Yours truly,

O. S.

P. S. I shall expect your son towards the beginning of next week.

IX.

My Dear Son,

A bill for ninety pounds sterling was brought to me the other day, said to be drawn upon me by you. I scrupled paying it at first, not upon account of the sum, but because you had sent me no letter of advice, which is always done in those transactions, and still more because I did not perceive that you had signed it. The person who presented it, desired me to look again, and that I should discover your name at the bottom; accordingly, I looked again and with the help of my magnifying glass, did perceive, that what I had first taken only for somebody's mark was, in truth, your name, written in the worst and smallest hand I ever saw in my life. I cannot write quite so ill, but it was something like this: *Philip Stanhope.* However, I paid it at a venture, though I would almost rather lose the money, than that such a signature should be yours. If you were to write in such a character to the Secretary's office,[1] your letter would immediately be sent to the decipherer, as containing matters of the utmost secrecy, not fit to be trusted to the common character; whereas an antiquarian, knowing you to be a man of learning, would certainly try it by the Runic, Celtic or Sclavonian alphabet, never suspecting it to be a modern character. I have often told you that every man, who has the use of his eyes and of his hands, can write whatever hand he pleases. You will perhaps say, that when you write

[1] Geheimschreiberei.

so very ill, it is because you are in a hurry, to which I answer, why are you ever in a hurry? I own, your time is much taken up, and you have a great many different things to do; but remember, that you had much better do half of them well, and leave the other half undone, than do them all indifferently. I hope you won't let me see such a bad hand again, in which expectation I remain

Yours affectionately

Chesterfield.

31. Notes and Billets.

I.

5 Berner Street, January 15th, 1893.

My dear James,

You know that I have been prevented from attending lessons for these four days. A very severe cold has confined me to the room, and for four days even to the bed. I am better now and quite able to work, though I cannot go out yet. Please call at me this afternoon to give me the tasks for to-morrow, that I can prepare my lessons.

Hoping to see you to-day after school

Yours truly

To Master James Alston, John Ripley.

c/o[1] R. Alston. Esq.

II.

2 Leicester Square, January 15th, 1893.

My dear John,

I am very sorry not to be able to call at you at the hour you desired. I have to go on an errand for my father after school. But I enclose a scrap on which I wrote out the tasks for you. Hoping to see you to-morrow in school quite recovered,

Yours affectionately

To Master John Ripley. James Alston.

c/o Mrs. Ripley.

III.

Berlin, June 25th, '77.

Dear Sir.

I greatly regret not being able to give you your lesson this evening, and beg of you therefore to be so kind

[1] care of, per adress.

as to come on Wednesday at 9—10 p. m.[1] Trusting you will excuse this irregularity,

I remain
Yours faithfully
P. Gough.

IV.

Berlin, British Hotel.

May I ask you to be so kind as to postpone tomorrow's lesson until Saturday? I am feeling very unwell und unable to get about. Herbert Vines.

V.

Beech Hurst, 5th of March 1891.

My dear Sir,

Will your engagement allow you to come and dine with us on Monday next at six o'clock? I should be most happy to introduce you to one of my relations who has just arrived.

Please to accept our kindest regards.

Yours sincerely
William Bewly.

VI.

Mr. and Mrs. A present their compliments to Mr. and Mrs. B and trust they will favour them with their company at dinner, on Tuesday next, at five o'clock.

VII.

Mr. and Mrs. D request Mr. E. to do them the favour of dining with them on Wednesday next at six o'clock, and also beg him to accept their best compliments.

VIII.

Mr. and Mrs. B present their compliments to Mr. and Mrs. A and beg to say that they are happy to accept their kind invitation.

IX.

Mr. and Mrs. B much regret that previous engagements prevent them from accepting the flattering invitation of Mr. and Mrs. A for Tuesday.

[1] Post meridiem, in the afternoon.

X.

Mr. L has the honour to accept the invitation for Thursday next, which Mrs. P. has been so extremely kind as to send him.

XI.

Business of the utmost importance will not permit Mr. O to take advantage of the invitation Mrs. R has so kindly favoured him with; he trusts she will accept his apology and most respectful homage.

XII.

Sudden indisposition deprives Mr. K . . . of the honour of passing the evening at Mrs. N.'s, and he begs her to accept the expression of his great regret.

32. Advertisements.

I.

Wanted in a French family of retired habits a young English woman capable of teaching her own language grammatically, and possessing a tolerable knowledge of music. She will be treated as one of the family. The most unexceptionable references will be required, both as to morals and ability. A native of London would be preferred. Apply, personally, at the Hôtel des Princes, Rue de Richelieu, between 10 and 12 in the morning.

II.

A young German Lady, who has passed the higher Prussian Examination and speaks French, seeks a situation, in a school or family. No music. — Address Miss T., Fryern-house, Bridgewater.

III.

Young German Professor, speaking French, Russian, Polish and pretty well English, knowing Greek, Latin, mathematics, drawing, riding, different sports, requires situation as Tutor or Domestic Secretary. N., 42, Pyrland-road, Canonbury. (Times, Friday, December 22, 1893.)

IV.

Required a conscientious, clever Resident Governess. Salary £ 50. Applicants please state fully age, certificates, and references. V. R., 102, Westbourne-grove, London W. (Times.)

V.

Continental Traveller.—A gentleman of experience and ability, desires an engagement as Traveller on the Continent or United States. Address C. K., poste restante, Cannes, France. (Times.)

VI.

Experienced Correspondent (Englishman), thorough French, with knowledge of Spanish, Italian, and German, open to re-engagement. Shorthand writer. Efficient accountant. Highest references. Address G. 28, Messrs. Deacon's, Leadenhall-street. (Times.)

VII.

A young German Lady, with the highest diplomas, possessing a thorough knowledge of English and French, and accustomed to the management of children, desires engagement in a family going to Italy or the South of France for the winter. — Address A. R., Lucerne.

VIII.

A North-German Lady, 25, well educated, and with a fair knowledge of English, desires an engagement in a private family, to accomplish herself in English in exchange for German. References required and given. — Address 669 O, "Daily News" Advertisement Inquiry Office, 67, Fleet-street, E. C.

IX.

Wants a situation, a young lady perfectly experienced in education. She has been, during the last five years, in one of the highest families of Hanover, and can give the most unexceptionable references. A line addressed to A. B., Nr. 14, Wilhelmstrasse, will be immediately attended to.

N.B. Speaks and writes German correctly.

33. Commercial Notes.

I. Advice of Shipment of Goods.

London, 21st July.

Mr. Charles Morton, New-York.

Dear Sir,

We have the honour of advising you that we have to-day shipped on board the Despatch, Captain Harvey,

the different articles which you ordered from us in your esteemed favour of 3rd ult. There are twenty bales marked C. M. We inclose you invoice and B/L. The goods are the best that can be had in London, and we doubt not of their giving satisfaction. Awaiting your further orders, we remain, dear Sir,

yours faithfully

Bennet & Cie.

II. Note of Hand.

London, Nov. 15th, 1893.

On demand (or . . months after date) I promise to pay Mr. Wilson, or order, the sum of two hundred pounds, for value received, N. N.

III. Bill of Exchange.

Sir,—One month after date (on sight, or at sight) please to pay Mr. Ward, or order, the sum of fifty pounds, and place the sum to the account of

Your humble servant N. N.

(Before this bill is rendered properly negotiable, or can be demanded when due, it must be accepted by the merchant; and indorsed by the person in whose favour it is drawn.)

34. English Climate.

The climate of Great Britain is oceanic, that is to say, it is, in spite of its degrees of northern latitude, rendered mild, equably warm, and moist, through the agency of the ocean. A British winter has very little ice and snow, doing no harm whatever to such plants as laurels, azalias, and rhododendrons; while summer, on the other hand, has not sufficient heat to ripen grapes. Rains are frequent, chiefly on the western coast, which therefore abounds in good pastures and excellent cattle; the eastern coast, being drier, furnishes plenty of wheat. A German, visiting the South of England in the latter part of autumn, may fancy himself transported to another hemisphere. The balmy air; the blue sky and sea; shrubs and trees without a yellow leaf; the meadows green as in spring; the honeysuckle with butterflies hovering about its blossoms; cedars towering up to the fleecy clouds; the pleasant villas along the coast, almost buried under myrtles and fuchsias, roses and passion-flowers; all in full bloom; country churches completely overrun with ivy; ferns of uncommon size, waving their feathers in the gentle breeze; twittering birds among the branches of the tree-like wild laurel; feeding

cattle scattered over the downs, on this side of the rocky shore — while, beyond it, merry people, young and old, are bathing and plashing about in the open sea.

It is certain that London, during the greater and better part of the year, is blessed with many days of glorious sunshine; but in winter it is frequently infested by the most disagreeable fogs. If they are of the right sort, and occurring in the day-time, the sun vanishes, so that the gas must be lighted; the air, from grey, yellow, orange, is changed into black: at the same time, it is moist, thick, and choking. The fog often rises slowly, like a tragic spectre; not rarely, too, it will come upon the town with the speed of the Simoom. Sometimes, it spreads uniformly over the whole ocean of houses; at other times, being stopped in its way by some invisible cause, it is shaped into gigantic walls, out of which the passenger is seen stepping forth, like the wandering scholar from behind Doctor Faustus's stove. — *Emerson.*

35. A London Fog.

A London fog is a sad thing, as every inhabitant of London knows full well: dingy, dusky, dirty, damp; an atmosphere, black as smoke and wet as steam, that wraps round you like a blanket; a cloud reaching from earth to heaven; a "palpable obscure", which not only turns day into night, but threatens to extinguish the lamps and lanterns, with which the poor street-wanderers strive to illūmine their darkness; dimming and paling the "ineffectual fires", until the volume of gas at a shop-door cuts no better figure than a hedge glow-worm, and a duchess's flambeau would veil its glories to a will-o'-the-wisp. The very noises of the street become stifled and smothered through that suffocating medium; din is at a pause; the town is silenced; and the whole population, biped and quadruped sympathize with the dead and chilling weight of the out-of-door world. Dogs and cats just look up from their slumbers, turn round, and go to sleep again; the little birds open their pretty eyes, stare about them, wonder that the night is so long, and settle themselves afresh on their perches. Silks lose their gloss, cravats their stiffness, hackney-coachmen their way; young ladies fall out of curl, and mothers out of temper; masters scold; servants grumble; and the whole city, from Hyde Park Corner to Wapping, looks sleepy and cross, like a fine gentleman roused before his time, and forced to get up by candlelight. Of all detestable things, a London fog is the most detestable. — *Mitford.*

36. Hard on the Doctor.

The late Dr. Yandell was fond of telling the following joke: — A lady patient one morning greeted him with the remark: "Doctor, I had a singular dream about you last night." "Indeed, what was it?" "Why, I dreamed that I died and went to heaven. I knocked at the golden gate, and was answered by Peter, who asked my name and address, and told the recording angel to bring his book.

"He had considerable difficulty in finding my name, and hesitated so long over the entry when he did find it that I was terribly afraid something was wrong; but he suddenly looked up and asked, 'What did you say your name was?' I told him again. 'Why', said he, 'you've no business here. You're not due these ten or fifteen years yet.' 'Well', said I, 'Dr. Yandell said — —.' 'Oh, you're one of Yandell's patients, are you? That accounts for it. Come in, come in! That man's always upsetting our calculations in some way.'"

37. She swallowed the Doll.

A remarkable story comes from Liverpool. A little child of that town, aged about two years, has been ailing for some time, and as the local physicians could not discover the cause, the parents took the child to London, where it was examined by the leading physicians, who were equally as unsuccessful in their search for the ailment. It seemed that the infant must slowly die, and the parents resigned all hope of saving its life. But while the little one was receiving the customary morning bath a short time since, a knot about the size of an egg was discovered in its side, which had formed very suddenly, and seemed to contain some hard substance. A physician was called, and decided to cut open the knot. Upon doing so it was found to contain a china doll about two inches long, which the child had swallowed about a year since. The little one rapidly improved after the operation, and is now as well and lively as ever.

Anecdotes.

"This must be a fine stream for trout", said a pedestrian to a man who was fishing.

"I think so, too", said the angler, "for I have been fishing here for an hour and can't get one to leave it."

Doctor: "Why, how is this, my dear Sir. You sent me a letter stating you had been attacked by measles, and I find you suffering from rheumatism."

Patient: "Well, you see, doctor, it is like this: there wasn't a soul in the house that knew how to spell rheumatism."

38. The Graves of a Household.

They grew in beauty, side by side,
They filled one home with glee;
Their graves are severed, far and wide,
By mount, and stream, and sea.

The same fond mother bent a night
O'er each fair sleeping brow;
She had each folded flower in sight—
Where are those dreamers now?

One, 'midst the forests of the west,
By a dark stream is laid—
The Indian knows his place of rest,
Far in the cedar shade.

The sea, the blue lone sea, hath one,
He lies where pearls lie deep;
He was the loved of all, yet none
O'er his low bed may weep.

One sleeps where southern vines are dressed
Above the noble slain:
He wrapt his colours round his breast,
On a blood-red field of Spain.

And one—o'er her the myrtle showers
Its leaves, by soft winds fanned;
She faded 'midst Italian flowers—
The last of that bright band.

And parted thus they rest, who played
Beneath the same green tree;
Whose voices mingled as they prayed
Around one parent knee!

They that with smiles lit up the hall,
And cheered with song the hearth—
Alas! for love, if thou wert all,
And nought beyond, on earth!

Felicia Hemans.

39. Friends.

Friend after friend departs;
 Who has not lost a friend?
There is no union here of hearts
 That finds not here an end:
Were this frail world our only rest,—
Living or dying, none were blest.

Beyond the flight of time,
 Beyond this vale of death,—
There surely is some blessed clime,
 Where life is not a breath,
Nor life's affections, transient fire,
Whose sparks fly upwards to expire.

There is a world above,
 Where parting is unknown—
A whole eternity of love,
 Form'd for the good alone;
And faith beholds the dying here
Translated to that happier sphere.

Thus star by star declines
 Till all are pass'd away,
As morning high and higher shines
 To pure and perfect day:
Nor sink those stars in empty night,
They hide themselves in heaven's own light.

James Montgomery.

40. The Erl-King.

From Gœthe.

Who rides so late through night and wind?
I is with his child a father kind.
He has the boy well in his arm;
He keeps him surely, he keeps him warm.

"My son, why hid'st thou thy face with fear?"
"See'st thou not, father, the Erl-King near—
The Erl-King with crown and shroud?"
"My son, it is but a misty cloud."

"Thou dearest child, come, go with me!
Quite lovely sports I'll sport with thee.
Many coloured flowers my gardens hold,
My mother has many dresses of gold."

"My father, my father, hear not ye
What the Erl-King softly promises me?"
"Be quiet, keep quiet, my child;
The wind 'mong the leaves is whisp'ring wild."

"Wilt thou, fair boy? Do go with me;
My daughters shall prettily wait upon thee,
Nightly dances with thee they shall keep,
And rock, and dance, and sing thee to sleep."

"My father, my father, canst thou not trace
The Erl-King's daughters in yonder dark place?"
"My son, my son, I see it display
Quite clearly the willow so old and so gray."

"I love thy form, so graceful and fair,
I'll have thee by force if I cannot by prayer."
"My father, my father, me he holds on,
The Erl-King me hath an injury done."

The father trembles, he hastes with alarm;
Gasping, the child is laid in his arm.
He reaches the yard with trouble and dread,
And in his arms the infant was dead!

Anonymous.

41. The Old English Houses.

It was a long time before people learnt how to build proper houses. They used to live in caves in the rocks. Some savages, such as the natives of Australia, have not even yet got so far as to build houses. But they often stick boughs of trees into the ground in a row when the night is cold, so as to shelter themselves from the wind. Sometimes they set them in a circle, and twine them together overhead, so as to make a roof, and so they get something like the summer-houses we have in our gardens. The next step is to build square houses of wood, stone, and bricks.

The old English houses before the Norman Conquest were only one story high. The most important part of the house was the hall. The bedrooms and the kitchen were separate buildings close to the hall. Cooking was often done out of doors, in the open air. The whole group of buildings was surrounded by a wall with a gate in it, which was generally kept shut, especially if there was any danger of thieves or enemies getting in. The hall door was always left open, and any stranger who liked might come in, and

sit down to dinner with the family. This is why we still say of a hospitable man that he keeps open house.

The hall had not much furniture in it: hardly anything but a long table to take their meals at, and benches to sit on. Chairs were not at all common: only kings and people of rank used to sit on them. The table was nothing but a board that was brought in when it was wanted, and put on supports answering to the legs of our modern tables. When dinner was over, the whole thing was taken away. There is an Old-English riddle of the eighth century about a table; it says: 'I feed people with all kinds of dishes; while I do so I am four-legged, and dressed in beautiful clothes; but afterwards I am robbed of all I have, and they leave nothing but my bare limbs.' We still use 'board' in the sense of dinner-table, when we talk of board and lodging in the sense of food and living in a house. Chimneys were not known in those times, and they used to light the fire in the middle of the floor, and let the smoke get out through a hole in the roof.

H. Sweet (Elementarbuch).

42. English School Life.

"And so here's Rugby, Sir, at last, and you'll be in plenty of time for dinner at the School-house, as I tell'd you," said the old guard, pulling his horn out of its case, and tootle-tooing away.

Tom's heart beat quick as he passed the great school field or close, with its noble elms, in which several games at foot-ball were going on, and tried to take in at once the long line of grey buildings, beginning with the chapel, and ending with the School-house, the residence of the head-master, where the great flag was lazily waving from the highest round tower. And he began already to be proud of being a Rugby boy, as he passed the school gates, with the oriel window above, and saw the boys standing there, looking as if the town belonged to them, and nodding in a familiar manner to the coachman, as if any one of them would be quite equal to getting on the box, and working the team down street as well as he.

One of the young heroes, however, ran out from the rest, and scrambled up behind; where, having righted himself, and nodded to the guard, with "How do, Jem?" he turned short round to Tom, and, after looking him over for a minute, began —

"I say, you fellow, is your name Brown?"

"Yes," said Tom, in considerable astonishment: glad, however, to have lighted on some one already who seemed to know him.

"Ah, I thought so; you know my old aunt, Miss East, she lives somewhere down your way in Berkshire. She wrote to me that you were coming to-day, and asked me to give you a lift."

East was great in the character of cicerone; he carried Tom through the great gates, where were only two or three boys. These satisfied themselves with the stock questions, — "You fellow, what's your name? Where do you come from? How old are you? Where do you board? and, What form are you in?" — and so they passed on through the quadrangle and a small court-yard, upon which looked down a lot of little windows (belonging, as his guide informed him, to some of the School-house studies), into the matron's room, where East introduced Tom to that dignitary; made him give up the key of his trunk, that the matron might unpack his linen, whereof East marched Tom off into the quadrangle, and began showing him the schools, and examining him as to his literary attainments; the result of which was a prophecy that they would be in the same form, and could do their lessons together.

"And now come in and see my study; we shall have just time before dinner."

Tom followed his guide through the School-house hall, which opens into the quadrangle. It is a great room thirty feet long and eighteen high, or thereabouts, with two great tables running the whole length, and two large fire-places at the side, with blazing fires in them, at one of which some dozen boys were standing and lounging, some of whom shouted to East to stop; but he shot through with his convoy, and landed him in the long dark passages, with a large fire at the end of each, upon which the studies opened. Into one of these, in the bottom passage, East bolted with our hero, slamming and bolting the door behind them, in case of pursuit from the hall, and Tom was for the first time in a Rugby boy's citadel.

He hadn't been prepared for separate studies, and was not little astonished and delighted with the palace in question.

It wasn't very large certainly, being about six feet long by four broad. It couldn't be called light, as there were bars and a grating to the window; which little precautions were necessary in the studies on the ground-floor looking out into the close, to prevent the exit of small boys

after locking-up, and the entrance of contraband articles. But it was uncommonly comfortable to look at, Tom thought. The space under the window at the further end was occupied by a square table covered with a reasonably clean and whole red and blue check tablecloth; a hard-seated sofa covered with red stuff occupied one side, running up to the end, and making a seat for one, or by sitting close, for two, at the table; and a good stout wooden chair afforded a seat to another boy, so that three could sit and work together. The walls were wainscoted half-way up, the wainscot being covered with green baize, the remainder with a bright-patterned paper, on which hung three or four prints, of dogs' heads, Grimaldi winning the Aylesbury[1] steeple-chase, etc. Over the door were a row of hat-pegs, and on each side bookcases with cupboards at the bottom, shelves and cupboards being filled indiscriminately with school-books, a cup or two, a mousetrap and brass candlesticks, leather straps, a fustian bag, and some curious-looking articles, which puzzled Tom not a little, until his friend explained that they were climbing-irons, and showed their use. A cricket bat and small fishing-rod stood up in one corner.

This was the residence of East and another boy in the same form, and had more interest for Tom than Windsor Castle, or any other residence in the British Isles. For was he not about to become the joint owner of a similar home, the first place which he could call his own? One's own — what a charm there is in the words! How long it takes boy and man to find out their worth!

"And shall I have a study like this too?" said Tom.

"Yes, of course, you'll be chummed with some fellow on Monday, and you can sit here till then."

"What nice places!"

"They're well enough," answered East, "only uncommon cold at nights sometimes. Gower — that's my chum — and I make a fire with paper on the floor after supper generally, only that makes it so smoky."

"But there's a big fire out in the passage," said Tom.

"Precious little good we get of that tho'," said East.

A quarter past one now struck, and the bell began tolling for dinner, so they went into the hall and took their places, Tom at the very bottom of the second table, next to the præpostor, (who sat at the end to keep order there,) and East a few places higher. And now Tom for the first

[1] Ancient town in the county of Buckingham.

time saw his future school-fellows in a body. In they came, some hot and ruddy from foot-ball or long walks, some pale and chilly from hard reading in their studies, some from loitering over the fire at the pastrycook's, bringing with them pickles and sauce-bottles to help them with their dinners. And a great big bearded man, whom Tom took for a master, began calling over the names, while the great joints were being rapidly carved on a third table in the corner by the old verger and the housekeeper. Tom's turn came last, and meanwhile he was all eyes, looking first with awe at the great man who sat close to him, and was helped first, and who read all the time he was eating; and when he got up and walked off to the fire; at the small boys round him, some of whom were reading, and the rest talking in whispers to one another, or stealing one another's bread, or digging their forks through the tablecloth. However, notwithstanding his curiosity, he managed to make a capital dinner by the time the big man called "Stand up!" and said grace.

The next day Tom was duly placed in the third form, and began his lessons in a corner of the big School. He found the work very easy, as he had been well grounded and knew his grammar by heart; and, as he had no intimate companion to make him idle, soon gained golden opinions from his master, who said he was placed too low, and should be put out at the end of the half-year. So all went well with him in School, and he wrote the most flourishing letters home to his mother, full of his own success and the unspeakable delights of a public school.

In the house, too, all went well. The end of the half-year was drawing near, which kept everybody in a good humour, and the house was ruled well and strongly.

Tom, as a new boy, was of right excused fagging for the first month, but in his enthusiasm for his new life this privilege hardly pleased him; and East and others of his young friends discovering this, kindly allowed him to indulge his fancy, and take their turns at night fagging and cleaning studies. These were the principal duties of the fags in the house. From supper until nine o'clock, three fags stood in the passages, and answered any præpostor who called Fag, racing to the door, the last comer having to do the work. This consisted generally of going to the buttery for beer and bread and cheese (for the great men did not sup with the rest, but had each his own allowance in his study or the fifth-form room), cleaning candlesticks and putting in new candles,

toasting cheese, bottling beer, and carrying messages about the house. And besides this night-work, each præpostor had three or four fags specially allotted to him, of whom he was supposed to be the guide, philosopher, and friend, and who in return for these good offices had to clean out his study every morning by turns, directly after first lesson and before he returned from breakfast.

In all the games, too, he joined with all his heart, and soon became well versed in all the mysteries of foot-ball by continued practice at the school-house little side, which played daily. Hughes.

Anecdote.

"Come here, Pat, you truant, and tell me why you came to school late this morning," said an Irish schoolmaster to a ragged and shoeless urchin, whose "young idea" he had undertaken for a penny a week to teach "how to spell."

"Please, your honour," replied the ready-witted scholar, "the frost made the way so slippery that for every step forward I took two steps backward."

"But you see, Pat," was the rejoinder of the pedagogue, "that at that rate you would never have reached school at all?"

"Just what I thought to myself." The boy paused for a few moments, then went on, "And so I turned to go home, and after a time I found myself at school."

43. The Homes of England.

The stately homes of England!
How beautiful they stand,
Amidst their tall ancestral trees,
O'er all the pleasant land!
The deer across their greensward bound
Through shade and sunny gleam,
And the swan glides past them with the sound
Of some rejoicing stream.

The merry homes of England!
Around their hearths by night,
What gladsome looks of household love
Meet in the ruddy light!
There woman's voice flows forth in song,
Or childhood's tale is told;
Or lips move tunefully along
Some glorious page of old.

The blessed homes of England!
 How softly on their bowers
Is laid the holy quietness
 That breathes from Sabbath-hours!
Solemn, yet sweet, the church-bell's chime
 Floats through their woods at morn;
All other sounds, in that still time,
 Of breeze and leaf are born.

The cottage homes of England!
 By thousands on her plains,
They are smiling o'er the silvery brooks,
 And round the hamlet-fanes.
Through glowing orchards forth they peep,
 Each from its nook of leaves,
And fearless there the lowly sleep,
 As the bird beneath their eaves.

The free, fair homes of England!
 Long, long in hut and hall,
May hearts of native proof be rear'd
 To guard each hallow'd wall!
And green for ever be the groves,
 And bright the flowery sod,
Where first the child's glad spirit loves
 Its country and its God!

Felicia Hemans.

44. I Remember, I Remember.

I remember, I remember
 The house where I was born,
The little window where the sun
 Came peeping in at morn:
He never came a wink too soon,
 Nor brought too long a day,
But now, I often wish the night
 Had borne my breath away!

I remember, I remember
 The roses, red and white,
The violets, and the lily-cups,
 Those flowers made of light!
The lilacs where the robin built,
 And where my brother set
The laburnum on his birth-day,—
 The tree is living yet!

I remember, I remember
 Where I was used to swing,
And thought the air must rush as fresh
 To swallows on the wing:
My spirit flew in feathers then,
 That is so heavy now,
And summer pools could hardly cool
 The fever on my brow!

I remember, I remember
 The fir-trees dark and high;
I used to think their slender tops
 Were close against the sky:
It was a childish ignorance,
 But now 'tis little joy
To know I'm farther off from Heav'n
 Than when I was a boy.

Thomas Hood.

45. The Old Back Stair.

Of all the sports of childhood,
 I know of none so rare,
As sliding down the banisters
Of
the
old
back
stair.
I remember well the circus,
 And the fun it used to bring
While watching fearless riders
 A-dashing round the ring;
But this jolly old attraction
 Could never near compare
With sliding down the banisters
Of
the
old
back
stair.
Then I recollect the barn loft,
 Packed tight of clover hay,
Mother used to send us there
 To spend a rainy day.

But I often stole away from that,
And, while mother wasn't there,
Went sliding down the banisters
Of
the
old
back
stair.
I have grown into manhood now,
And often wander home;
The old folks always welcome me—
They're glad to have me come;
But while they are not looking
I'm tempted, I declare
To slide adown the banisters
Of
the
old
back
stair.

46. Walking in the Streets of London.

There is great art in walking the streets of London; the countryman is a long while before he gets into the practice; and his awkwardness in this respect is one of the marks by which he is very readily distinguished, even if he have doffed his country-cut coat and hat, and imagines he is altogether one of the "right sort".

How quickly will a pickpocket fix him in his eye; and keep close to his heels in a crowd for a whole street together! The habit of gazing at shopwindows and at every trifling novelty in the great thoroughfares, and the want of that utter indifference to everything but the object towards which he is journeying, distinguish the indígenous individual from the stranger in the street.

The genuine Londoner is an absent man in the most crowded parts of the city; he proceeds on his way casting up his bills in his mind, arranging to-morrow's business, or projecting new schemes of profit, as unmoved and abstracted as if he were walking alone across a desert. He never jostles those he meets either right or left, but proceeds along, clear of porters and draymen, gliding with the current of vitality that flows on his own way at the general rate, nor breaking in upon the counter-marchers who face him in a

continued stream; he could peruse a book or a newspaper uninterruptedly during his progress from Charing Cross to the Stock Exchange, in the midst of thousands, undisturbing, and undisturbed, his habitual ease in such circumstances being the distinguishing trait of his character.

The sojourner of the provinces, on the other hand, when visiting the metropolis, is sadly puzzled to steer clear of the multitudes he meets. There is a story of one of them on record, who, coming into Fleet Street from a cross court, mounted the step of a door at noonday, to wait, as he said, "until the people coming out of church hat gone by".

It is pleasant to see him launched forth in the metropolis for the first time, raw from Cumberland or Westmoreland. Now he gets into the current of people passing the opposite way to himself, and finds himself pushed off the pavement into the middle of the street; now he staggers among those who have their right hand to the wall, and, not keeping the place of the rest of the passengers, is pushed forward, or jostled, or, stopping at a window to see some commonplace thing, obstructs the passengers and is pushed through the glass, or loses his pocket-handkerchief.

Disasters are for ever occurring; he is bewildered by the noise and confusion around him, and is happy to return and take his rest at his inn. It is scarcely credible to a Londoner, but there are well-authenticated instances of temporary madness in persons bred up in the privacy and solitude of remote country villages, from being left alone and getting bewildered in the streets of the metropolis.

47. The Bank of England.

The Bank of England, in Threadneedle Street, is, I suppose, the first place in the whole world with respect to money matters. What heaps of gold! what piles of bank-notes did I see there! It is said to contain generally eighteen millions of gold sovereigns.

It is very large, and of different kinds of architecture, and looks as though it would be no easy matter to get out any of the gold it contains against the will of the owners. The present building was opened for business in May 1817. Its length is four hundred and ninety feet, and breadth one hundred and eight feet.

Over the hall is a very curious clock; it has in the different rooms of the Bank sixteen clock faces, and the hands are all moved by brass rods fixed to this one clock.

The name of Abraham Newland is known to most people, as it appeared on the Bank of England notes. I must tell you who he was, as a portrait of him hangs up in one of the rooms.

He was the son of a miller, and being pretty well instructed in figures, he became a clerk in the Bank when he was young. He was a proof of the saying that there is nothing like integrity and persevērance in business. He rose from one situation to another, till at last he became the principal cashier: his name then appeared on the notes. Every year added to his prosperity, so that when he died his property was worth six thousand a year.

One part of the Bank is called the Rotunda, and if ever confusion reigned any where, it seems to reign there — for, what with the bargaining and trafficking of fundholders and stockbrokers, it is the last place in which you would look for peace and quietness. This great national bank was first established in 1694, in the reign of William III. and Mary II. It was projected by one Paterson, and its original capital was one million two hundred thousand pounds.

Herrig.

48. A Scene in the Strand.

As a gentleman was passing along the Strand the other day, he was startled by a tremendous crash, and on turning round found that a van laden with lamp-glasses had collīded with another vehicle. Lamp-glasses, though expensive to buy, are very cheaply manufactured, but, owing to the prevailing ignorance of the secrets of the glass trade, the by-standers on the present occasion seemed quite awestruck by the damage done, and considerable sympathy was felt with the driver.

An elderly gentleman of benevolent aspect eyed the crestfallen driver for a moment compassionately, and then said, "My poor man, I suppose you will have to make good the loss out of your own pocket?"

"Ah, that I shall", returned the van-driver, with melancholy aspect.

"Well", said the generous philanthropist, "hold out your hat; here's a shilling for you, and I dare say some of these gentlemen will give you a helping hand too."

The van-driver held out his hat, many gentlemen putting shillings into it, and humbler persons coppers, as tokens of sympathy. At last, when the contributions had ceased, the man emptied the contents of his hat into his pocket, and,

with a knowing wink to a friend among the by-standers, pointed out the retreating figure of the disinterested philantropist, and said slowly:—

"Ain't he a cute 'un? That's our governor!"

Anecdote.

"Waiter, how much is there to pay?"

"Eight shillings, sir."

On adding up the account the guest finds that it only comes to four shillings.

"I beg your pardon, sir", replied the waiter, "I have had something to drink this morning, and when that is the case I always see double."

The customer puts two shillings on the table.

"What is that you are giving me?"

"I thought you saw everything double."

49. The Complaints of the Poor.

"And wherefore do the poor complain?" the rich man asked of me.
"Come, walk abroad with me," I said, "and I will answer thee."
'Twas evening, and the frozen streets were cheerless to behold,
And we were wrapt and coated well, and yet we were a-cold.

We met an old bare-headed man, his locks were few and white;
I asked him what he did abroad in that cold winter's night.
'Twas bitter keen, indeed, he said, but at home no fire had he,
And therefore he had come abroad to ask for charity.

We met a young bare-footed child, and she begged loud and bold;
I asked her what she did abroad, when the wind it blew so cold.
She said her father was at home, and he lay sick abed;
And therefore was it she was sent abroad to ask for bread.

We saw a woman sitting down upon a stone to rest;
She had a baby at her back, and another at her breast.
I asked her why she loitered there, when the night-wind was so chill.
She turned her head, and bade the child that screamed behind be still.

She told us that her husband served, a soldier, far away,
And therefore to her parish she was begging back her way.
I turned me to the rich man then, for silently stood he:
"You asked me why the poor complain, and these have
answered thee."

Robert Southey.

50. Night.

Night is the time to rest;
How sweet, when labours close,
To gather round an aching breast
The curtain of repose;
Stretch the tired limbs, and lay the head
Upon our own delightful bed!

Night is the time for dreams;
The gay romance of life,
When truth that is, and truth that seems
Blend in phantastic strife;
Ah! visions less beguiling far
Than waking dreams by day-light are.

Night is the time to weep,
To wet with unseen tears
Those graves of memory, where sleep
The joys of other years,
Hopes that were angels in their birth,
And perish'd young, like things on earth.

Night is the time to pray;
Our Saviour oft withdrew
To desert mountains far away;
So will his followers do,
Steal from the throng to haunts untrod,
And hold communion there with God.

Night is the time for death;
When all around is peace,
Calmly to yield the weary breath,
From sin and suffering cease;
Think of heaven's bliss, and give the sign
To parting friends;—such death be mine!

Montgomery.

51. Change of Popular Amusements.

It would be impossible to form a better idea of the advance made by Englishmen of all classes, whether in town or country, in the art of "popular amusement", than from a comparison of the advertisements relating to sports, pastimes, and recreation in a newspaper of to-day with those which made their appearance less than half a century ago. One would look in vain now for the announcements of pugilistic encounters arranged between bruisers of established and growing reputation, cock-fights, dog-fights, and performances of terrier dogs, backed for large sums to kill several scores of rats within a limited space of time. One would have looked in vain then for the accounts of cricket-matches, and of the scores made by their players, in different parts of England, which now occupy entire pages of the sporting journals, for the notices to excursionists that are a regular feature in every newspaper during the summer season, for the miscellaneous programmes of picture exhibitions, lectures, theatres, music-halls, entertainments of all kinds, places of amusement of every variety, which have become an essential part of the machinery of our social life. Within the last five-and-twenty years cricket clubs and football clubs have been formed in all the towns and most of the villages in England. The volunteer movement has supplied another opportunity of healthy out-door exercise; athletic sports have been added to our muscular system; open spaces and village greens are the recognised play-grounds of the people. What were formerly wastes have been converted into public gardens. There are pleasure-grounds in the East End of London, and scarcely a year passes without an addition being made to the people's parks, which have been given by the bounty of great landlords to the industrial cities of the north.

As it has been with open-air pastimes, so it has been with in-door amusements. In the country the public-house, if still the chief, if not the absolutely paramount and exclusive attraction. There are penny-readings, where the voice of the reader is varied by music, vocal and instrumental; there are book societies, lectures, and, in many instances, reading-rooms furnished for the benefit of the members—all working men—with a selection of the newspapers of the day. Even the annual fair which, in the adjoining country town, was the great dissipation of the year, is an institution almost out of date. Human monstrosities fascinate the eye no longer, and invitations to witness the display of bicephalous

womanhood inside a canvas booth meet with so cold a response that they are seldom offered. The showman's van, which, a quarter of a century ago, collected the whole country side to view its contents, has almost ceased to exist. Neither the eloquence nor the art which once added their never-failing embellishments to this travelling world of wonders would suffice to secure patrons or admirers now. The little black silhouettes, standing out in prominent relief against a white background, in which this same thaumaturgist would depict the profile of your countenance for the price of one shilling, is a relic of the past, and the showman's reign ended when that of the photographer began. Now it is the day of the roaming photographer which is itself coming to a close. The proprietors of nomadic exhibitions of every kind complain that business has lamentably fallen off, and though equestrian troupes still manage to gain a living by making periodical pilgrimages through the kingdom, other forms of amusement are accessible all the year round in the immediately contiguous capital of every country district. The cheap trains and railway extension, which have proved the ruin of the old showman, have multiplied indefinitely the opportunities of popular recreation among the peasantry of England.

In the childhood of many a man and woman who is yet barely middle-aged, the village feast was the great rural festival, the one universally recognised holiday of the year. There was a substantial dinner, there was a brass band, there were games and dances, cricket and roundels for the boys, and kiss-in-the-ring for Giles and his sweetheart. But as soon as the neighbourhood became accustomed to the snorting and puffing of the steam-engine, its old men and women, its young men and maids, took advantage of it to explore the almost unknown world which lay close to them. They were, in the parlance of certain traffic managers, put upon the fidget, and the dividends of railway companies rose in proportion. Just as it was the Exhibition of 1851 from which must be dated the first great steps towards improvement made by English people in art and décorative design, so may the opening of the Crystal Palace at Sydenham be identified with a new departure in the region of popular amusement. The Crystal Palace is at the present day the rendezvous for country parties, which come from all quarters within a radius of fifty or sixty miles from London.

These pilgrimages of pleasure have familiarised the masses with the idea of jaunts taken with the same end in

other directions. Our evergrowing railway system has supplied the means, and now the excursion may be said to be one of the chief amusements of our toiling millions. Travel through any part of England on Saturday, Monday, or Tuesday, and you will find that the local lines swarm with villagers going to or returning from the town on missions of business or of pleasure, or, more likely, of both combined. This is the way in which the money formerly reserved for rustic holidays is disposed of. If those rural pleasure-takers are within a convenient distance of London, to London many of them will go. If not, they put by their savings and spend them on trips to their provincial capital.

S. Escott (England: Its People, Polity, and Pursuits.)

52. The Jingling Match.

At a village fair we may behold a jingling match in all its glory. It is a quaint game, immensely amusing to look at. A large roped ring is made, into which are introduced a dozen or so of big boys and young men who mean to play; these are carefully blinded and turned loose into the ring, and then a man is introduced not blindfolded, with a bell hung round his neck, and his two hands tied behind him. Of course every time he moves, the bell must ring, as he has no hand to hold it, and so the dozen blindfolded men have to catch him. This they cannot always manage, if he is a lively fellow, but half of them always rush into the arms of the other half, or drive their heads together, or tumble over; and then the crowd laughs vehemently, and invents nicknames for them on the spur of the moment, and they, if they be chóleric, tear off the handkerchiefs which blind them, and not unfrequently pitch into one another, each thinking that the other must have run against him on purpose. It is great fun to look at a jingling-match certainly, which you may guess from the shouts of laughter breaking forth now and then from the juvenile by-standers, when a particular fit is performed. Hughes.

53. A Rowing Match on the Thames.

A well-contested rowing-match on the Thames is a very lively and interesting scene. The water is studded with boats of all sorts, kinds, and descriptions; places in the coal-barges at the different wharfs are let to crowds of spectators, beer and tabacco flow freely about; men, women,

and children wait for the start in breathless expectation, cutters of six and eight oars glide gently up and down, waiting to accompany their *protégés* during the race; bands of music add to the animation, if not to the harmony of the scene, groups of watermen are assembled at the different stairs, discussing the merits of the respective candidates: and the prize wherry which is rowed slowly about by a pair of sculls, is an object of general interest.

Two o'clock strikes, and every body looks anxiously in the direction of the bridge through which the candidates for the prize will come—half-past two, and the general attention which has been preserved so long begins to flag, when suddenly a gun is heard, and the noise of distant hurra'ing along each bank of the river — every head is bent forward — the noise draws nearer — the boats which have been waiting at the bridge start briskly up the river, and a well-manned galley shoots through the arch, the sitters cheering on the boats behind them, which are not yet visible.

"Here they are," is the general cry — and through darts the first boat, the men in her, stripped to the skin, and exerting every muscle to preserve the advantage they have gained — four other boats follow close astern; there are not two boats' length between them — the shouting is tremendous, and the interest intense. "Go on, Pink" — "Give it her, Red" — "Sulliwin for ever" — "Bravo! George" — "Now, Tom, now — now — now — why don't your partner stretch out?" — "Two pots to a pint on Yellow," etc. etc. Every little public-house fires its gun, and hoists its flag; and the men who win the heat, come in, amidst a splashing and shouting, and banging and confusion, which no one can imagine who has not witnessed it, and of which any description would convey a very faint idea.

Ch. Dickens.

54. Hunting-Song.

Waken, Lords and Ladies gay,
On the mountain dawns the day;
All the jolly chase is here,
With hawk, and horse, and hunting-spear.
Hounds are in their couples yelling,
Hawks are whistling, horns are knelling;
Merrily, merrily mingle they,
"Waken, Lords and Ladies gay!"

Waken, Lords and Ladies gay,
The mist has left the mountain gray;
Springlets in the dawn are steaming,
Diamonds on the brake are gleaming;
And foresters have busy been
To track the buck in thicket green;
Now we come to chant our lay,
"Waken, Lords and Ladies gay!"

Waken, Lords and Ladies gay,
To the greenwood haste away;
We can show you where he lies,
Fleet of foot, and tall of size;
We can show the marks he made,
When 'gainst the oak his antlers fray'd;
You shall see him brought to bay;
"Waken, Lords and Ladies gay!"

Louder, louder chant the lay,
Waken, Lords and Ladies gay!
Tell them youth, and mirth, and glee
Run a course, as well as we;
Time, stern huntsman! who can baulk—
Stanch as hound, as fleet as hawk!
Think of this, and rise with day,
Gentle Lords and Ladies gay!

W. Scott.

55. Morning Hymn of Adam and Eve in Paradise.

(From Paradise Lost.)

These are thy glorious works, Parent of good,
Almighty! Thine this universal frame,
Thus wondrous fair: Thyself how wondrous then!
Unspeakable, who sitt'st above these heavens,
To us invisible, or dimly seen
In these thy lowest works;—yet these declare
Thy goodness beyond thought, and power divine.
Speak, ye who best can tell, ye sons of light,
Angels; for ye behold Him, and with songs
And choral symphonies, day without night,
Circle his throne rejoicing; ye in heaven,
On earth join all ye creatures to extol
Him first, Him last, Him midst, and without end.
Fairest of stars, last in the train of night,
If better thou belong not to the dawn,

Sure pledge of day, that crown'st the smiling morn
With thy bright circlet, praise Him in thy sphere,
While day arises, that sweet hour of prime.
Thou Sun, of this great world both eye and soul,
Acknowledge Him thy greater, sound his praise
In thy eternal course, both when thou climb'st,
And when high noon hast gain'd, and when thou fall'st.
Moon, that now meet'st the orient sun, now fly'st
With the fix'd stars, fix'd in their orb that flies;
And ye five other wand'ring fires,[1] that move
In mystic dance not without song, resound
His praise, who out of darkness call'd up light.
Air, and ye Elements, the eldest birth
Of Nature's womb, that in quaternion run
Perpetual circle, multiform; and mix
And nourish all things; let your ceaseless change
Vary to our great Maker still new praise.
Ye Mists and Exhalations, that now rise
From hill or steaming lake, dusky or gray,
Till the sun paint your fleecy skirts with gold,
In honour to the world's great Author rise;
Whether to deck with clouds th'uncolour'd sky,
Or wet the thirsty earth with falling showers,
Rising or falling, still advance his praise.
His praise, ye Winds, that from four quarters blow,
Breathe soft or loud; and wave your tops, ye Pines,
With every plant, in sign of worship wave.
Fountains, and ye that warble, as ye flow,
Melodious murmurs, warbling, tune his praise.
Join voices, all ye living Souls: ye Birds,
That singing up to heaven-gate ascend,
Bear on your wings and in your notes his praise.
Ye that in waters glide, and ye that walk
The earth, and stately tread, or lowly creep;
Witness if I be silent, morn or even,
To hill or valley, fountain or fresh shade,
Made vocal by my song, and taught his praise.
Hail, universal Lord, be bounteous still
To give us only good; and if the night
Have gather'd aught of evil or conceal'd,
Disperse it, as now light dispels the dark.

Milton.

[1] The five planets visible to the naked eye, known in ancient times: Mercury, Vēnus, Mars, Jupiter, and Saturn.

56. Rural Life in England.

The stranger who would form a correct opinion of the English character, must not confine his observations to the metropolis. He must go forth into the country; he must sojourn in villages and hamlets; he must visit castles, villas, farm-houses, cottages; he must wander through parks and gardens; along hedges and green lanes; he must loiter about country churches; attend wakes and fairs, and other rural festivals; and cope with the people in all their conditions, and all their habits and humours.

In some countries the large cities absorb the wealth and fashion of the nation; they are the only fixed abodes of elegant and intelligent society, and the country is inhabited almost entirely by boorish peasantry. In England, on the contrary, the metropolis is a mere gathering place, or general rendezvous, of the polite classes, where they devote a small portion of the year to a hurry of gaiety and dissipation, and having indulged this carnival, return again to the apparently more congenial habits of rural life. The various orders of society are therefore diffused over the whole surface of the kingdom, and the most retired neighbourhoods afford specimens of the different ranks.

The English, in fact, are strongly gifted with the rural feeling. They possess a quick sensibility to the beauties of nature, and a keen relish for the pleasures and employments of the country. This passion seems inherent in them. Even the inhabitants of cities, born and brought up among brick walls and bustling streets, enter with facility into rural habits, and evince a turn for rural occupation. The merchant has his snug retreat in the vicinity of the metropolis, where he often displays as much pride and zeal in the cultivation of his flower-garden, and the maturing of his fruits, as he does in the conduct of his business, and the success of his commercial enterprises. Even those less fortunate individuals, who are doomed to pass their lives in the midst of din and traffic, contrive to have something that shall remind them of the green aspect of nature. In the most dark and dingy quarters of the city, the drawing-room window resembles frequently a bank of flowers; every spot capable of vegetation has its grass-plot and flower-bed; and every square its mimic park, laid out with picturesque taste, and gleaming with refreshing verdure.

Those who see the Englishman only in town, are apt to form an unfavourable opinion of his social character. He

is either absorbed in business, or distracted by the thousand engagements that dissipate time, thought, and feeling, in this huge metropolis. He has, therefore, too commonly a look of hurry and abstraction. Wherever he happens to be, he is on the point of going somewhere else; at the moment he is talking on one subject, his mind is wandering to another; and while paying a friendly visit, he is calculating how he shall economize time so as to pay the other visits allotted to the morning. An immense metropolis like London is calculated to make men selfish and uninteresting. In their casual and transient meetings, they can but deal briefly in common-places. They presént but the cold superficies of character — its rich and genial qualities have no time to be warmed into a flow.

It is in the country that the Englishman gives scope to his natural feelings. He breaks loose gladly from the cold formalities and negative civilities of town; throws off his habits of shy reserve, and becomes joyous and free-hearted. He manages to collect round him all the conveniences and elegancies of polite life, and to banish its restraints. His country seat abounds with every requisite, either for studious retirement, tasteful gratification, or rural exercise. Books, paintings, music, horses, dogs, and sporting implements of all kinds, are at hand. He puts no constraint, either upon his guests or himself, but in the true spirit of hospitality provides the means of enjoyment, and leaves every one to partake according to his inclination.

The taste of the English in the cultivation of land, and in what is called landscape gardening, is unrivalled. They have studied nature intently, and discover an exquisite sense of her beautiful forms and harmonious combinations. Those charms, which in other countries she lavishes in wild solitudes, are here assembled round the haunts of domestic life. They seem to have caught her coy and furtive graces, and spread them, like witchery, about their rural abodes.

Nothing can be more imposing than the magnificence of English park scenery. Vast lawns that extend like sheets of vivid green, with here and there clumps of gigantic trees, heaping up rich piles of foliage. The solemn pomp of groves and woodland glades, with the deer trooping in silent herds across them; the hare, bounding away to the covert; or the pheasant, suddenly bursting upon the wing. The brook, taught to wind in the most natural meanderings, or expand into a glassy lake — the sequestered pool, reflecting the quivering trees, with the yellow leaf sleeping on its bosom,

and the trout roaming fearlessly about its limpid waters; while some rustic temple or sylvan statue, grown green and dank with age, gives an air of classic sanctity to the seclusion.

The residence of people of fortune and refinement in the country has diffused a degree of taste and elegance in rural economy, that descends to the lowest class. The very labourer, with his thatched cottage and narrow slip of ground, attends to their embellishment. The trim hedge, the grass-plot before the door, the little flower-bed bordered with snug box, the woodbine trained up against the wall, and hanging its blossoms about the lattice; the pot of flowers in the window, the holly providently planted about the house, to cheat winter of its dreariness, and throw in a semblance of green summer to cheer the fireside; all these bespeak the influence of taste, flowing down from high sources, and pervading the lowest levels of the public mind. If ever Love, as poets sing, delights to visit a cottage, it must be the cottage of an English peasant.

The fondness for rural life among the higher classes of the English has had a great and salutary effect upon the national character. I do not know a finer race of men than the English gentlemen. Instead of the softness and effeminacy which characterize the men of rank in most countries, they exhibit a union of elegance and strength, a robustness of frame and freshness of complexion, which I am inclined to attribute to their living so much in the open air, and pursuing so eagerly the invigorating recreations of the country. These hardy exercises produce also a healthful tone of mind and spirits, and a manliness and simplicity of manners, which even the follies and dissipations of the town cannot easily pervert; and can never entirely destroy. In the country, too, the different orders of society seem to approach more freely, to be more disposed to blend and operate favourably upon each other. The distinctions between them do not appear to be so marked and impassable as in the cities. The manner in which property has been distributed into small estates and farms, has established a regular gradation from the nobleman, through the classes of gentry, small landed proprietors, and substantial farmers, down to the labouring peasantry, and while it has thus banded the extremes of society together, has infused into each intermediate rank a spirit of independence. This, it must be confessed, is not so universally the case at present as it was formerly: the larger estates having, in late years of distress, absorbed

the smaller, and, in some parts of the country, almost annihilated the sturdy race of small farmers. These, however, I believe, are but casual breaks in the general system I have mentioned.

In rural occupation there is nothing mean and debasing. It leads a man forth among scenes of natural grandeur and beauty; it leaves him to the workings of his own mind, operated upon by the purest and most elevating of external influences. Such a man may be simple and rough, but he cannot be vulgar. The man of refinement, therefore, finds nothing revolting in an intercourse with the lower orders of rural life, as he does when he casually mingles with the lower orders of cities. He lays aside his distance and reserve, and is glad to waive the distinctions of rank, and to enter into the honest heartfelt enjoyments of common life. Indeed, the very amusements of the country bring men more and more together; and the sound of hound and horn blend all feelings into harmony.

The great charm, however, of English scenery is the moral feeling that seems to pervade it. It is associated in the mind with ideas of order, of quiet, of sober, well-established principles, of hoary usage and reverend custom. Every thing seems to be the growth of ages of regular and peaceful existence. The old church of remote architecture, with its low massive portal; its Gothic tower; its windows rich with tracery and painted glass; its stately monuments of warriors and worthies of the olden time, ancestors of the present lords of the soil; its tombstones, recording successive generations of sturdy yeomanry, whose progeny still plough the same fields, and kneel at the same altar. — The parsonage, a quaint irregular pile, partly antiquated, but repaired and altered in the tastes of various ages and occupants — the stile and footpath leading from the churchyard, across pleasant fields, and along shady hedgerows, according to an immemorable right of way — the neighbouring village, with its venerable cottages, its public green sheltered by trees, under which the forefathers of the present race have sported — the antique family mansion, standing apart in some little rural domain, but looking down with a protecting air on the surrounding scene; — all these common features of English landscape evince a calm and settled security, an hereditary transmission of home-bred virtues and local attachments, that speak deeply and touchingly for the moral character of the nation.

It is a pleasing sight on a Sunday morning, when the bell is sending its sober melody across the quiet fields, to behold the peasantry in their best finery, with ruddy faces and modest cheerfulness, thronging tranquilly along the green lanes to church; but it is still more pleasing to see them in the evenings, gathering about their cottage doors, and appearing to exult in the humble comforts and embellishments which their own hands have spread around them.

W. Irving (Abridged from the Sketch-Book).

57. English Formality.

Two Englishmen were shipwrecked an cast ashore on a desert island. They had to hunt for their meals all over the islands; but they could not talk to one another because they had not been introduced. And so they settled without word of mouth that one of them was to take the north half of the island, the other the south half. Now on the north side there were plenty of oisters, but the man who had that part of the island did not like oisters. The south side swarmed with turtle—they covered they whole beach, but the man who had the south side, couldn't eat turtle—it made him sick. So of course they envied one another very much, and they thought how pleasant it would have been, if they had been introduced to one another on board the ship, and how pleasantly they would have got on together, if it hadn't been for the rules of etiquette. One day, when they were out hunting, one of them overheard the other talking to himself, and wondering what had become of his old schoolfellows Brown and Jones, and little Robinson, and the rest. When the other one heard the name Robinson, he was very much pleased, because he and Robinson had been at school together. So he went straight up to him, and turned very read, hesitated a little and cleared his throat, and then said: "I beg your pardon, I hope I'm not too bold, but you just now mentioned a name I used to know very well, you spoke of Robinson, I happened to be within hearing. You know him?" — "Yes, extremely well." — "Allow me, so do I." — This was enough, they were introduced, because they both knew Robinson. They were now able to feast on each other's oisters and turtle. And they soon became such good friends that they were together all day, and were quite sorry when they had to part at night and looked forward to nothing so much as to meeting again next morning; they sang songs to one another and they told each other funny stories and on several occasions too they saved each other's lives.

Sweet (Elementarbuch).

58. English Customs.

1. *Christmas.* — The Christmas holidays are for England what Carnival time is for the Catholic countries of the Continent. The season practically commences with Christmas Eve, and ends with the first of February. The whole of the season is a jovial one, abounding in entertainments and merry-makings of all sorts. Two popular observances belonging to Christmas are especially derived from the worship of our pagan ancestors — *the hanging up of the mistletoe,* and *the burning of the Yule log.* As regards the former of these practices, it is well known that in the religion of the Druids, the mistletoe was regarded with the utmost veneration. At the period of the winter solstice a great festival being celebrated in honour of the Sun, and the mistletoe, when found growing on the oak, being sacred to that god, the hanging up of that parasitic shrub at that particular time becomes quite natural. The burning of the Yule log, on the other hand, is an ancient Christmas ceremony transmitted to us from our Scandinavian ancestors, who at their feast of Juul, about our present Christmas time, used to kindle huge bonfires in honour of their god Thor.

Roast beef and plum-pudding is the old-fashioned Christmas dinner, and many people would scarcely think Christmas was really come, if they did not make mince pies for the occasion. Mince pie is generally made of boiled beef, suet, raisins, currants, and apples, chopped up together with candied lemon peel, sugar, nutmeg, cloves, and cinnamon. Some brandy is poured in, and then the whole is baked in a rich paste.

Very much, however, things have changed from what they used to be in feudal times, when Christmas time was an almost unintermitted round of feasting and jollity. Rude and unrefined as these times were, they were certainly distinguished by a hearty and profuse hospitality. During the Christmas holidays open-house was kept, and for a fortnight and upwards, nothing was heard of but revelry and feasting. The grand feast, however, given by the feudal chieftain to his friends and retainers, took place with great pomp and circumstance on Christmas-day. Among the dishes served upon this important occasion, the *boar's head* was first at the feast and foremost on the board. Heralded by a jubilant flourish of trumpets, and by strains of merry minstrelsy, it was carried on a dish of gold or silver — for no meaner metal would suffice — into the banqueting hall by

the sewer, who, as he advanced at the head of the stately procession of nobles, knights, and ladies, sang a spirited song. Thereupon the brawner's head was placed upon the table with a solemn gravity befitting the dignity of such a noble dish.

Chambers's *Book of Days.*

2. *Twelfth Day* is the twelfth day after Christmas day, and used to be kept as a feast more than it is now. The custom of making merry with twelfth cakes is derived from the feasts of Saturn, called Saturnalia. It was a sacrifice to Janus, a god of the Romans, from whom the month of January takes its name. The Roman conquerors introduced this practice into Britain; it was celebrated by them in December. The utmost liberty prevailed at that time; all was mirth and festivity: friends made presents to each other; schools were closed; the senate did not sit; no war was proclaimed; no criminal was executed; slaves were permitted to jest with their masters, and were even waited on at table by them. Such were the practices of the heathen!

In the towns of England, the confectioners pile up their windows with rich cakes, covered over with iced sugar; these cakes are ornamented with figures, flowers, and fruit, and one, generally, is bought to put before the parties invited to spend the day. Pictures of different characters are drawn on paper, such as kings, queens, soldiers, sailors, milkmaids, farmers, and so on, and the young people draw for them. Whatever character any one draws, he or she must act the part of that character till the party breaks up; this occasions a great deal of diversion. Thus a vast quantity of cake is annually consumed on the 6th of January, and all the juvenile branches of families are supposed to derive much pleasure and gratification from the ceremony of choosing king and queen.

3. On *Valentine's Day*, the 14th of February every year, young persons amuse themselves in choosing valentines, or particular friends for the year. This is done by sending letters to one another, generally in verse, with a drawing; many of these are very nonsenscical.

4. *Shrove Tuesday* is the day before Lent. It is called Shrove Tuesday, because, in old times, the people used to shrive, or confess their sins to the priests, on that day, that they might keep Lent more strictly. On this day it is a custom with the people to eat pancakes and fritters.

5. *April Fool Day*, the first of the month, may perhaps be kept up for many years to come, but I never could find

out what was the origin of the custom practised on that day. No sooner it appears do young persons, and many grown people too, rise up in the morning, on the first day of April, than they begin to put some joke or other upon those around them, sending them on fruitless errands, or calling them to look at something, when there is nothing to look at.

6. On *Good Friday*, a movable feast of the Church of England, held in commemoration of the day on which the Saviour is supposed to have suffered, buns, made rather sweet, with caraway seeds in them, are much eaten: they are marked with a cross, no doubt in remembrance of the cross of Calvary, and as they are usually eaten hot, so they are called hot cross buns. Thousands upon thousands of them are sold and eaten on Good Friday.

7. *May Day*, the first day of the month, and of summer, according to popular notions, is one of the liveliest of the year, for great numbers walk abroad, early in the morning, while the sun is shining and the lark singing, to go a maying, as it is called, that is, to gather May flowers; they generally bring home a sprig, and many bring a bough of the hawthorn in blossom. In country places, too, a tall Maypole is set up, adorned with garlands of flowers, for the village people to dance round. London in olden times abounded with Maypoles, which were called shafts. A shaft or Maypole was kept in the vicinity of the church of St. Andrew Undershaft, in an alley called Shaft Alley; and on the first of May it was brought out, dressed with flowers and birds' eggs, and reared up close to the church, amid the shouts and rejoicings of the onlookers.

The gayest scene of all on May Day now, is, perhaps, that of the dancing chimney-sweepers. Go where you will, in towns, you are sure to meet them. There is a tale told about a great family having had a child kidnapped, who was afterwards sent to sweep a chimney at the house of his parents: notwithstanding his black face, his brush, and his soot-bag, he was discovered, and some say that it is in remembrance of this circumstance that chimney-sweepers dance on May Day. I, however, know nothing about the truth of the matter.

At an early hour on May Day, the different parties of chimney-sweepers set off to go round the neighbourhood, kicking up a strange clatter, and dancing at every house. All their faces are painted in an odd way, and their clothes are

odder still. They are dressed up in strips of paper, and shreds of linen, of all the colours of the rainbow, with caps of the same kind on their heads. One carries a dust-pan and a brush, which he knocks together. Another shakes and rattles two hard dry bones between his fingers, and makes noise enough to be heard half a mile off. A third jingles a steel triangle. A fourth, dressed like a woman, has a salt-box and a wooden spoon; and what with the clattering of the spoon and the box lid, you hardly know how to bear the noise. But the oddest figure of all is what is called Jack in the Green; this is a boy or a man in the very middle of large boughs of laurel, who whirls round and round like a top. Well! all these keep hopping, and jumping, and turning round together, making as much noise as they can, and then handing a ladle with a long handle to the windows and doors of the houses for money. A round sum they get in the course of the day, I assure you, and glad enough are they at night, to get to bed after their hard day's dancing.

8. *The Fifth of November.* — In almost eyery town, early in the morning of the fifth of November, boys are heard laughing and huzzaing. Here a group is seen going one way, and there a party trudging another. Every party of boys has a figure called Guy Fawkes, dressed up in an odd fashion with a mask for a face. This figure is usually seated on a chair, and carried from house to house, the boys rapping at the doors and bidding the "good people remember, the fifth of November, for the gunpowder plot, should never be forgot". Thus they collect money, which enables them to buy fireworks to be let off at night at their bonfires. Every time the party receives a penny, the boys set up a huzza and hurry off, carrying Guy Fawkes with them, to the next house.

Throughout the day, boys are employed going about in all directions to pick up sticks and wood, and to beg coals to make their bonfires. On these occasions, they are often very mischievous, and think but little of breaking off branches of trees, pulling sticks out of the hedges, and running off, when they can, with an old rail or broken palisade. All the fuel that they can get is heaped up to be ready, and in the evening, look whichever way you will, smoke ascends, and flames burst forth from their bonfires.

When it gets dark, they begin to let off their fireworks; and what with the smoke, the flame, and the sparks

from the blazing wood, the report of guns and pistols, the squibs and the crackers hissing and bouncing around you, and the huzzaing of the throng, it forms one of the liveliest scenes in the world. The figure of Guy Fawkes is sometimes put upon the flames and burnt. As the fire burns lower, some stand round it to warm themselves; some roast chestnuts or potatoes in the hot ashes; while others run about with blazing sticks, whirling them round and round in the air. At last, when the squibs and crackers are all let off, the chestnuts and potatoes roasted and eaten, and the fire is got quite low, the red ashes are kicked about, and the young people, by degrees, walk away to their several homes.

9. *Lord Mayor's Day.* — There is a gay day in London, called *Lord Mayor's Day:* I will tell you why it is so called. On that day the lord mayor takes upon himself the honours and duties of his high situation. Off he sets in a grand barge, attended by the liveries of several of the city companies, to go to the barons at Westminster. Well! after being presented there, he takes the oath of office. O, if you were to see the river Thames on that day, you would never forget it! There sail along the splendid barges, while the flags are floating in the air; the music playing, and the people in boats, or crowding together on the bridges, waving their hats and handkerchiefs, or shouting, just as they please. At Blackfriars' Bridge, the whole party leaves the water and gets again into the grand carriages, in order to dine at Guildhall. The sheriff's carriage is very grand, but the state carriage of the lord mayor is much grander. It appears as if it was made on purpose to be looked at. The panels are ornamented with costly paintings, and every other part of the carriage is decorated or gilt in the most magnificient manner. Fancy that you see this splendid carriage, and a great number of others with the richest liveries; the city companies in procession; men in armour on horseback, with bands of music, and flags flying; fancy these things, and that you see all London collected together, crushing, cramming, shouting, laughing, and squealing, and then you will be able to form some notion of the pageant of Lord Mayor's Day. The earliest Lord Mayor's pageant on record is that which took place on the occasion of the passage of King Henry III. and Eleanor of Provence through the city of Westminster in 1236. P. Parley.

59. The Village Preacher.

(From The Deserted Village.)

Near yonder copse where once a garden smiled,
And still where many a garden-flower grows wild,
There, where a few torn shrubs the place disclose,
The village preacher's modest mansion rose.
A man he was to all the country dear,
And passing rich with forty pounds a year;
Remote from towns he ran his godly race,
Nor e'er had changed, nor wish'd to change his place;
Unpractised he to fawn, or seek for power,
By doctrines fashion'd to the varying hour;
Far other aims his heart had learn'd to prize,
More skill'd to raise the wretched than to rise.
His house was known to all the vagrant train,
He chid their wand'rings, but relieved their pain,
The long-remember'd beggar was his guest,
Whose beard, descending, swept his aged breast,
The ruin'd spendthrift, now no longer proud,
Claim'd kindred there, and had his claim allow'd;
The broken soldier, kindly bade to stay,
Sat by his fire, and talk'd the night away;
Wept o'er his wounds, or, tales of sorrow done,
Shoulder'd his crutch, and show'd how field's were won.
Pleased with his guests, the good man learn'd to glow,
And quite forgot their vices in their woe;
Careless their merits or their faults to scan,
His pity gave ere charity began.
 Thus to relieve the wretched was his pride,
And e'en his failings lean'd to virtue's side;
But in his duty prompt at every call,
He watch'd and wept, he pray'd and felt for all:
And, as a bird each fond endearment tries,
To tempt its new fledged offspring to the skies,
He tried each art, reproved each dull delay,
Allured to brighter worlds, and led the way.
 Beside the bed where parting life was laid,
And sorrow, guilt, and pain by turns dismay'd,
The reverend champion stood. At his control
Despair and anguish fled the struggling soul;
Comfort came down, the trembling wretch to raise
And his last faltering accents whisper'd praise.
 At church, with meek and unaffected grace,
His looks adorn'd the venerable place;

Truth from his lips prevail'd with double sway,
And fools, who came to scoff, remain'd to pray.
The service past, around the pious man,
With steady zeal, each honest rustic ran;
E'en children follow'd, with endearing wile,
And pluck'd his gown, to share the good man's smile.
His ready smile a parent's warmth express'd,
Their welfare pleased him, and their cares distress'd;
To them his heart, his love, his griefs were given,
But all his serious thoughts had rest in heaven.
As some tall cliff, that lifts its awful form,
Swells from the vale, and midway leaves the storm;
Though round its breast the rolling clouds are spread,
Eternal sunshine settles on its head.

Goldsmith.

60. The Village Blacksmith.

Under a spreading chestnut tree
 The village smithy stands;
The smith, a mighty man is he,
 With large and sinewy hands;
And the muscles of his brawny arms
 Are strong as iron bands.

His hair is crisp, and black, and long;
 His face is like the tan;
His brow is wet with honest sweat;
 He earns whate'er he can;
And looks the whole world in the face,
 For he owes not any man.

Week in, week out, from morn till night,
 You can hear his bellows blow;
You can hear him swing his heavy sledge,
 With measured beat and slow,
Like a sexton ringing the village bell,
 When the evening sun is low.

And children coming home from school
 Look in at the open door;
They love to see the flaming forge,
 And hear the bellows roar,
And catch the burning sparks that fly
 Like chaff from a thrashing floor.

He goes on Sunday to the church,
 And sits among his boys;
He hears the parson pray and preach;
 He hears his daughter's voice
Singing in the village choir,
 And it makes his heart rejoice.

It sounds to him like her mother's voice,
 Singing in Paradise!
He needs must think of her once more,
 How in the grave she lies;
And with his hard rough hand he wipes
 A tear out of his eyes.

Toiling, rejoicing, sorrowing,
 Onward through life he goes:
Each morning sees some task begin,
 Each evening sees its close:
Something attempted, something done,
 Has earn'd a night's repose.

Thanks, thanks to thee, my worthy friend,
 For the lesson thou hast taught!
Thus at the flaming forge of life
 Our fortunes must be wrought;
Thus on its sounding anvil shaped
 Each burning deed and thought.

Longfellow.

61. Historical Survey up to the Year 1066.

The earliest known inhabitants of Britain or Albion[1] belonged to the Celtic race, spread over the western parts of Europe. They were a predatory nation, and divided into two great branches, the Gael and the Cymry, the former inhabiting the Highlands of Scotland and Ireland, the latter the principality of Wales. Their religion was a kind of paganism, called Druidism; their chief sanctuary was the Isle of Mona, now Anglesea. Traces of their customs and worship still linger in England[2] and relics of their race are found in Wales, the Highlands of Scotland, the western and southern parts of Ireland, and the Isle of Man, where Celtic dialects continue to be spoken to the present day.

[1] Albion, a Celtic word, meaning "White Island", connected with "albus" and "Alp".

[2] The "May-day"; the fires of "Midsummer-eve"; "Harvest-home"; the cutting of the "Mistletoe".

These ancient inhabitants came for the first time into contact with a civilized nation in the year 55 B. C., when Julius Cæsar invaded their country with two of his legions. After many bloody battles, the Celts were at last overcome by the Romans and their country made a Roman province by Agricola (78—85 A. D.). Frequent inroads, however, from the northern tribes, and troubles from the Barbarians at home, caused the Emperor Honorius to withdraw his legions[1] in 409, after a dominion of about 400 years.

After the departure of the Romans, the Picts and Scots descended from their mountainous regions to harass the romanized parts of the population. They called to their assistance the warlike race of the Saxon pirates or "sea-kings", who came from their homes in Jutland, Sleswic, and Holstein to subdue the invaders and gradually conquer the lowland territory for themselves. According to legendary traditions these new invaders, Angles, Saxons, and Jutes, were opposed by Arthur, king of South-Wales. However, in the course of time, they founded seven kingdoms, called the "Saxon Heptarchy"; one of the seven kings, the wisest and mightest, called "Bretwalda" (powerful king), had the ascendency over the rest.

In 596, St. Augustine, sent by Pope Gregory the Great, introduced Christianity among the Anglo-Saxons; the Celts had turned Christians before; in 827 Egbert, king of the West-Saxons, united the seven kingdoms into one. From this time till the middle of the 11th century, English history is full of fierce strife and bloodshed. Scandinavian freebooters, especially the Danes, made frequent inroads into England, trying to subdue the country, and succeeded to conquer a district on the eastern coast, reaching from the Thames to the Tweed, the "Danelagh".[2]

The brightest figure of these times is Aelfred the Great (871—901), grandson of Egbert. After several battles and defeats, he forced the Danes to acknowledge his authority. He greatly improved the material and intellectual condition of his people, built strong castles and made a division of the lands. His son Edward I. assumed the title of "King of the Anglo-Saxons" and is the reputed founder of the University of Cambridge.

Under the following kings, the Danes renewed their ravages, and in the year 1016, Canute established the Danish

[1] Alaric, king of the Visigoths, conquers Rome 410.

[2] Daneleah, from leah (to lay), a camp.

rule in England. However, already with **Edward the Confessor** (1042—1066) the Saxon line was restored, until in 1066 England was conquered by **William, Duke of Normandy.**

J. Bierbaum (History of the English Language and Literature).

62. Britain and the Britons.

The whole country was covered with forests, and swamps. The greater part of it was very misty and cold. There were no roads, no bridges, no streets, no houses that you would think deserving of the name. A town was nothing but a collection of straw-covered huts, hidden in a thick wood, with a ditch all round, and a low wall, made of mud, or the trunks of trees placed one upon another. The people planted little or no corn, but lived upon the flesh of their flocks and cattle. They made no coins, but used metal rings for money. They were clever in basket-work, as savage people often are; and they could make a coarse kind of cloth; and some very bad earthenware. But in building fortresses they were much more clever.

They made boats of basket-work, covered with the skins of animals, but seldom, if ever, ventured far from the shore. They made swords, of copper mixed with tin; but, these swords were of an awkward shape, and so soft that a heavy blow would bend one. They made light shields, short pointed daggers, and spears which they jerked back after they had thrown them at an enemy, by a long strip of leather fastened to the stem. The butt-end was a rattle, to frighten an enemy's horse. The ancient Britons, being divided into as many as thirty or forty tribes, each commanded by its own little King, were constantly fighting with one another, as savage people usually do; and they always fought with these weapons.

They were very fond of horses. The standard of Kent was the picture of a white horse. They could break them in and manage them wonderfully well. Indeed, the horses (of which they had an abundance, though they were rather small) were so well taught in those days that they can scarcely be said to have improved since; though the men are so much wiser. They understood, and obeyed, every word of command, and would stand still by themselves, in all the din and noise of battle, while their masters went to fight on foot. The Britons could not have succeeded in their most remarkable art, without the aid of these sensible and

trusty animals. The art I mean, is the construction and management of war-chariots or cars, for which they have ever been celebrated in history. Each of the best sort of these chariots, not quite breast high in front, and open at the back, contained one man to drive, and two or three others to fight—all standing up. The horses who drew them were so well trained, that they would tear, at full gallop, over the most stony ways, and even through the woods; dashing down their masters' enemies beneath their hoofs, and cutting them to pieces with the blades of swords, or scythes, which were fastened to the wheels, and stretched out beyond the car on each side, for that cruel purpose. In a moment, while at full speed, the horses would stop, at the driver's command. The men within would leap out, deal blows about them with their swords like hail, leap on the horses, on the pole, spring back into the chariots anyhow; and, as soon as they were safe, the horses tore away again.

The Britons had a strange and terrible religion, called the religion of the Druids. It seems to have been brought over, in very early times indeed, from the opposite country of France, anciently called Gaul, and to have mixed up the worship of the Serpent, and of the Sun and Moon, with the worship of some of the Heathen Gods and Goddesses. Most of its ceremonies were kept secret by the priests, the Druids, who pretended to be enchanters, and who carried magicians' wands, and wore, each of them, about his neck, what he told the ignorant people was a Serpent's egg in a golden case. But it is certain that the Druidical ceremonies included the sacrifies of human victims, the torture of some suspected criminals, and, on particular occasions, even the burning alive, in immense wicker cages, of a number of men and animals together. The Druid Priests had some kind of veneration for the Oak, and for the mistletoe — the same plant that we hang up in houses at Christmas Time now — when its white berries grew upon the Oak. They met together in dark woods, which they called Sacred Groves; and there they instructed, in their mysterious arts, young men who came to them as pupils, and who sometimes stayed with them as long as twenty years.

These Druids built great Temples and altars, open to the sky, of which some are yet remaining. Stonehenge, on Salisbury Plain, in Wiltshire, is the most extraordinary of these. Three curious stones, called Kits Coty House, on Bluebell Hill, near Maidstone, in Kent, form another. We know, from examination of the great blocks of which such buildings

are made, that they could not have been raised without the aid of some ingenious machines, which are common now, but which the ancient Britons certainly did not use in making their own uncomfortable houses. I should not wonder if the Druids and their pupils who stayed twenty years, knowing more than the rest of the Britons, kept the people out of sight while they made these buildings, and then pretended that they built them by magic. Ch. Dickens.

63. Origin of the English Nation.

The great-grandsons of those who had fought under William and the great-grandsons of those who had fought under Harold began to draw near each other in friendship; and the first pledge of their reconciliation was the Great Charter,[1] won by their united exertions, and framed for their common benefit.

Here commences the history of the English nation. The history of the preceding events is the history of wrongs inflicted and sustained by various tribes, which indeed all dwelt on English ground, but which regarded each other with aversion such as has scarcely ever existed between communities separated by physical barriers. For even the mutual animosity of countries at war with each other is languid when compared with the animosity of nations, which, morally separated, are yet locally intermingled. In no country has the enmity of race been carried farther than in England. In no country has that enmity been more completely effaced. The stages of the process by which the hostile elements were melted down into one homogeneous mass are not accurately known to us. But it is certain that when John became King, the distinction between Saxons and Normans was strongly marked, and that before the end of the reign of his grandson it had almost disappeared. In the time of Richard the First, the ordinary imprecation of a Norman gentleman was, "May I become an Englishman!"—his ordinary form of indignant denial was, "Do you take me for an Englishman?" The descendant of such a gentleman a hundred years later was proud of the English name.

The sources of the noblest rivers which spread fertility over continents, and bear richly-laden fleets to the sea, are to be sought in wild and barren mountain tracts, incorrectly laid down in maps, and rarely explored by travellers. To

[1] The Great Charter or Magna Charta, an instrument wrenched from King John by the barons at Runnymede near Windsor on the 15th June 1815, is considered as the chief foundation of the constitutional liberties of the people of England.

such a tract, the history of our country during the thirteenth century may not unaptly be compared. Sterile and obscure as is that portion of our annals, it is there that we must seek for the origin of our freedom, our prosperity, and our glory. Then it was that the great English people was formed, that the national character began to exhibit those peculiarities which it has ever since retained, and that our fathers became emphatically islanders,—islanders not merely in geographical position, but in their politics, their feelings, and their manners Then first appeared with distinctness that constitution which has ever since, through all changes, preserved its identity; that constitution of which all the other free constitutions in the world are copies, and which, in spite of some defects, deserves to be regarded as the best under which any great society has ever yet existed during many ages. Then it was that the House of Commons, the archetype of all the representative assemblies which now meet, either in the old or in the new world, held its first sittings. Then it was that the common law rose to the dignity of a science, and rapidly became a not unworthy rival of the imperial jurisprudence. Then it was that the courage of those sailors who manned the rude barks of the Cinque Ports[1] first made the flag of England terrible on the seas. Then it was that the most ancient colleges which still exist at both the great national seats of learning[2] were founded. Then was formed that language, less musical, indeed, than the languages of the south, but in force, in richness, in aptitude for all the highest purposes of the poet, the philosopher, and the orator, inferior to the tongue of Greece alone. Then, too, appeared the first faint dawn of that noble literature, the most splendid and the most durable of the many glories of England.

Macaulay.

64. Growth of the English Language and Literature.

The language of the ancient Britons was divided into two branches, the Gælic or the Erse (Ireland, Scotland, Isle of Man), and the Cymric or Welsh (Wales, Cornwales,

[1] Since William the Conqueror, the name of the five most important English harbours, now mostly covered with sand: Dover, Sandwich, Hastings, Romney, and Hythe, to which later were added those of Winchelsea and Rye. They may be considered as the cradle of the English naval power; in consequence of their great importance, especially in the wars with France, they were endowed with great privileges: so e. g. all their citizens were raised to the rank of barons.

[2] Oxford and Cambridge.

Brittany), which was spoken at the time of the Roman invasion. Very scanty traces, however, are left in the literary language, chiefly names of implements or terms relating to agriculture and domestic occupations.

In this language were written the oldest specimens of the literature of modern Europe. Scraps of Irish verses, ascribed to the fifth century, legendary ballads, bardic songs, and prose accounts of Irish history are still extant.

The language of the Danes has furnished a great number of names of families and places in the North and East of England. The termination 'by', originally signifying a farm, then a village or town, is still met with in Whitby, Derby, Rugby etc.; likewise are all the family names, formed with 'son', as Johnson, Adamson, Nelson etc. of northern origin.

It is from the Latin, the English language has received not only the greatest contributions to its vocabulary, but also the most important influence on its structure, either directly or indirectly, through the medium of the French language. About four fifth of all borrowed words are of Latin origin.

Occasional additions to the English vocabulary have also been made from other languages, as the Dutch, the Italian, the Arabic, the Persian, the Turkish, the Spanish, the Indian, and others.

The English language, therefore, must be considered a composite one, whose foreign elements form a decided majority in its vocabulary. In spite of this, the English remains an essentially Germanic language, and though the substantial parts of the sentences, as nouns, adjectives, and verbs, are chiefly of foreign derivation, the connecting links, however, as articles, pronouns, conjunctions, prepositions, numerals,[1] auxiliary verbs, in fact the whole structure of the language is entirely German. Of genuine German origin are likewise all the terms of affection and passion and of the commonest objects and occupations.

The language of the Saxon conquerors was an unmixed idiom, although of various Low-German dialects of which two were chiefly spoken later: the Saxon in the South and the Anglian or Englisc in the North; this latter became the predominent appellation. The name of Anglo-Saxon was only used for the people, not for the language.

This Englisc language was an inflected one: the nouns possessed all cases; likewise all the adjectives, pronouns, and

[1] All numbers up to 'million' are German, except 'second'.

articles were declined. The verbs had their infinitives in 'an', and different forms in the singular and the plural.

The most important of the national epic songs is *The Tale of Beowulf,* most likely written before the conquest of Britain by the Anglo-Saxons and highly interesting for its lively illustrations of early Gothic days

Beowulf, a Scandinavian prince of superhuman strength, accomplishes two great exploits. In the first he sets out with fourteen of his companions to release Hrothgar, King of Denmark, from a fiendish cannibal, called Grendel, that infests his hall, and who, after devouring a sleeping warrior, is attacked by Beowulf, who pulls out his arm and shoulder. Mortally wounded, he flees to a fen where he dies. But in the following night, Grendel's mother comes to the hall to avenge the death of her son, destroying another of Beowulf's warriors. Beowulf pursues her to the fen, and after a terrible fight, he slays her with the enchanted sword which he finds there. In the second adventure, which he undertakes in his old age and in his own country, he destroys a fiery dragon watching a great treasure, but loses his life through the glowing breath of the frightful monster.

Among the religious poems, the first place is occupied by *The Metrical Paraphrase of the Gospel,* ascribed to Cædmon († 680), a monk of Whitby in Yorkshire.

Cædmon, so the Venerable Bede tells us, was a cowherd, entirely deprived of the gift of song, which being of great mortification to him, he one night left the hall, quite distressed in mind. In his troubled dreams, a man appeared to him, who, not heeding his excuses, commanded him to sing of the "Beginning of all Created Things". Sweet, original verses flowed from his lips, and this heavenly gift did not forsake him, when he awoke. Great was the general astonishment; and after having proved his new-found skill on a given passage of the Bible, he was enrolled among the monks and spent his life in composing religious poetry, rendering the Scripture narratives into popular verse. "Thus he sang", says Bede, "of the Creation of the World, of the origin of the human race, of the whole Genesis, and many other stories of the Old and the New Testament."

Another writer of religious poetry was Cynewulf about whose life nothing certain is known. He probably lived in the 8th century and perhaps in Northumbria, where he seems to have received his education in a monastery and then to have led the gay and unsteady life of a secular minstrel. In his old age, he most likely retired to a quiet, contemplative life and died in solitude.

Prose-writing properly begins with Aelfred the Great (871—901), the "father of English prose", through whose

bright example a great impulse was given to the use of the vernacular tongue, especially in works of religious edification and popular instruction. Whilst he invited over learned men from the Continent and established convents and schools, he himself, the great warrior, law-giver, and governor, spent great part of his time in translating Latin authors into his own language with untiring industry. For it was the great aim of his life, by his own example to revive learning and generally culture, so deeply neglected in his time. Thus he rendered his capital of Winchester the centre of learning and the cradle of the English language. Among his translations are *Bede's Ecclesiastical History* and *Boetius, On the Consolations of Philosophy.*

Another great light and eminent cultivator of the national language was Aelfric (c. 955—1025), also called "the Grammarian" from his *Latin Grammar.* He was the first translator of a great part of the Old Testament and wrote two collections of *Homilies,* each extending through the round of the whole year.

The two centuries which followed the Norman conquest were a time of conflict between the two hostile elements, the Saxons and the Normans. Through many rigorous measures and institutions, the former descended to an oppressed and servile class, whilst their lands were bestowed on Norman lords. Tracts of inhabited country were depopulated and transformed into forests of chase, and the high offices in Church and State were confided to the Norman clergy and nobility. This system of oppression, together with the intellectual superiority of the conquering race, produced a strong hatred between the two classes, and it required several ages, before they and their languages blended into one.

This process of amalgamation or transformation of the Normans into English was already prepared under Henry I., particularly by intermarriages. On the accession of Henry II. (1154—1189), the Norman name had disappeared, and the descendants of the victors of Hastings were proud of their English nationality.

Great social changes had also taken place since the time of the conquest through the introduction of the feudal system, which had been fully developed among the Normans. Along with it, chivalry and knighthood spread its refining influence throughout the country; learning and arts were cultivated. William I. and nearly all his successors were well educated and patronized learning, though their personal characters were little less than despicable. The 12th century,

opening with Beauclerc (Henry I. 1100—1135), was particularly distinguished for the cultivation of classical studies spreading from France along with the *Romances*, which took the place of the old Saxon songs, and found eager and able imitators and translators among the clergy and the minstrels.

Equally great were the effects which the invasion propuced on the national language. During the first two centuries, no fusion of the two idioms took place, though both of them suffered a gradual and incessant process of change. The French remained the language of the Church, the courts of justice, the Parliament and the schools, in fact of all educated classes, whilst the Saxon idiom, no longer cultivated, lost much of its original perfection and harmony; yet it remained triumphant in the struggle and preserved its Teutonic structure and genius.

In the middle of the reign of Henry III. (1216—1272), a blending of the two idioms was gradually taking place; it marks the beginning of the reconstruction of a national language, a process extending to the 15th century. The language of the conquerors being rich in terms relating to war, chivalry, law, architecture, dress, sports, and the table, furnished words and expressions of this kind in great number.

The French, however, remained the language of all educated classes. In the Latin schools, the only living tongue taught was the French. Many nobles sent their sons to France to learn French. Thousands of English students studied at the University of Paris. The minstrels sang in French and were welcomed in the hall; the bards, who sang in English, were sent to the kitchen. Classics were translated into French.

The wars of Edward III. (1327—1377) and Henry V. in France (Cressy 1346, Poitiers 1356 and Agincourt 1415) had not only served to efface the last traces of distinction and hostility between the two races, but also to awaken that national pride, so characteristic with the English people, which ever since has been fostered by a high degree of political liberty and material welfare of the nation. Besides, a new spirit was arising, manifesting itself in the gradual decay of feudalism, the decline of the supremacy of the papal power, and a great intellectual and ecclesiastical progress; schools and colleges were founded, abuses in the Church were resisted by the laity and the Parliament, Wyclif translated the Bible and opposed the Roman see, and Chaucer, the most perfect type of his time, wrote his immortal works, thus highly contributing towards the regulation and perfection of the English

language and inaugurating the dawn of English literature. Since the middle of the 14th century, pupils began to construe their Latin lessons in English. In 1362 it was provided by statute of Parliament (written in French!) that the English language might be used in the courts of justice — the French being too little known. — However, the latter still remained the language for all the reports of law cases till the middle of the 17th century, and the English laws were couched in France until the reign of Henry VII. (1485—1509). The first English law dates from the year 1485, yet still with a French translation. Although in 1362 the Parliament had been opened for the first time by an English speech, still all the acts were recorded in French till Henry VII. Moreover, the House of Lords continued to use the French language up to the year 1483. From this year only, the English may be considered as the domineering language in the kingdom.

The English of this period was already much alike the language of the present day; it was mostly differing in the pronunciation of those syllables which gradually became mute or were entirely dropped. The pres. part. in 'ande' or 'inde' changed into 'ing' in the southern and midland dialects.

A great influx of French words continued to take place, accommodating themselves, however, to the Germanic law of accentuation by placing the emphasis on the root of the word. With the middle of the 14th century begins the brightest era of English minstrelsy. The chief product of the literature of the time, therefore, was poetry, among which that of Chaucer (1340—1400), called the "Father of English Poetry", occupies the first rank.

The highest degree of perfection both with respect to the language and literature, however, was attained during the so-called Elizabethan Era (1580—1625). Its brightest star was William Shakespeare (1564—1616) who wrote his immortal dramas and stamped the language with his unrivalled genius. From this period is dated the commencement of Modern English.

J. Bierbaum (History of the English Language and Literature).

65. The Best English.

The best English is spoken in the Midlands, especially the East Midlands, embracing Lincolnshire, Norfolk, Suffolk and Essex. Under the influence of the writers who used it, and principally of Chaucer, whose works were not only popular and widely read for many generations, but imitated,

the East Midland dialect became that which was recognised as the best English all over the land. "It was Chaucer's influence that caused the East Midland speech to supersede the other dialects, and so assume the position of the standard literary English, from which has come in a direct line, with but few flexional changes, the language spoken and written by educated Englishmen in all parts of the British Empire. Trench, in his "English Past and Present", says "that there can be no doubt that the English language, in the form which has been classical ever since the fourteenth century, is the language of the shires bordering on the great monastic region of the Fenland. Classical English is neither northern nor southern, but midland." But since the great spread of education in all parts of the kingdom, together with the greatly-increased facility for intercommunication, it becomes more and more difficult to locate any one portion of the country as that in which English is more correctly spoken.

66. Civil and Ecclesiastical State of England.

The *government* of the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Ireland is constitutional, or possesses a regular form, in which the civil rights of all classes are acknowledged and guaranteed. It is a limited monarchy, consisting of King or Queen, Lords, and Commons.

In early times, the king possessed the chief influence, while the Parliament, in general, was rather an obsēquious council of the sovereign than an independent body. At the Revolution of 1688, the strength of the monarchy was diminished by a breach of the hereditary line, and the Parliament became the predominant power. As the nobility and superior gentry had then the chief influence in both Houses of Parliament, it might be said that the aristocratic principle had become ascendant. It continued to be so till the passing of the Reform Bill in 1832, when the power of electing the majority of the House of Commons being extended to the middle-classes of the people, the democratic principle was, for the first time, brought into any considerable degree of force.

The *sovereign* has power to make war or peace; to assemble or dissolve parliament, and to ratify all its acts by his assent. He appoints all civil and military authorities, as well as dignitaries of the Church, and can increase the number of peers at pleasure by creating new ones. He is held to be incapable of doing wrong; and if an unlawful act be done, the minister instrumental in that act is alone liable

to punishment. The succession to the throne is hereditary; but, by the coronation oath, the sovereign is bound to govern according to the laws of the realm, and to maintain inviolate the Protestant religion, with all the rights and privileges of the Church.

The *House of Lords* is composed of the lords spiritual and temporal; the former of whom are the archbishops and bishops; the latter, the dukes, marquises, earls, viscounts, and barons of the United Kingdom. Peers cannot be arrested except for treason and some other high offences, and they must be tried by a jury of themselves, who give their verdict merely upon their honour. The peers may vote by proxy.

The *House of Commons* is composed of knights, citizens, and burgesses, respectively chosen by counties, cities, and boroughs. Its members, 658, cannot be arrested in civil causes during their attendance on parliament, nor can they be called to account out of the House for anything said within it. They possess the sole right of regulating the collection and distribution of the public money — it being recognised as a principle, that the people shall not be taxed but by their own consent through their representatives. The Commons cannot vote by proxy.

A *bill* — that is, any proposed measure — before it can become the law of the land, must be first read three times in the House of Commons, and then thrice in the House of Lords, obtaining a majority of votes on each reading; and, finally, it must receive the royal assent. A *rejected bill* cannot be introduced again during the same session.

The peculiar boast of the criminal law of the British empire is Trial by Jury. These juries consist in England of twelve men whose verdict must be unánimous. The jury is an institution justly considered as a most efficient protection of the subject from the vindictiveness of power. Civil cases, turning upon matters of fact, are also decided by juries in all parts of the United Kingdom.

The established religion in England and Wales is the Protestant, and the English Church is under the government of two archbishops and twenty-six bishops, the sovereign being its supreme head.

In Scotland, the established form of worship is that called Presbytērian; the ministers of the Scotch church are under the government of a body called the General Assembly. There is likewise in Scotland a branch of the English Episcopal Church, which is presided over by seven bishops.

In Ireland, the Established Church is a branch of the English (forming, with it, the United Church of England and Ireland), and is governed by two archbishops and ten bishops. But the majority of the people of Ireland are members of the Roman Catolic religion.

There are numerous dissenters from the established form of worship in all parts of the United Kingdom, and full toleration is allowed to all persuasions. Werner.

67. English Genuineness.

Mr. Grant White, in his book, "England, Without and Within," thus records his impressions of English sincerity: "English people impress you, first of all, by a sense of the genuineness of their actions and of their speech. Warm or cold they may be, gracious or ungracious, arrogant or considerate, but you see that they are sincere. Englishmen adulterate their goods, but not their conduct. If an Englishman makes you welcome, you feel at home; and you know that without reason, and often out of reason, he will look after your comfort—that for your wellbeing, while you are under his roof, he considers himself responsible. Yet he does not thrust himself upon you, and you may do almost what you choose, and go whither you will. If he meets you and gives you only two fingers, it means only two fingers; if his whole hand grasps yours, you have his hand, and you have it most warmly at your parting. His speech is like his action. His social word is his social bond; you may trust him for all that it promises, and commonly for more. If you do not understand him well, you may suppose that he is indifferent and careless, until something is done for you, or suggested to you, that shows you that his friend and his friend's welfare have been upon his mind."

68. Vanity of the French and English.

A few months ago I paid a visit to Paris; I fell in with a French marquis of the Bourbonite politics; he spoke to me of the present state of Paris with tears in his eyes. I thought it best to sympathize and agree with him; my complaisance was displeasing; he wiped his eyes with the air of a man beginning to take offence. "Nevertheless, sir", quoth he, "our public buildings are superb!" I allowed the fact. — "We have made great advances in civilisation." — There was no disputing the proposition. — "Our writers are

the greatest in the world." — I was silent. — "Enfin, what a devil of a climate yours is, in comparison to ours!"

I returned to England, in company with a Frenchman who had visited us twenty years since, and who was delighted with the improvement he witnessed in London. I introduced him to one of our patriots. "What a superb street is Regent-street!" cried the Frenchman. "Pooh, sir, mere lath and plaster!" replied the patriot. "I wish to hear your debates", said the Frenchman.

"Not worth the trouble, sir", groaned the patriot.

"I shall do homage to your public men."

"Mere twaddlers, I assure you; nothing great nowadays."

"Well, I am surprised; but, at least, I shall see your authors and men of science."

"Really, sir", answered the patriot very gravely, "I don't remember that we have any."

The polished Frenchman was at a loss for a moment; but recovering himself: "Ah!" said he, taking a pinch of snuff, "but you are a very great nation — very!"

"That is quite true", said the Englishman, drawing himself up. —

The Englishman, then, is vain of his country. Wherefore? because of the public buildings? — he never enters them. — The laws? — he abuses them eternally. — The public men? — they are quacks. — The writers? — he knows nothing about them. He is vain of his country for an excellent reason — *it produced him:* In his own mind the Englishman is the pivot of all things, the centre of the solar system. Like Virtue herself he

"Stands as the sun,
And all that rolls around him,
Drinks light, and life, and glory from his aspect."

E. Bulwer, England and the English.

69. On Politeness.

There is nothing, says Plato,[1] so delightful as the hearing or the speaking of truth. For this reason there is no conversation so agreeable as that of the man of integrity, who hears without any intention to betray, and speaks without any intention to deceive.

Among all the accounts which are given of Cato,[2] I do not remember one that more redounds to his honour than the

[1] Plāto, the celebrated Greek philosopher (429—384 B. C.). [2] Cato, a Roman citizen, known for his austerity and integrity († 149 B. C.)

following passage related by Plutarch.[1] As an advocate was pleading the cause of his client before one of the prætors,[2] he could only produce a single witness in a point where the law required the testimony of two persons; upon which the advocate insisted on the integrity of that person whom he had produced: but the prætor told him, that where the law required two witnesses he would not accept of one, though it were Cato himself. Such a speech from a person who sat at the head of a court of justice, while Cato was still living, shews us, more than a thousand examples, the high reputation this great man has gained among his contemporaries upon the account of his sincerity.

When such an inflexible integrity is a little softened and qualified by the rules of conversation and good-breeding, there is not a more shining virtue in the whole catalogue of social duties. A man, however, ought to take great care not to polish himself out of his veracity, nor to refine his behaviour to the prejudice of his virtue.

This subject is exquisitely treated in the most elegant sermon of the great British preacher. I shall beg leave to transcribe out of it two or three sentences, as a proper introduction to a very curious letter, which I shall make the chief entertainment of this speculation.

"The old English plainness and sincerity, that generous integrity of nature, and honesty of disposition, which always argues true greatness of mind, and is usually accompanied with undaunted courage and resolution, is in a great measure lost among us.

"The dialect of conversation is nowadays so swelled with vanity and compliment, and so surfeited (as I may say) of expressions of kindness and respect, that if a man that lived an age or two ago should return into the world again, he would really want a dictionary to help him to understand his own language, and to know the true intrinsic value of the phrase in fashion; and would hardly, at first, believe at what a low rate the highest strains and expressions of kindness imaginable do commonly pass in current payment; and when he should come to understand it, it would be a great while before he could bring himself, with a good countenance and a good conscience, to converse with men upon equal terms and in their own way."

I have by me a letter which I look upon as a great curiosity, and which may serve as an exemplification to the

[1] Plutarch, a Greek writer of the first century B. C. [2] The chief justice, the first magistrate after the consul.

foregoing passage, cited out of this most excellent prelate. It is said to have been written in King Charles II.'s (1660 till 1685) reign by the ambassador of Bantam,[1] a little after his arrival in England.

"Master,

The people, where I now am, have tongues further from their hearts than from London to Bantam, and thou knowest the inhabitants of one of these places do not know what is done in the other. They call thee and thy subjects barbarians, because we speak what we mean, and account themselves a civilized people, because they speak one thing and mean another; truth they call barbarity, and falsehood politeness. Upon my first landing, one who was sent from the king of this place to meet me, told me, that he was extremely sorry for the storm I had met with just before my arrival. I was troubled to hear him grieve and afflict himself upon my account; but in less than a quarter of an hour he smiled, and was as merry as if nothing had happened. Another who came with him told me by my interpreter, he should be glad to do me any service that lay in his power. Upon which I desired him to carry one of my portmanteaus for me; but instead of serving me according to his promise, he laughed, and bid another do it. I lodged, the first week, at the house of one who desired me to think myself at home, and to consider his house as my own. Accordingly, I, the next morning, began to knock down one of the walls of it, in order to let in the fresh air, and had packed up some of the household-goods, of which I intended to have made thee a present; but the false varlet no sooner saw me falling to work but he sent word to desire me to give over, for that he would have no such doings in his house. I had not been long in this nation, before I was told by one, for whom I had asked a certain favour from the chief of the king's servants, whom they here call the lord-treasurer, that I had eternally obliged him. I was so surprised at this gratitude, that I could not forbear saying, what service is there which one man can do for another, that can oblige him to all eternity!

"At my first going to court, one of the great men almost put me out of countenance, by asking ten thousand pardons of me for only treading by accident upon my toe. They call this kind of lie a compliment; for when they are civil to a great man, they tell him untruths, for which thou

[1] A town in the Dutsch province of Bantam in the isle of Java.

wouldst order any of the officers of state to receive a hundred blows upon his foot. I do not know how I shall negotiate any thing with this people, since there is so little credit to be given to them. When I go to see the king's scribe, I am generally told that he is not at home, though perhaps I saw him go into his house almost the very moment before. Thou wouldst fancy that the whole nation are physicians, for the first question they always ask me, is, how I do: I have this question put to me above a hundred times a day. Nay, they are not only thus inquisitive after my health, but wish it in a more solemn manner, with a full glass in their hands, every time I sit with them at table, though at the same time they would persuade me to drink their liquors in such quantities as I have found by experience will make me sick. They often pretend to pray for thy health also in the same manner; but I have more reason to expect it from the goodness of thy constitution, than the sincerity of their wishes. May thy slave escape in safety from this double-tongued race of men, and live to lay himself once more at thy feet in thy Royal City of Bantam."

Joseph Addison (1672—1719).

70. William the Conqueror.

Great King William spread before him
All his stores of wealth untold.
Diamonds, emeralds, and rubies,
Heaps on heaps of minted gold.
Mournfully he gazed upon it,
As it glitter'd in the sun,
Sighing to himself, "O treasure,
Held in care, by sorrow won!
Millions think me rich and happy,
But, alas! before me piled,
I would give thee ten times over
For the slumbers of a child."

Great King William from his turret
Heard the martial trumpets blow;
Saw the crimson banners floating
Of a countless host below;
Saw their weapons flash in sunlight,
As the squadrons trod the sward,
And he sighed, "O mighty army!
Hear thy miserable lord:

At my word thy legions gather,
 At my nod thy captains bend,
But with all thy power and splendour
 I would give thee for a friend!"

Great King William stood on Windsor,
 Looking from its castled height
O'er his wide-spread realm of England,
 Glittering in the morning light;
Looking on the tranquil river
 And the forest waving free,
And he sighed, "O land of beauty!
 Fondled by the circling sea,
Mine thou art, but I would yield thee,
 And be happy, could I gain
In exchange a peasant's garden,
 And a conscience free from stain!"

Mackay.

71. Childe Harold's Adieu to England.

(Erom Childe Harold's Pilgrimage. Canto I. 13.)

Adieu, adieu! my native shore
Fades o'er the waters blue;
The night-winds sigh, the breakers roar
And shrieks the wild sea-mew.
Yon sun that sets upon the sea
We follow in his flight;
Farewell awhile to him and thee,
My native land — Good Night!

"A few short hours and he will rise
To give the morrow birth;
And I shall hail the main and skies,
But not my mother earth.
Deserted is my own good hall,
Its hearth is desolate;
Wild weeds are gathering on the wall;
My dog howls at the gate.

"Come hither, hither, my little page!
Why dost thou weep and wail?
Or dost thou dread the billows rage
Or tremble at the gale?

But dash the tear-drop from thine eye;
Our ship is swift and strong:
Our fleetest falcon scarce can fly
More merrily along."

"Let winds be shrill, let waves roll high,
I fear not wave nor wind;
Yet marvel not, Sir Childe, that I
Am sorrowful in mind;
For I have from my father gone,
A mother whom I love,
And have no friend, save these alone
But thee — and one above.

"My father bless'd me fervently,
Yet did not much complain;
But sorely will my mother sigh
Till I come back again." —
"Enough, enough, my little lad!
Such tears become thine eye;
If I thy guileless bosom had,
Mine own would no be dry.

"Come hither, hither, my staunch yeoman
Why dost thou look so pale?
Or dost thou dread a French foeman?
Or shiver at the gale?" —
"Deem'st thou I tremble for my life?
Sir Childe, I'm not so weak;
But thinking on an absent wife
Will blanch a faithful cheek.

"My spouse and boys dwell near thy hall,
Along the bordering lake,
And when they on their father call,
What answer shall she make?"
"Enough, enough, my yeoman good,
Thy grief let none gainsay;
But I, who am of lighter mood,
Will laugh to flee away.

And now I'm in the world alone,
Upon the wide, wide sea;
But why should I for others groan,
When none will sigh for me?

Perchance my dog will whine in vain,
Till fed by stranger hands;
But long ere I come back again,
He'd tear me where he stands.

With thee, my bark, I'll swiftly go
Athwart the foaming brine;
Nor care what land thou bearst me to,
So not again to mine.
Welcome, welcome, ye dark blue waves!
And when you fail my sight,
Welcome, ye deserts and ye caves!
My native land — Good Night!

Lord Byron.

IV.

Vocabulary.

Abbey Abtei
abbréviated abgekürzt
abbreviation Abkürzung
abdicate abdanken
abéd im Bette, zu Bette
abhor verabscheuen, verschmähen
ability Fähigkeit, Talent
able fähig, imstande
abode Wohn-, Aufenthaltsort
abóminable abscheulich, scheußlich
abound Überfluß haben
above darüber, oben, oberhalb
abréast nebeneinander
abroad außen, draußen, nach außen, auswärts
absolute unbedingt, bestimmt, völlig
absorb einsaugen, verschlingen, in Anspruch nehmen
abstain sich enthalten
abstracted zerstreut, unaufmerksam
abstraction Geistesabwesenheit, Zerstreuung
absurd ungereimt, abgeschmackt, albern
abundance Überfluß
abundant reichlich
abūse mißbrauchen, schmähen, Mißbrauch
accēde einwilligen
accentuation Betonung
accept annehmen, gelten lassen
access Zugang
accéssible zugänglich
accession Thronbesteigung
áccident Zu-, Unfall
accidéntal-ly zufällig
acclamation Zuruf, Beifallsgeschrei
accómodate anbequemen, anpassen, versorgen, unterbringen
accomodation Bequemlichkeit, Raum, Beilegung
accómplish erfüllen, vollbringen, vollenden, vervollkommnen
accord Einklang, Eintracht, Harmonie; (überein)stimmen
according gemäß
account rechnen, betrachten; call to— zur Rechenschaft ziehen; on my— um meinetwillen; to —for erklären
accountant Rechnungsführer, Buchhalter
accumulation (ackiū-) An-, Aufhäufung
áccurate-ly genau
accustom gewöhnen
ache (āk) schmerzen, Schmerz
achiēve vollbringen, vollenden
acknowledge anerkennen
acoustic akustisch, das Gehör betreffend
acquainted bekannt
acquaintance Bekanntschaft, Bekannter
acquire erwerben
acquisition Erwerb
acre Acker, Morgen
across quer (durch)
act Akte, Beschluß, Dekret
act handeln, spielen, (Theat.) Handlung, Akt, Aufzug
acting (Theater), Spielen
active thätig, arbeitsam
activity Thätigkeit
actor Schauspieler
actress Schauspielerin
add hinzufügen, addieren
addition Hinzufügung, Addition
additional nachträglich, weiter
address Adresse, Aufschrift, Anrede, anreden, adressieren
addressee Adressat, Briefempfänger

adjoining angrenzend, benachbart, anstoßend [dernswert
admirable wunderbar, bewun-
admiration Bewunderung
admissible zulässig
admission Zulassung, Zutritt
ado Lärm
adoption Annahme
adorn schmücken
adúlterate verfälschen
advance fortschreiten, befördern, erheben, Fortschritt
advantage Vorzug, Vorteil, Gewinn, Nutzen; to take— sich zu Nutzen machen
advénture Abenteuer
adventurer Abenteurer
advértisement Anzeige, Annonce, Benachrichtigung
advice Rat, Kunde, Nachricht
advise raten, benachrichtigen, anzeigen
affectionate wohlgeneigt, liebevoll, ergeben, gewogen
affinity Verwandtschaft, Ähnlichkeit
affirm bezeugen, behaupten, bestätigen
affix befestigen, anheften
afflict betrüben, quälen, peinigen
afford gewähren, darbieten
afraid, to be sich fürchten
age Alter, Lebens-, Menschenalter, Jahrhundert
aged alt, betagt [walter
agent Agent, Vermittler, Sach-
agílity Behendigkeit, Beweglichkeit
agree einwilligen, übereinstimmen
agricúltural landwirtschaftlich, Feld-
agriculture Ackerbau
ahéad voraus, überlegen
aid helfen, Hilfe
ailing unpäßlich, kränklich
ailment Leiden, Schmerz
aim Ziel, zielen
air Aussehen, Miene
airy luftig
aisle (īle) Seitenschiff
alarm Angst, Unruhe, Besorgnis, Lärm, Schreck
alderman Ratsherr
ale helles, bitteres Bier
alīght ab-, aussteigen
alīve lebendig, belebt
allēviate erleichtern
allegoric-al allegorisch, sinnbildlich
allót zuteilen, bewilligen
allow erlauben, zugestehen
allowance Erlaubnis, Genehmigung, Anteil, Ration
allure an-, verlocken, reizen
almanac Kalender
almighty allmächtig
alms Almosen
alms-house Armenhaus
along längs, wieder, vorwärts,
Alsace Elsaß [zugleich
âltar Altar
altérnate- ly abwechselnd
alternation Änderung, Neuerung
although obgleich
amalgamation Verschmelzung
amateur (-tjūr) Liebhaber, Kunstfreund, Dilettant
amaze erstauen
ambassador Gesandter
amount steigen, belaufen, Betrag, Summe [Wasser u. Land]
amphíbious amphibisch, beidlebig
ample weit, geräumig, reichlich
áncestor Vorfahrer
ancéstral von den Vorfahren her-
anchor Anker [stammend
ancient alt, ehemalig
angle Ecke, Kante, Winkel
angry zornig, ärgerlich
anguish Angst, Qual
animation Belebung, Lebhaftigkeit
animosity Feindseligkeit
annals Jahrbücher, Annalen
annīhilate vernichten
announce ankündigen, anzeigen
announcement Ankündigung
annoy belästigen, stören, plagen
annually jährlich
answer (be)antworten, entsprechen; to — a door eine Thür öffnen
antagonist Gegner
antarctic antarktisch, südlich; Antarctic Ocean Südliches Eismeer
antícipate zuvorkommen, vorausempfinden, genießen
antiquarian Antiquar, Altertums-
antiquated veraltet [forscher
antique (antēk) alt, altmodisch, antik
antiquity Altertum
antlers Geweih
anvil Ambos [besorgt
anxious-ly bange, ängstlich, unruhig,
apart abseits, beiseite, abgesondert, aus einander; abgesehen von
apartment Zimmer
ape Affe
apologize sich entschuldigen, recht-
apólogy Entschuldigung [fertigen

apparel Kleidung, Tracht
apparent augenscheinlich, anscheinend,
appearance Schein, Anschein, Er-
scheinung
appellation Benennung [scheinbar
applaud zustimmen, Beifall klatschen
apple-tart Apfeltorte [Mittel
applīance Anwendung, Vorrichtung,
apply anwenden, sich wenden
appoint erneuern
apprentice Lehrling
approach sich nähern
approbation Beifall, Billigung
apprópriate zueignen
āpron Schürze, Schurzfell, Schoßleder
apt fähig, geeignet
aptitude Geschicklichkeit, Fähigkeit
aquătic, adj. Wasser-
arbitrate entscheiden, schlichten
arbūtus (arbūte) Erdbeerbaum,
arch Bogen [Bärentraube
archbishop Erzbischof
arched gebogen, gewölbt
archetype Urtypus, Urbild
architecture (arki-) Baukunst
arch-necked bogenhalsig
archway Bogengang
arctic arktisch, nördlich; Arctic Ocean
Nördliches Eismeer
ārea Fläche, Grundfläche; vertiefter
Vorplatz vor den engl. Häusern
árgūe begründen, beweisen, bekunden
argument Beweisgrund
armament Seemacht, Kriegsflotte
armorial bearings Wappenschild
armour Waffenrüstung
arms Waffen
aromatic aromatisch, würzig
around rund umher
arouse aufwecken, erregen
arrange ordnen
árras gewirkter Teppich, Tapete
arrest arretieren, verhaften
arrival Ankunft
arrogant anmaßend übermütig
arsenal Zeughaus, Arsenal
art Kunst
artifice Kunstgriff
artifícial künstlich
artist Künstler
artistic künstlerisch
ascend aufsteigen
ascéndant überlegen
ascéndency Gewalt, Oberherrschaft
ascertāin festsetzen, vergewissern
ascribe zuschreiben [schämen
ashamed beschämt; to be — sich
ashes Asche
ashōre am Ufer
Asia Minor (āshia) Kleinasien
Asiátic asiatisch, Asiate
asīde beiseite, auf die Seite
asleep schlafend, im Schlafe
áspect Anblick, Aussehen, Miene
aspire streben
ass Esel
assemble (sich) versammeln
assémbly Versammlung
assént Einwilligung
assert behaupten, versichern
assertion Behauptung
assiduity (assidjū-) Emsigkeit, Fleiß
assist beiwohnen, beistehen
assistance Beistand
assōciate (assōsh-) (sich) verbinden
association Verbindung
assūme annehmen
assūrance (ashū-) Versicherung
astérn im, am Hinterteil; hinter
astonish erstaunen [dem Schiffe
astonishment Erstaunen, Verwunde-
athlēte Athlet, Wettkämpfer [rung
athlétic athletisch; — sports körper-
liche Übungen
athwârt quer durch, über
átom Atom
attach befestigen, fesseln, knüpfen;
im Dienste stehen
attached, adj. zugethan
attachment Anhänglichkeit, Zu-
attack Anfall [neigung
attainments Kenntnisse, Fertigkeiten
attempt versuchen, Versuch
attend (be)achten, hören auf; auf-
warten, pflegen, begleiten; folgen
zugegen sein [Dienstleistung
atténdance Anwesenheit, Dienst,
attendant Aufwärter(in)
attention Aufmerksamkeit
attitude Stellung
attract anziehen
attraction Anziehung, Reiz
attractive anziehend [Merkmal
attríbute Attribut, Eigenschaft,
audience Zuhörerschaft, Audienz
aught etwas
Austria Österreich
Austrian österreichisch, Österreicher
author Schriftsteller, Urheber
authórity Behörde, Ansehen
autograph Handschrift, Autograph
avenge rächen
avenue Baumgang, Allee, breite
Straße

average Durchschnitt, im Durch=
schnitt ausmachen
aversion Abneigung
āviary Vogelhaushecke
avoid vermeiden
avowal (avau-) Bekenntnis, Erklär-
await (er)warten [ung
awāre, to be wissen, bewußt
awe Furcht, Ehrfurcht [griffen
awestruck von Furcht, Entsetzen er=
awful hehr, ehrwürdig, furchtbar,
awhile eine Zeit lang [schrecklich
awkward ungeschickt, unbequem
awkwardness Ungeschicklichkeit
azālia Azalie
azure (āzha) himmelblau

Baboon Pavian
bachelor Junggeselle, Baccalaureus
back Rücken, zurück; beschützen,
unterstützen, wetten auf
background Hintergrund
back stair Hintertreppe
backward rückwärts, zurück, rücklings
bācon Speck
bad schlecht, schlimm; to want badly
dringend nötig haben
bag Sack, Beutel
bāize wollenes Zeug, Fries
bake backen
baker Bäcker
balcony Balkon, Erker
bale Ballen (Ware)
ball Ball, Kugel
balloon Ballon
balmy (bâmy) balsamisch
Baltic (Sea) Baltisches Meer, Ostsee
band Bande, Rotte, Schar; (ver=)
binden, vereinigen
bang schlagen, prügeln
banish verbannen
banisters Treppengeländer
bank Ufer, Wall, Gestade
banker Bankier
banking-house Bankhaus
bánquet Bankett, Gastmahl, Schmaus
bar Stab, Riegel, Schenk=, Zahltisch
barbārian Barbar
barbarity Barbarei, Roheit
Barbary Berberei
barber Barbier
bard Barde, Sänger, Dichter
bardic bardisch
bare bloß, baar
bare-footed barfüßig
bare-headed barhäuptig
barely kaum

bargain (-gen) Handel, Kauf; (ver)=
barn Scheuer [handeln, verkaufen
baronet Baronet, niederer erblicher
Adelstitel
barracouta amerikanischer Spießhecht
barren unfruchtbar, dürr
barriēr Grenze, Schranke, Schlag=
base Grundlage, Basis [baum
based gestützt
basement Fundament, Erd=, Keller=
basin Becken, Waschbecken [geschoß
bashful verschämt, schüchtern, blöde,
basket Korb [verlegen
basket-work Korbmacherarbeit
bat Fledermaus, Ballschlägel (Cricket);
Schlagen (des Cricketballs); batter
Ballschläger (Cricket)
batch ein Schub Gebäck, Satz,
bath Bad [Schicht
bathe baden
battledore and shuttle-cock Feder=
battlement Zinne [ballspiel
baulk (bâk) täuschen, hintergehen
Bavāria Baiern
bay Bai, Bucht; Beere, bellen; to
bring to b. (vom Wild) stellen
bēach Strand, Gestade
bēan Bohne
beār ir. (er)tragen, führen, aushalten,
beār Bär [dulden, gebären
bēarded bärtig
bear-pit Bärengrube
bēast Tier, Bestie
beast of prey Raubtier
beat schlagen; Schlag, Runde,
beautify verschönern (Rundgang
become werden, geziemen
bedstead Bettstatt, =stelle
beefeater Fleischesser, Wächter
(Tower), königl. Leibgardist
befít sich schicken, passen
beforehand im voraus
befriended befreundet
beg betteln
beggar Bettler
beguīle täuschen, betrügen
behāve (sich) benehmen
behaviour Benehmen
behéad enthaupten
behind hinter
behold schauen, ansehen, betrachten
beholder Beschauer
belfry (frz. beffroi, von Bellfried)
Glocken=, Wartturm
beliēve glauben
bell Glocke, Klingel
béllows Blasebalg

belong gehören
below unter, unten, hienieden
bench Bank
bend beugen, biegen (aufspannen)
benéficent wohlthätig
benefit Wohlthat, Nutzen, Vorteil; for the b. zum Besten
benévolent wohlwollend
berry Beere [raten
bespeak besprechen, ankündigen, ver=
bestow erteilen, verleihen, gewähren
betray verraten
beverage Getränk
beware sich hüten, hüte dich
bewilder verwirren
bewitch bezaubern
beyond jenseits
bīcéphalous zweiköpfig
bid ir. heißen, gebieten, einladen,
bigot Frömmler [bitten
bígoted bigott, frömmelnd
bill Billet, Zettel, Rechnung, Wechsel; Gesetzesvorschlag, Parlaments=akte; b. of exchange Wechselbrief
bīpéd zweifüßig, Zweifüßler
birch-tree Birkenbaum
birth Geburt
biscuit (biskit) Zwieback, Biscuit
bishop Bischof
bit Bissen, bißchen
B L = bill of lading Verladungsschein
blade Blatt, Blättchen, Klinge
blackish schwärzlich
Black Sea Schwarzes Meer
blacksmith Schmied, Grobschmied
blame tadeln, Tadel
blanch bleich machen, bleichen
blanket weißwollene Bettdecke
blast Windstoß, Schall, Trompeten=
blēak bleich, öde, rauh [stoß
blend vermischen, verschmelzen
blest v. bless segnen
blessing Segen
blight Meltau, Brand, Rost, Frost
blind blind; blenden, die Augen ver=binden
blindfolded mit verbundenen Augen
blind-man's buff Blindekuh
bliss Seligkeit, Wonne
bloody (blödy) blutig
bloody-minded blutgierig
bloodshed Blutvergießen
bloom Blüte, Blume
blow Schlag
blown v. blow ir. blasen, wehen
blossom Blüte
blunder Versehen, Fehler

board Bord, Diehle, Bohle, Tisch, Kost, speisen, sich beköstigen
boarding house Speisehaus, Pension
boast Stolz, Ruhm, Prahlerei,
boat Boot [rühmen, prahlen
boating Bootfahren
boat-keeper Bootswächter, Vermieter
boat-race Boot=Wettfahren
body-guard Leibwache
bog Sumpf
boggy sumpfig, morastig
Bohēmia Böhmen
Bohemian böhmisch, Böhme
boisterous ungestüm, heftig, pol=ternd, lärmend
bold kühn
bolt zu=, verriegeln, hineinstürzen
bombastic bombastisch, schwülstig
bond Band, Verschreibung, Ver=
bone Knochen bindlichkeit
bonfire Freudenfeuer [Kappe
bonnet Haube, Damenhut, Mütze,
book v. buchen, einschreiben
book-case Bücherfach
booking-office Einschreibe=Büreau, Tageskasse
book-post Drucksache
boorish bäuerisch
boot Vorteil, Beute, Zugabe; to b. noch dazu, obendrein
booth Bude
border grenzen, Grenze
borough Burg=, Marktflecken
borrow borgen
borrower Borger
bosom (būsom) Busen
bottle v. auf Flaschen ziehen
bottom Boden, Grund, Erde
bottom-fishing Grundangeln
bough (bau) Zweig
bought v. buy ir. kaufen
bounce springen
bound hüpfen, springen; gebunden, verpflichtet
bounteous gütig, mild, wohlthätig
bounty Milde, Güte, Freigebigkeit
Bourbonite bourbonisch, die Bour=bonen betreffend
bow (baua) biegen, beugen, bücken, verneigen
bower (bau-) Laube
bowl (bōl) Kugel, Schale, Becken, kegeln, rollen; bowling Werfen des Cricketballes
box boxen, stoßen, Schachtel, Kasten, Loge, Ohrfeige, Kutscher=bock, Buchsbaum

brains Gehirn
brake Farnkraut, Dorn=, Brom=beergebüsch
branch Zweig
brandy Branntwein i. e. Cognac
brass Messing, Erz, Metall
brass-band Musikbande
brawner für die Tafel geschlachteter Eber
brawny fleischig, muskelig, stark
Brăzīl Brasilien
brēach Bruch
bréadth Breite
breāk brechen, Bruch, Durchbruch
break zureiten
break upon eindringen, hereinbrechen über
breakfast erstes Frühstück
breāker Brandung, brandende [Wogen
breast Brust
bréath Atem
breāthe atmen
bréathless atemlos
breed erzeugen, erziehen
breeding Erziehung
breeze kühle, Wind, frisches Lüftchen
brevity Kürze
brewery Brauerei
brick Mauer=, Ziegel=, Backstein
bricklayer Maurer [Frau
bride Braut, jung verheiratete
bridegroom Bräutigam, jung verheirateter Mann
bridge Brücke
bridle-hand linke Hand
brief-ly kurz
bright hell, licht, strahlend
bright-coloured hellfarbig
bright-eyed mit hellen, funkelnden Augen
brine Meer=, Salzwasser
brisk-ly frisch, flink, lebhaft, munter
Brittany Bretagne
brought v. bring ir. bringen
brow (brau) Stirn
bruiser (brū-) Faustkämpfer, Boxer
Brunswick Braunschweig
brush Bürste, bürsten
brush-tray Bürstenschale
brūtal tierisch, gemein
buck Bock
buckler Schild
Buda-Pesth Ofen=Pest
build ir. v. bauen
building Gebäude
bun ungesäuerter Kuchen, Fladen
bundle Bündel, Packet

burgess (búrdjess) Bürger
burial-place Begräbnisplatz
burlesque Burleske, Posse
Burmah Birma
Burmese Birmanese
burst bersten, brechen
bury begraben
bush Busch
business (bisness) Geschäft
busy (bísy) geschäftig
bust Büste
bustle Lärm, Getöse, Wirrwarr
butcher Metzger, Fleischer
butler Kellermeister, erster Diener
butt-end dicke Ende, Kolben
butterfly Schmetterling
buttery Speisekammer
buzz summen
bystander Zuschauer
by-the-by(e) nebenbei; (frz. en passant)

Cab Droschke
cabbage Kohl [Kutscher
cabby Spitzname für cabman,
cabinet Cabinet, Zimmerchen Schrank m. Schublade
cabinet-maker Kunstschreiner
cab-stand Droschkenstand
cage Käfig
cake Kuchen
calamity Elend, Not
calculate berechnen, beabsichtigen, überlegen
calculated geeignet, beschaffen
calculation Berechnung
calf pl. calves Kalb
call rufen, nennen, Ruf, Besuch, Aufforderung; c. over verlesen
calling Beruf
calm ruhig, still; Ruhe, Stille
Calvary Schädelstätte, Golgatha
cámel Kameel
candle Licht, Kerze
candidate Candidat, Bewerber
candlelight Kerzenlicht
candlestick Leuchter
candy überzuckern, in Zucker ein=
cane-bottomed rohrsitzig [machen
cánnibal Menschenfresser
cannon Kanone
cannon-ball Kanonenkugel
canopy Baldachin, Prachthimmel
canvas Leinwand, Pack=, Segeltuch
cāpable fähig
cape Kap
Cape Colony Kap Kolonie, Kapland

capital hauptsächlich, vorzüglich, vortrefflich; Hauptstadt, Groß=buchstabe
captain Kapitän, Hauptmann
cáracol schwenken, halbe Wendungen [machen
caraway Kümmel
care (for) sich kümmern um, sich machen aus; s. Aufsicht, Obhut
careful sorglich, besorgt, sorgsam, [behutsam
caress liebkosen
cargo Schiffsladung
cáricatūre Zerrbild
carnival Karneval, Fasching
carnívora fleischfressende Tiere;
carnívorous fleischfressend
carol singen, jubeln
Carpāthians Karpathen
carpet Teppich
carpeted mit Teppichen belegt
carriage (cárridge) Wagen, Kutsche; c. and pair zweispänniger Wagen
carry tragen, führen [betreiben
carry on fortführen, aufrecht erhalten,
cart Wagen, Fuhrwerk, Karren
carve ausschneiden, =schnitzen, zerlegen
case Gehäuse, Kapsel
casement Fensterflügel, Fenster=rahmen; c. window Flügelfenster
cashiēr Kassierer
cask Faß
Caspian Kaspisch
cássiowary (cásh-) Kasuar
cast ir. werfen, gießen (Metalle); Form; Besetzung eines Theater=stücks; c. accounts rechnen
castle Schloß, Burg
castled getürmt
casual (cásh-) gelegentlich, zufällig
cat Katze
cátalogue Katalog, Verzeichnis
catch fangen, erhaschen, erwischen
catch-ball Fangeball
catching ansteckend
cathēdral Cathedrale, Münster
cattle Rindvieh, Rinder
caught v. catch ir. fangen, erwischen
cause verursachen; Ursache
causeway Chaussee, Dammweg
cautious vorsichtig
cave Grube, Höhle
cávern Höhle
cease aufhören
ceaseless unaufhörlich
cēdar Ceder
ceiling Decke
célebrated berühmt
cell Zelle
cellar Keller
cénotaph Ehrengrabmal
centre Mittelpunkt
century Jahrhundert
ceremony Ceremonie, Feierlichkeit; Umstand
certíficate Zeugnis, Certifikat
chafe aufregen, warm werden, wüten
chaff Spreu
chain Kette
chair Stuhl
chaise-cart (shāz-) leichter zweiräd=[riger Wagen
chalk (châk) Kreide
chance geschehen, sich ereignen; fig. fahren; Zu=, Glücksfall, Mög=lichkeit
chandelier (shăndelēr) Armleuchter
change wechseln, ändern; Wechsel, Änderung
changeableness Veränderlichkeit
channel Kanal
chant singen
champion Kämpe, Kämpfer, Streiter
chapel Kapelle
character Charakter, Handschrift, Schriftzeichen, Gemüts=, Denkungsart
charge beladen, beschuldigen, be=schweren, an=, berechnen
chariot Wagen, Kalesche, Kutsche, Streitwagen
charitable barmherzig, wohlthätig
charity Almosen
charity scholar Armen=, Freischüler
charm bezaubern, bändigen; Reiz, [Zauber
charter Freibrief, Urkunde
chase jagen; Jagd
chatter plaudern, schwatzen, plappern
cheap billig
cheat täuschen, betrügen
check Schach, Hemmnis, Hindernis; Kontrollzeichen; gewürfelt, karriert
check(er) buntscheckig machen, unter=[mengen
cheek Wange
cheer aufmuntern, erheitern, zurufen
cheerful heiter, lustig
cheerfulness Frohsinn, Munterkeit
cheerless freudlos, traurig
cheese Käse
chequered bunt, wechselvoll
cherish zärtlich, lieben, pflegen, unterhalten
cherry-pie Kirschen=Pastete
chess Schach
chestnut (chess-) Kastanie
chest Kasten, Brustkasten; chest of drawers Kommode

chicken Hühnchen; chicken-pie Hühner-Pastete
chid v. chide ir. schelten, schmähen
chief hauptsächlich, Haupt-
chieftain Häuptling
childhood Kindheit
childing gebärend
childish kindlich, kindisch
chill-y kühl, kalt, frostig, fröstelnd
chime Einklang, Glockengeläute
chimney Kamin
chimney-sweeper Kaminfeger, Essenkehrer
chīna Porzellan
chivalrous (shi-) ritterlich
chivalry (shi-) Rittertum, -schaft, Ritterlichkeit
choir (quīre) Chor, Kirchenchor
choir-stall Chorstuhl
choke ersticken
chop ab-, zerhauen, zerhacken, zerschneiden; Rippchen, Kotelett
chóleric jähzornig
choose wählen, wünschen
Christian christlich, Christ
chrísten (chriss'n) taufen
chum Stubenbursche, zusammen wohnen
cider Cider, Apfelwein
cínnamon Zimmet
circle Zirkel, Kreis, Umkreis, Kreislauf; upper — zweiter Rang (Theater); umgeben, umkreisen
circlet kleiner Kreis, Ring
circular kreisrund
circulate zirkulieren, in Umlauf sein,
circulating library Leihbibliothek
circumstance Umstand, Umständlichkeit, Zustand, Lage
cítadel Citadelle, Burg
cite zitieren, anführen
cítizen Staatsbürger, Städter
city Stadt, Altstadt; i. Engl. Stadt mit einer Cathedrale
cívil bürgerlich, höflich, artig, gesittet
cívilīzed civilisiert, gebildet
clāim Anspruch, Forderung, beanspruchen, fordern
clámour Geschrei, Getöse
clangour Schall, Getön
claret frz. Rotwein (mit Ausn. des Burgunders)
clēan sauber, rein; säubern, reinigen, putzen
cléanse reinigen, säubern
clear klar, deutlich; klären, reinigen, räumen, befreien
clergyman Geistlicher
clerk (clak) Geistlicher, Sekretär, Schreiber
clever geschickt
cleverness Geschicklichkeit
clīent Client, Schützling
cliff Klippe
clīmate Klima, Gegend
climb klimmen, klettern
climbing-irons Kletter-, Steigeisen
clime Klima, Gegend
cloak Mantel
cloak-room Garderobe
clock Uhr, —face Zifferblatt, —tower Uhrturm
cloister Kloster, Kreuzgang
close schließen, endigen, aufhören; Schluß, Abschluß, Gehege, Einfriedignng, Hof; dicht, nahe, eng
closely genauer, eingehender
cloth Tuch
clothes Kleider
clothing (Be)Kleidung
cloud Wolke
clōve Gewürznelke
clōver Klee
clown Bauer, Tölpel, Hanswurst
clump Klumpen, Gruppe
cluster sich ballen, zusammenhäufen, Büschel, Gruppe
clustering pillars Säulenbündel
coach Kutsche, —office Einschreibebüreau für Reisende; —stand Droschkenstand
coal Kohle; —barge Kohlenbarke
coarse grob, rauh
coast Küste
coat bekleiden, Rock, Ueberrock
cobweb Spinngewebe
cock-fight Hahnenkampf
coffin Sarg
confūsion Verwirrung
cognisance (cóni-) Kenntnis, Kenntnisnahme, Abzeichen
coil up sich zusammenwickeln, rollen
coin Münze, münzen, prägen
cold kalt, Kälte, Erkältung, Schnupfen
collar-bone Schlüsselbein
collect sammeln
collection Sammlung
collīde zusammenstoßen
colour Farbe; pl. Fahne; colouring Färbung, Färben
combination Verbindung
comb Kamm
combine verbinden, vereinigen
comédian Komödiant, Schauspieler
comely anmutig, lieblich

comfort Trost, Bequemlichkeit, Behaglichkeit, trösten
comfortable bequem, gemütlich
commander Befehlshaber
comménmorate Andenken feiern, erinnern
commemoration Gedächtnis, =feier, Andenken
commence beginnen, anfangen
cómmerce Handel
commércial kaufmännisch, geschäftlich
commít begehen, vollbringen
commíttee Commission, Ausschuß
common gemein, allgemein, gemeinschaftlich
commonplace gemein, gewöhnlich, Gemeinplatz
commūne sich unterhalten, verkehren
commūnicate mitteilen
communion Gemeinschaft, Verkehr
community Gemeinschaft, Gemeinde
companion Gefährte, Begleiter, Gesellschafter
companionship Gesellschaft, Genossenschaft
company Gesellschaft, Innung, Zunft
comparable vergleichbar
compare (sich) vergleichen
comparison Vergleich, Vergleichung
cómpass Umfang, Umkreis, See-Kompaß
compassionate-ly teilnahmsvoll, mitleidig
compátible vereinbar, passend
competition Mit=, Wettbewerb
complain klagen, sich beklagen
complaint Klage
complaisance (complizáns) Gefälligkeit
complete vollenden, vervollständigen, vollständig, völlig
complexion Gesichtsfarbe
complicate verwickeln, verflechten
compliment Höflichkeit, Gruß
comply (with) erfüllen, willfahren
compórt sich vertragen, übereinstimmen
compose zusammensetzen
composite zusammengesetzt
composition Zusammensetzung, Abfassung
composer Komponist
comprise umfassen
conceal verbergen
conceit Begriff, Idee, Gedanke, Einfall
conception Idee, Begriff
concern betreffen

conclude (be)schließen
conclusion Schluß
cóncourse Zulauf, Menge
condemn verurteilen
condescend sich herablassen, geruhen, willfahren
cóndiment Gewürz
condition Bedingung, Lage, Zustand
condūcive (-diū-) förderlich
cónduct Führung, Betragen
conféctioner Zuckerbäcker, Konditor
conféderate verbündet, Verbündeter
confér erteilen, erweisen, übertragen
confess bekennen
confīde (an)vertrauen
configuration (-giū-) äußere Gestalt
confine beschränken, begrenzen, einsperren
confinement Gefangenschaft, Haft
cónflict Kampf, Widerstreit
confūse verwirren
congestion Anhäufung
congrátulate beglückwünschen
congregate (sich)versammeln
congregation Versammlung, Gemeinde
connect verbinden
conqueror Eroberer
conquest Eroberung
conscience Gewissen
conscientious-ly gewissenhaft
conscious bewußt
consciousness Bewußtsein
consent einwilligen, Einwilligung, Zustimmung
consequence Folge
consequently folglich
consider betrachten, ansehen
considerable beträchtlich
consíderate bedachtsam, aufmerksam, rücksichtsvoll
consist of, in bestehen aus
consolation Tröstung, Trost
conspicuous-ly sichtbar
cónstant beständig
cónstitute einsetzen, einrichten
constitution Beschaffenheit, Verfassung
constitūtional verfassungsmäßig, konstitutionell
constraint Zwang
construction Bau, Gebäude
construe konstruieren, auslegen, erklären
consūme verzehren
consumption Auszehrung
cóntact Berührung

contain enthalten, umfassen
contemplate betrachten
contémplative beschaulich, tief-
contémporary Zeitgenosse [sinnig
contémpt Verachtung, Gering-
schätzung
cóntest Streit, Streitigkeit
contents Inhalt
contést streiten, streitigmachen
contíguous (-iūous) anstoßend,
angrenzend
continent Festland
contíngent Teil, Anteil, Beitrag
contínuance Dauer, Fortdauer
contínue fortsetzen, -fahren
continuous zusammenhängend
cóntraband verboten, Schleich-,
handel, Schmuggel
contrary entgegengesetzt, Gegenteil
cóntrast Gegensatz; contrást ent-
gegenstellen, kontrastieren
contríbute beitragen
contribution Beitrag, Beisteuer,
Kriegssteuer [finden
contrīve ersinnen, erdenken, er-
contrōl Kontrolle, Tadel, Befehl
conúndrum Worträtsel
cónvaléscent genesend
convēnience Schicklichkeit, Bequem-
lichkeit
convēnient passend, schicklich, be-
cónvent Kloster [quem
convérse sprechen, unterhalten
convert bekehren, verwandeln
convey (-vāy) führen, fortschaffen,
übertragen, übermitteln, aus-
convince überzeugen [drücken
cónvoy Geleit, Bedeckung, Eskorte
convulsion Erschütterung
cook kochen, Koch, Köchin
cooking Kochen, Küche
cook-maid Küchenmagd, Köchin
cope zusammentreffen, zu thun
haben
copper Kupfer, -Münze
copper-plate Kupferstich
copse Untersatz, Gebüsch
cordage Tauwerk
corner Ecke, Winkel
coronātion Krönung
córonet kleine Krone, Adelskrone
corporation Körperschaft, Stadtrat
correct richtig, korrekt; verbessern,
korrigieren
correspónd in Briefwechsel stehen,
entsprechen
correspondence Briefwechsel
correspondent Briefschreiber
corruption Verderbnis, Verdorben-
heit, Verunstaltung
cost Kosten, Preis
costermonger Obsthändler
costly kostbar, kostbar machen
costūme Kostüm, Tracht
cottage Häuschen, Landhaus
cotton Baumwolle, Baumw.-
Waren
couch (cauch) (sich) niederlegen,
schriftlich aufsetzen, verfassen,
Lager, Ruhebett
cough (coff) Husten
council Rat
councillor Rat
count zählen [sung
countenance Gesicht, Miene, Fas-
counter-marcher Entgegenkommender
counterpane gesteppte Bettdecke
counting-house Kontor, Geschäfts-
countless zahllos [lokal
country Land
countryman Land-, Landsmann
country-seat Landsitz
county Grafschaft
couple Koppel, Paar [nung
course Lauf, Bahn, Gang, Ord-
coursing Hasen-, Hetzjagd mit
Windhunden [freien
court Hof, schmeicheln, werben,
coúrtesy Höflichkeit, Artigkeit,
Verbeugung
courtier Höfling
court of justice Gerichtshof
court-yard Hofraum
cover bedecken, Decke, Deckel, Um-
schlag; under— unter der
covering Decke [Adresse
covert Dickicht, Gehege, Schlupf-
cowherd Kuhhirt [winkel
coy sittsam, züchtig, scheu, zurück-
haltend
crack krachen, aufknacken, (zer)-
reißen, stürzen, Krach
cracker Schwärmer, Rakete,
crackle knistern
cram stopfen
crane Kranich
crash Krach
crawl kriechen
crēam Rahm, Sahne
creāte schaffen
creātion Schöpfung
crēature Geschöpf, Kreatur
credible glaublich
credibility Glaubwürdigkeit

crédit Glaube, Kredit
creep ir. kriechen
crestfallen niedergeschlagen, mutlos
crib Krippe, Hütte, Kinderbett
cricket-match Cricketpartie
crime Verbrechen
criminal strafbar, verbrecherisch, Verbrecher; cr. law Strafgesetz
crimson karmesinrot, hochrot
crisp kraus
critic Kritiker, Tadler
criticize kritisieren, bekriteln
crook Haken, Schürhaken, Schäferhirtenstab
crooked gebogen, gekrümmt
crop Kropf, Gipfel, Ernte
cross Kreuz, kreuzen, hintergehen, plagen, quälen; adj. böse, zornig, ärgerlich, widerwärtig
cross-aisle (īle) Querschiff
cross-bar Querstange
cross court Querhof
crosier (krōzhiör) Bischofs-, [Krummstab
crouch kriechen
crow Krähe
crown Krone, krönen
crowd sich drängen, Gedränge, Menge; crowded gedrängt voll, volkreich
crucifixion Kreuzigung
cruelty Grausamkeit
cruet-stand Menage (Gestell- mit Essig und Oel)
cruise (crūse) kreuzen, Kreuzen, Kreuzfahrt
crusāder Kreuzfahrer
crush (zer)quetschen, zermalmen
crust Kruste, Rinde
cry Ruf, Schrei
crypt Gruft, Kapelle, Krypta
cultivate (be)bauen
cultivation Bebauung, Pflege
cúltivátor Landbauer, Pfleger, Verbesserer
culture Bau, Kultur, Bildung
cup Becher, Kelch, Tasse, Schale
cupola (kiū-) Kuppel
cupboard Speiseschrank
curb Zaum, Zügel, Einhalt
cure kurieren, heilen, Kur, Heilung
curious seltsam, komisch
curiosity Neugierde, Merkwürdigkeit, Sehenswürdigkeit
curl Locke, locken, kräuseln
currants Korinthen, kl. Rosinen
current Lauf, Strom, adj. bar, gangbar, kursierend
curtain (cúrtin) Vorhang
custom Sitte, Brauch
customary gebräuchlich, üblich, gewohnheitsmäßig
customer Kunde
cut ir. schneiden, Schnitt
cūte für acūte scharf, scharfsinnig
cutlery Messerschmiedewaren
cutter Kutter, (kleine, einmastige Schaluppe)

Dagger Dolch
damage Schaden
damp feucht
dampness Feuchtigkeit
dandy Stutzer
dank dumpfig, feucht
Dánūbe Donau
dappled gefleckt, gesprenkelt
dare wagen, dürfen (ir.)
dark dunkel, Dunkelheit
darkness Dunkelheit, Finsternis
dart Wurfspieß, -geschoß; fliegen, schießen
dash (zer)schlagen, werfen, schleudern, stürzen, stürmen [Dattel
date datieren, Datum, Jahreszahl;
dawn dämmern, Dämmerung
dazzle blenden
déaf taub
déafen betäuben
deal aus-, verteilen, handeln
dēal Tannenholz, Brett, Diele
death Tod; pl. Todesfälle
death-rate Sterbeziffer
debāsing erniedrigend
debate Streit, Wortkampf, Debatte
debt (dett) Schuld, -en
decāy verfallen, abnehmen, verwelken; Verfall, Absterben
decease verscheiden, versterben
decēit Täuschung
deceitful trügerisch
decēive täuschen, trügen
dēcent anständig, ehrbar, sittsam
decīde ent-, beschließen
decidedly entschieden
decīpherer Entzifferer
deck bedecken, zieren, schmücken
declīne (sich) neigen, sinken, abnehmen, ablehnen; Neigung, Abnahme, Verfall
décorate schmücken
décorative zierend, schmückend
deed That
deem schätzen, achten
deer Rotwild

defēat Niederlage
defect Fehler, Mangel, Gebrechen
defence Verteidigung, Verbot
defend verteidigen
deficiency (-físhen-) Mangel, Unzulänglichkeit, Defizit
degree Stufe, Grad, Rang; by degrees stufenweise, allmählich
delay Aufschub
délicate zart
delicious entzückend
delight Freude, Lust, Wonne, Entzücken; (sich) vergnügen, erfreuen,
delīghted entzückt [ergötzen
deliver übergeben, überreichen, vortragen
deluge Überschwemmung, Sintflut
demand Frage, Bitte, Forderung, Verlangen, Gesuch; on — auf Verlangen
demēanour Benehmen, Betragen
democrátic demokratisch
demólish zerstören
denīal Verleugnung, Verneinung
denomination Benennung
denote bezeichnen, andeuten
dense dicht
denȳ leugnen, in Abrede stellen
depart abreisen, weggehen, verscheiden
depārture Abreise, Abzug, fig.
depend on abhängen von [Wendung
depíct (ab)malen, schildern
depópulate entvölkern
depose ab=, niedersetzen
deprávity Verdorbenheit, Verderbnis
deprēciate heruntersetzen, verachten
deprive berauben
derivation Ableitung, Herkunft
derīve her=, ableiten
descend herab=, niedersteigen, =gehen
descendant Abkömmling, Nachkomme
descent Abstieg, Abkunft, Abstammung
describe beschreiben [mung
descrȳ entdecken, erblicken
désert wüst, öde, verlassen; Wüste,
deserted verlassen, verödet [Öde
deserve verdienen; deserving, adj. verdienstlich, =voll
desīgn beabsichtigen, planen; Absicht, Plan; Zeichnung
desirable wünschenswert, erwünscht
desirous, to be wünschen
desolation Trostlosigkeit, Öde
despair Verzweiflung, verzweifeln
desperate verzweifelt
déspicable verächtlich
dessért Nachtisch

destination Bestimmung
déstine bestimmen, widmen
déstitute verlassen, entblößt, hilflos
destroy zerstören
dētail Einzelheit
detain ab=, zurückhalten
detéstable verächtlich, abscheulich
devélop entwickeln, entfalten
devélopment Entwickelung
dévil Teufel
devise ersinnen, ausfindig machen
devote (sich) widmen, weihen
devotion Ergebenheit, Andacht
devour verzehren, verschlingen
dew Thau
dextérity Geschicklichkeit, Gewandtheit
dīalect Mund=, Sprechart, Dialekt
dīamond Diamant
dice Würfel
die sterben [unterscheiden
díffer abweichen, verschieden sein, sich
difference Unterschied, Streitigkeit,
difficulty Schwierigkeit [Zwist
diffūse verbreiten, zerstreuen
dignified würdig
dignitary Würdenträger, =in
dignity Würde
diligence Fleiß
dim dunkel, trübe, matt; verdunkeln,
dimension Ausdehnung [trüben
diminish vermindern
din Getöse, Geklirr
dingy schmutzig, schwarzbraun
dining-room Speisezimmer
diploma Diplom, Urkunde, Zeugnis
direct leiten, dirigieren; adj. gerade, geradezu, direkt
direction Richtung, Führung; Auf=
dirt Schmutz [schrift
disagreement Verschiedenheit
disappear verschwinden [fall
disaster Unstern, Unglück, Unglücks=
disastrous unglücklich, elend, schrecklich
disclose enthüllen, verraten
discōrdant mißklingend, disharmonisch
discover entdecken, erblicken
discoverer Entdecker [schwiegenheit
discrétion Besonnenheit, Ver=
discuss erörtern, abhandeln
disease Krankheit, Unpäßlichkeit
disfigured entstellt
disgrace schänden, entehren
disgust anwidern, anekeln; Ekel
disgusting ekelhaft;
dish Schüssel, Gericht
dish-water Spülwasser
disinterested uneigennützig

dismal schrecklich, gräßlich, traurig, elend
dismay entmutigen, erschrecken, in Schrecken setzen; Schrecken, Furcht
dismount absteigen
dispél vertreiben, zerstreuen
dispensation Aus=, Verteilung
disperse zerstreuen
display entfalten, ausbreiten; Entfaltung, Ausbreitung; Schau, Schau=, Darstellung
displease mißfallen
disposal Verfügung
dispose verfügen
disposition Anlage, Veranlagung
dispūte (be)streiten, Streit, Wortstreit
disréputable verrufen, übel berüchtigt
dissénter Andersdenkende, Dissenter
dissipate zerstreuen, verschwenden
dissipated verschwenderisch, liederlich
dissipation Zerstreuung, Verschwendung
dissolve auflösen
distance Zurückhaltung
distinct-ly deutlich, ausdrücklich
distinction Unterschied, Auszeichnung
distinctness Deutlichkeit, Genauigkeit
distinctive unterscheidend
distress betrüben; Not, Elend
distríbute aus=, verteilen
distribution Verteilung
disturb stören
ditch Graben
ditty Lied, Gesang
dīverse verschieden, =artig
divérsion Ergötzung, Zeitvertreib
divide teilen
dívidend Dividende, Gewinnanteil
divine göttlich; Geistlicher
division Teilung, Ein=, Abteilung
dóctrine Lehre
doff weg=, abthun, ablegen, ausziehen
dog-fight Hundekampf
doing Thun
dole out austeilen, spenden
dóll Puppe
dome Kuppel, Dom
doméstic häuslich
domineer herrschen, tyrannisieren
dominion Herrschaft
donkey Esel
double-tongued doppelzüngig
doubt (daut) (be)zweifeln, Zweifel
doubtful zweifelhaft
down Hügel, Düne, Flaumfeder
down-right geradeheraus, geradezu, derb
downstairs die Treppe herab, herunter

drag ziehen, zerren
dragon Drachen
drain ableiten, austrocknen
dramatise dramatisieren
draught (drắft) Zug, Schluck
draughts Damenspiel
draw ziehen, zeichnen; ein Los ziehen;
— near sich nähern
drawing Zeichnung
drawing-room Gesellschaftszimmer, Salon
drawl schleppen, dehnen
drayman Kärrner, Rollkutscher
dread Furcht
dreadful schrecklich
dream Traum, träumen
drēariness Furchtbarkeit
drēary furchtbar, schrecklich, traurig
dress (be)kleiden, schmücken, kultivieren, beschneiden (Wein); Kleidung, Anzug
dress-circle erster Rang, Balkonloge
dress-coat Frack
drive fahren, Fahrt; Fahrweg
driver Kutscher, Fuhrmann
droll drollig
drop tropfen, fallen lassen, werfen; Tropfen
drunkard Trinker, Trunkenbold
dry trocken, dürr
duchess Herzogin
duchy Herzogtum
due schuldig, gehörig, bestimmt, fällig
duke Herzog
dull stumpf, dumpf, dumm, träge, langsam, langweilig; abstumpfen, schwächen
dūly gehörig, gebührend
dumb stumm
dūrable dauernd
dusky dämmerig, dunkel, düster
dust Staub
dust-pan Kehricht, Müllschaufel
dusty staubig
Dutch holländisch, Holländer
dūty Pflicht, Ehrerbietung, Achtung;
on — auf Wache
dwelling Wohnung, Gebäude

Eager eifrig, (be)gierig
eagle Adler
earn erwerben, ernten
earnest ernstlich, ernsthaft, Ernst
earthenware Töpferware (irden)
ease Muße, Gemächlichkeit, Behaglichkeit, Leichtigkeit
east Osten
eastern östlich
east-wind Ostwind

easy-chair Arm-, Lehnstuhl
easy-easily leicht, bequem
eaves Dachrinne, Traufe
ebb Ebbe
ébony Ebenholz
ecclesiástic-āl kirchlich, geistlich, Kirchen-
ecónomise sparen
ecónomy Ökonomie, Haushaltung, Landwirtschaft, Sparsamkeit
edge Schärfe, Schneide, Ecke, Rand, Kante
edification Erbauung
éducate erziehen, bilden
effāce verwischen
effect bewirken, Wirkung
efféminacy Verweichlichung, weibisches Wesen
efficient (effíshent) wirksam, tüchtig
éffigy, éffigies Bild, Bildnis
éffort Anstrengung
e. g. (exemplī grātia (grāshia) z. B.
egg Ei
elderly ältlich
elect (er)wählen
eléctrify elektrisieren
élegance (cy) Eleganz, Reiz, Annehmlichkeit
élevate erheben, erhöhen
elm Ulme, Rüster
éloquence Beredtsamkeit
eloquent beredt, -sam
else anders (eres) sonst
elsewhere anderswo, irgendwo
embankment, Uferanlage, Damm
embárrass verwirren, in Verlegenheit bringen
émbassy Gesandtschaft
embellishment Verschönerung
embrāce umarmen, umfassen, ergreifen
émerald Smaragd
eminence Höhe, Anhöhe, Erhabenheit, fig. Hoheit, Eminenz
éminent hervorragend
emotion Gemütsbewegung
émphasis Emphase, Nachdruck
emphátic (-āl) nachdrücklich, stark, in hohem Grade
émpire (Kaiser)Reich
employment Beschäftigung
empty leer (aus)leeren
enāble befähigen
enact darstellen, verordnen
enchánt be-, verzaubern
enchanter Zauberer
enchantment Zauber(ei)
enclose einschließen
encounter treffen, begegnen, Gefecht, Zweikampf, Begegnung
end Ende, Zweck
endānger gefährden
endēarment Reiz, Zärtlichkeit
endéavour sich bestreben
endorse indossieren, auf der Rückseite überschreiben
endow (-dau) begaben
endūre ertragen
enemy Feind
engage engagiert sein, teilnehmen
engagement Verpflichtung
engrave eingraben, einprägen
enjoy sich erfreuen, genießen
enjoyment Genuß, Vergnügen, Freude
enlighten aufklären
enlīven beleben
enormous ungeheuer
enroll einschreiben verzeichnen
entángle verwickeln, verwirren
enterprise Unternehmen
entertain unterhalten, bewirken
entertainment Unterhaltung, Bewirtung
enthroned auf dem Throne sitzend
enthūsiast Enthusiast, Schwärmer
éntire ganz, gänzlich
entitle berechtigen
éntrance Eintritt, Anfang
entrance -fee Eintrittsgebühr, Entrée
entry Eintrag
énvelope Briefumschlag, envélop einhüllen
énvious neidisch
envīrons Umgegend
envy Neid
epidémic epidemisch, Epidemie
epilogue Schlußrede, Nachwort
ēpístle Brief, Epistel
epistolary correspondence Briefwechsel
épitaph Grabschrift
ēquable gleichförmig
ēqual-ly gleich, -förmig adv. gleichermaßen
equéstrian (i-) reitend, zu Pferde, Reiter
equíp (i-) ausrüsten, ausstaffieren
ēra Aera, Zeitrechnung
erect er-, aufrichten, aufrecht
érewhile vor kurzem
erl-king Erlkönig
err irren
errand Botschaft, Auftrag; to go on an e. einen Auftrag ausrichten

escape entfliehen, entwischen,
especial-ly besonders [Flucht
esséntial-ly wesentlich
estāblish fest=, einsetzen, gründen, einrichten
establishment Anstalt, Institut
estate Gut, Landsitz
esteem, schätzen, achten, Achtung, Hochschätzung
estuary breite Mündung, Seebucht
etérnal (i-) ewig
etérnity Ewigkeit
Europēan europäisch, Europäer
eve Abend, Vorabend, heilige Abend
evening dress Gesellschaftsanzug
even -tide Abendzeit
evént Ereignis; at all events auf alle Fälle
évident-ly augenscheinlich
evínce (i-) er=, beweisen, darthun
eye Auge, äugeln, betrachten
eyelid Augenlid
eye-witness Augenzeuge
ewer (iūa) Wasserkanne (zum Waschbecken)
exact-ly genau, richtig, gerade
exacting anspruchsvoll
exceed überschreiten
exception Ausnahme
excéssive übermäßig, übertrieben
exchange aus=, vertauschen, Tausch, Austausch, Wechsel,
excite aufregen [Börse
exclamation Ausruf; note of excl. Ausrufezeichen
exclude ausschließen
exclusive ausschließlich
excursionist Ausflügler
excūsable entschuldbar, verzeihlich
excuse Entschuldigung [ziehen
éxecute ausführen, hinrichten, voll=
exemplification Erläuterung durch Beispiele
exért anstrengen
exertion Anstrengung
exhalation Ausdünstung
exhaust erschöpfen
exhibition (-bísh'n) Schau=, Ausstel=
exist bestehen, existieren [lung
exístence Dasein
éxit Aus=, Abgang
expect erwarten
expectant erwartungsvoll
expectation Erwartung
expend ausgeben, aufwenden
expense Kosten
expensive teuer, kostspielig, verschwenderisch
expērience Erfahrung, erfahren, empfinden
expērienced erfahren
expire aushauchen, sterben
explain erklären
explanation Erklärung
explóit Heldenthat
explore aus=, erforschen
expose aussetzen, darlegen, aus=
expression Ausdruck [stellen
exquisite ausgesucht, vortrefflich
extant vorhanden, bekannt
extempore extemporiert, unvorbereitet, aus dem Stegreif
extend ausdehnen, ausbreiten, aus=, erstrecken
extension Ausdehnung
extensive ausgedehnt
extent Ausdehnung
extērior Äußeres
exterminate ausrotten
extérnal äußerlich, auswärtig
extinguish er=, verlöschen
extōl erheben [lich
extraordinary (-trârdi-) außerordent=
extreme äußerst, letzt, übertrieben; Extrem
extremely äußerst
exúlt frohlocken

Fabled erdichtet
face Gesicht, Angesicht; ansehen, gegenüber sein, stehen; entgegen kommen
façade Vorderansicht, Seite
fact Thatsache; in fact in der That
faction Partei, Aufruhr, Zwist
factory Manufaktur, Werkstätte
fade verwelken, vergehen, verschwinden
fag niedere Dienste thun; fagging Plackerei, Pennalismus, Packesel; niedere Dienste thuender Schüler einer unteren Klasse in England
fail (ver)fehlen, mangeln, mißlingen
fain gern [werden
faint schwach, matt, leise; ohnmächtig
fair schön, hell, heiter, blond, redlich, billig, gerecht
fair Jahrmarkt, Messe
fairy Fee, Feen=
faith Glaube, Treue
faithful treu
faithless treulos
falcon (fâcon) Falke

fall ir. fallen; Fall; Fall Sünden=
fall; fall in with zusammentreffen
fallow-deer Damhirschkuh
false falsch, treulos
falsehood Falschheit
falter stammeln, stottern, straucheln,
fame Ruhm, Ruf [stolpern
famed berühmt
familiar vertraut, intim
familiarity Vertrautheit
famíliarize familiarisieren, vertraut
fāmous berühmt [machen
fan Fächer, fächeln
fan-like fächerartig
fancy sich einbilden, vorstellen; Idee,
Gedanke, Einfall, Laune, Geschmack
fanciful phantastisch, wunderlich,
seltsam
fane Tempel, geweihte Stätte
farce Posse
farcical possenhaft, komisch
fare fahren, daran sein, leben, essen
u. trinken; Fahrgeld, Speise, Kost
farewell lebewohl, fahrwohl
farm Pacht=, Land=, Bauerngut
farmer Landwirt, Gutsbesitzer;
farming Acker=, Landbau [Pächter
farm-yard Gutshof
farther weiter
fascinate fesseln [Mode, Sitte
fashion gestalten, modeln, anpassen,
fashionable fein, modisch
fasten (fass'n) befestigen [tödlich
fātal unglücklich, verhängnisvoll;
fate Schicksal, Geschick
fault Fehler
favour Gunst; begünstigen, beehren;
geehrtes od. wertes Schreiben;
in — zu Gunsten; to — with be=
günstigen, Gefallen thun
favourable günstig
favourite Liebling, Lieblings=
fawn Rehkalb, (kriechend) schmeicheln
fear fürchten, Furcht
fearful furchtsam, furchtbar
feast Fest, Schmaus; schmausen, fest=
lich bewirten
feathery federartig, gefiedert
fēature Zug, Gesichtszug, charak=
teristisches Merkmal
fed v. feed ir. füttern, nähren
fee Gebühr
feed füttern, sich nähren, grasen,
feeling Gefühl [weiden, fressen
fellow-man Mit=, Nebenmensch
fen Sumpf, Moor, Marschland
fender Feuergatter, Kamingitter

fern Farnkraut
fértile fruchtbar
fertility Fruchtbarkeit
fervent (för-) heiß, inbrünstig
féstal festlich
festival Fest, Festlichkeit
fetch holen
feudal (fiūdal) adj. Lehens=, Lehn=
feudalism Lehnsherrschaft, =wesen
fēverish fieberisch
fib kleine Lüge, Finte
fiction, Erdichtung, Roman
fictítious fingiert, vorgeblich, unecht
fidget beständige Bewegung, Unruhe
field Feld, Schlachtfeld, Feldzug,
Treffen, Schlacht
fielding Auffangen des Cricketballes
fiēndish teuflisch, böse
fierce (fērs) wild, grimmig, wütend
fīery feurig
figure Gestalt, Zahl, Ziffer
fīnal schließlich, End=
finery Glanz, Putz, Staat
fire anfeuern; (away) anfangen,
beginnen; Feuer
fire-arm Feuerwaffe
fire-place Feuerherd, Kamin
fireside Herd
fir-tree Kiefernbaum
first-rate ersten Ranges
fishery Fischerei
fishing-tackle Fischereigerät
fishmonger Fischhändler
fist Faust
fit passen, sich eignen; passend, geeig=
net, schicklich; Stoß, Anfall, Ohn=
macht; fit up ausstatten, einrichten
fix befestigen, packen, heften, fesseln,
festsetzen
flag erschlaffen, ermatten, abnehmen;
flambeau Fackel [Flagge, Fahne
flame Flamme
flamingo Flamingo
flank Flanke, Seiten=, flankieren, an
der Seite stehen
flannel Flanell
flash Licht, Flamme, Blitz; blitzen
flat flach, platt
flatter schmeicheln
fleece Fell, Vließ
fleecy wollig, flockig
fleet flink, flüchtig, schnell; Flotte
fleeting flüchtig, vergänglich
flesh Fleisch
flexional Biegungs=
flight Flucht
float schweben, fließen

flock Herde, zusammenscharen
flog peitschen, hauen, prügeln
flood (flúd) Flut, Strom
flourish grünen, blühen; Blüte,
Glanz, Tusch, Schnörkel
flourishing blumenreich, schwunghaft
flow fließen; Fluß, Flut
flower-stand Blumenständer
fluid Flüssigkeit, Fluidum
fly Fliege, fliegen (fliehen)
fly-fishing Angeln mit Fliegen
foam Schaum; schäumen
foe Feind
foeman Feind
fog Nebel
fold Falte, Hürde, Pferch
foliage (fōliidge) Blätterwerk
folk(s) (fōk) Leute
follower Nachfolger, Begleiter, An-
hänger; pl. Gefolge, Anhang
folly Thorheit
fond zärtlich, eingenommen, gern
fondle liebkosen [haben
fondness Zärtlichkeit, Vorliebe
fool Narr
footman Lakai, Diener
foot-pace langsamer Schritt
forbear ir. unterlassen, sich enthalten,
forcibly stark, mächtig [vermeiden
foregoing vorausgehend
foreign fremd
fore-leg Vorderbein
foremost vorderste
forest Wald
fórester Förster, Forstmann [spiel
forfeit verwirken; Pfand; Pfänder-
forge Schmiede, Esse, Hammerwerk
forgetfulness Vergeßlichkeit, Ver-
fork Gabel [gessenheit
form Form, Bank, Klasse
formula Formel
forsake verlassen
fortify kräftigen
fortitude Mut, Geistesstärke
fortress Festung
fōrtunate glücklich
fortune Glück, Vermögen, Glücksfall
forward fördern
foster nähren, pflegen
found gründen
foundation Gründung, Grundlage
founder Gründer
found(e)ry Gießerei, Schmelzhütte
fountain Quelle
four-legged vierbeinig
four-wheeler vierrädriger Wagen,
fowl (faul) Geflügel [Droschke

fox Fuchs
frágile zerbrechlich
fragrant duftend
frāil ge-, zerbrechlich
frame Gebäude, Bau; einrahmen
fray (ab)reiben; Schlägerei, Gefecht
freebooter Freibeuter
freedom Freiheit
free-hearted offenherzig
frēquent häufig
fretted zerfressen, durchbrochen, mit
Schnitzwerk verziert
frieze Fries, Gesims
fright(en) (er)schrecken
frightful erschrecklich, fürchterlich
frisky munter, lustig
fritter kleiner, mit Fleisch- oder
Fruchtschnitten gefüllter Pfann-
kuchen
front Stirn, Fronte, Vorderseite; in
f. of vor-, gegenüber
front-door Vorder-, Hausthür,
frontier Grenze [Haupteingang
frozen v. freeze ir. frieren
fruit Frucht, Früchte; Obst
fruitless zwecklos
fry rösten
fūchsia (fjūshia) Fuchsie
fūel (fjūil) Feuerung, Brennmaterial
full-dress Gesellschaftsanzug
fun Spaß, Scherz
fundholder Aktienbesitzer
funny komisch, lustig
fúrniture Hausgerät, Möbel
furnish ausstatten, möblieren
fūsion (fjū-) Schmelzen, Verschmel-
fústian Barchent [zung
fūture (fiū-) zukünftig, Zukunft

Gáiéty Lustigkeit, Fröhlichkeit
gain gewinnen, Gewinn
gainsay widersprechen
gale heftiger Wind, Windstoß
gallant Galan, Stutzer
galley Galeere, offenes Boot
gálvanise galvanisieren
gambol Sprung, Luftsprung
game Spiel, Wild
gape gähnen, Maul aufsperren
gardening Gärtnerei
garment Gewand, Kleid, Anzug
garret Dachstube, Bodenkammer
gasp keuchen, nach Luft schnappen
gate Thor, Pforte
gateway Thorweg
gather sammeln, vereinigen
gaudy prunk-, flitterhaft

gaze (an)starren, anstaunen
gem Edelstein, Gemme
génerāte erzeugen
generous großmütig
gēnius Genius, Geist, Schutzgeist
German Ocean (osh'n) Nordsee
Germany Deutschland
gentry niederer Landadel, vornehme Leute von Erziehung
génuine echt, rein, unverfälscht, natürlich
génuineness Ächtheit, Unverfälschtheit, Wahrheit
get werden, er-, gelangen, kommen
gīant (djīent) Riese
giddy schwindelig
gift Gabe
gifted begabt
gig Cabriolet
gigántic (djī-) riesig, riesenhaft
ginger-bread (djíndja-) Ingwerbrot
glade Lichtung
gladsome fröhlich, freudig
glance Blick, blicken, einen Blick werfen, überblicken
glass-case Glaskasten
glass-work Glashütte, Glasfabrik
glassy gläsern, glasig
glaze überglasen, glasieren, polieren
glēam glänzen, scheinen, strahlen, Glanz, Schimmer
glee Lust, Freude, Fröhlichkeit
glide gleiten
glímpse Lichtblick, Schimmer, Strahl
globe (Erd)-Kugel, Globus
gloom Dunkel, Düsterkeit
gloomy düster
glorious herrlich, ruhmreich
glory Ruhm, Glanz, Herrlichkeit
gloss Glanz
glossy glänzend, schimmernd
glow glühen
glow-worm Glüh-, Johanniswürmchen
gluttony Schwelgerei, Völlerei, Gefräßigkeit
goal Ziel, Mal, Markpfahl
goal-keeper Mal-, Zielwächter
goblet Becher
godfather Pate
godly gottselig, fromm
goodly schön, reizend, beträchtlich
goodness Güte
goods Güter, Waren
gorge anfüllen, vollpfropfen
gorgeous glänzend, prächtig
govern regieren, leiten
government Regierung
governor Regierer, Statthalter, Direktor, Leiter, Verwalter
gown (gaun) langer Rock, Talar
grace Anmut, Reiz, Tischgebet
graceful anmutig
gracious (grāshös) gnädig, huldreich, gütig, freundlich, anmutig, hold
gradātion Stufenfolge, Steigerung
gradually nach und nach, allmählich
grain, Korn, Getreide, Gewebe, Strich, Steigung
grammārian Grammatiker
grand großartig, vornehm
grandchild Enkel
grand-duchy Großherzogtum
grandeur Größe
grape Traube
grapple anklammern, festhalten
grasp (er)greifen
grass-plot Rasenplatz
grate Gitter, Gatter, Rost
grateful dankbar
gratificātion Befriedigung, Vergnügen, Genuß
grating Gitter, -werk
gratitude Dankbarkeit
grave ernst, Grab
grávity Ernst, Würde
grāvy Fleischsaft, Brühe
gray (grey) grau
graze grasen, weiden
great-grandson Urenkel
green grün, Rasenplatz
greengrocer Gemüsehändler
greensward Rasen
greenwood grüner Wald, Waldesschatten
greet (be)grüßen
grey-beard Graubart
grey-hound Windhund
gridīron Bratrost
griēf Kummer, Gram, Beschwerde
griēve kränken, sich grämen, bekümmern, betrüben
grill auf dem Roste braten
grim grimmig, schrecklich, verdrießlich
groan stöhnen
grōat frühere engl. Silbermünze = 4 d., Kleinigkeit
groom Bedienter, Stallknecht, groomed gepflegt
grope greifen, tappen, tastend suchen
grotesque grotesk, seltsam, wunderlich
ground Boden
groundling Zuschauer im Parterre

groundwork Grundlage
group Gruppe
grove Hain
growl (graul) knurren, brummen, Geknurr, Brummen
growth Wachstum, Wuchs
grumble brummen
guárantee (gár-) gewährleisten, verbürgen, garantieren
guard hüten, bewachen, beschützen, bewahren
guard Hut, Wache, Aufsicht, Eisenbahnschaffner, Kondukteur
guardian Hüter, Aufseher, Schutz-
guess (er)raten
guest Gast
guide führen, Führer
guileless arg-, harmlos
guilt Schuld
gulf Golf, Abgrund
gum Gummi, Harz,
gummed gummiert
gun Gewehr
gunpowder Schießpulver

Habit Gewohnheit, Brauch, Kleid
habitation (Be)Wohnung, Wohnplatz
habítual gewöhnlich, gewohnheitsmäßig
hackney-coachman Droschkenkutscher
hail Hagel
hair-mattress Roßhaarmatratze
hall Halle, Saal
hallow heiligen, weihen
hall-stand Gang-, Korridor-Ständer
hamlet Weiler
hand Hand, Zeiger; einhändigen, überreichen
hand-box Handschachtel
hanging Behang, Vorhang, Gardine
handiwork Handarbeit, Kunstwerk, Schöpfung
handkerchief Taschentuch
handle angreifen, handhaben, behandeln; Handhabe, Stiel, Griff
handsome hübsch, zierlich, anständig
happen sich ereignen; als adv. zufällig
harángue anreden, Rede [vielleicht
harass beunruhigen, quälen
harbour Hafen
hard hart, mühsam, schwer; h. by [dicht bei
hardly kaum
hard-seated hartsitzig
hardy hart, fest, abgehärtet
hare Hase
harm Unrecht, Leid, Schade
harmless harmlos, arglos
harp Harfe
harshness Rauheit
harvest Ernte, ernten
hasten (haste) (häss'n) eilen, hasten
haste Hast, Eile
hat Hut
hatch (aus)hecken
hate hassen, Haß
hat-rack Hutrechen, -Gestell
hātred Haß
haughty hochmütig
haunt Aufenthaltsort, Schlupfwinkel
hawk Habicht, Falke
hawthorn Hage-, Weißdorn
hay Heu
hayband Heuseil
head Haupt, Kopf; v. an der Spitze stehen, anführen
head-ache Kopfschmerz
head-master Direktor einer Schule
hēal heilen
héalth Gesundheit
healthful gesund, heilsam
hēap Haufen, anhäufen [innig
heartfelt tief empfunden, herzlich,
hearth-rug Herdteppich, -decke
hearty herzlich, aufrichtig, gesund, lebhaft
heat Hitze, Heftigkeit, Anstrengung, Lauf, heißer Kampf
hēathen Heide
héavenly himmlisch
heavy schwer, -fällig
hedgerow Baumhecke
heed achten auf, beachten
heedless acht-, sorglos
heel Ferse
height Höhe, Höhepunkt
heir Erbe
hell Hölle
helmet Helm
help Hilfe, helfen, bedienen
hemisphere Halbkugel
hence daher, von hier
henceforth fortan
hérald feierlich einführen
heréditary erblich
hēro Held
heróic heroisch
héron Reiher
hésitate zögern, zaudern
hidden v. hide ir. verbergen
hide ir. verbergen
hide-and-seek Versteckspiel
hídeous gräßlich, abscheulich
high-born hochgeboren

high-bred vornehm erzog., fein geschult
high-life vornehme Welt (frz. haute volée)
hilly hügelig
hind Hirschkuh
hind-leg Hinderfuß
Hindostan Vorderindien
hinge Thürangel
hip Hüfte
hire mieten
hiss (aus)zischen, pfeifen
historian Geschichtsschreiber
historical-ly geschichtlich
hit treffen, schlagen, stoßen; hit off nachahmen
hoard sammeln, aufhäufen
hoary weißlich, grau, eisgrau
Hock Hochheimer
hog Eber
hoist hissen
hole Loch
holiday Feiertag; pl. Ferien
hollow Hohle, Höhlung, Grube
holly Stechpalme
holy heilig
homage Huldigung, Ehrerbietung
homogēneous gleichartig, homogen
honest ehrlich, rechtschaffen, anständig
honeysuckle Geisblatt
honorary title Ehrentitel
honour ehren; Ehre
honourable ehrenhaft, ehrenwert
hoof Huf
hook haken, anhaken
hop hopfen, hüpfen, springen
hop(s) Hopfen
horror Abscheu, Entsetzen
horse Pferd, Roß; Reiterei
horseback, on zu Pferde
horse-racing Wettrennen
horse-trap Pferdespur
horticúlture Gartenbau
hospitable gastfreundlich
hospitality Gastfreundschaft
host Wirt, Gast, Kriegsheer
hostess Wirtin
hostile feindlich
hostility Feindseligkeit
hound Jagdhund
household Haushalt, häuslich
housekeeper Haushälterin
housemaid Hausmagd, Stuben- mädchen
hover schweben
howl heulen; Geheul
hue (hjū) Farbe, Färbung
huge (hjūdge) ungeheuer
human menschlich; humāne menschenfreundlich, human
humble bescheiden, demütig, unterthänig
humour Laune
Hungārian ungarisch, Ungar
Hungary Ungarn
hunting Jagen; Hetzjagd auf Füchse und Hirsche
hunting-horse Jagdpferd
huntsman Jäger
hurly Tumult, Getöse
hurry Eile, Hast, Treiben
hurt ir. verletzen
husband Gemahl, Ehemann
husbandry Haushaltung, Sparsamkeit
hush stillen, beruhigen, zum Schweigen bringen, besänftigen
hushed still, verstummt
hut Hütte
huzzâ hurrah; jauchzen, hurrah schreien
huzzâing hurrahschreien
hyēna Hyäne
hymn Hymne, Lobgesang

Ice Eis
iced gefroren; überzuckert
īdéntify identifizieren, identisch, gleich machen, als identisch betrachten
īdéntity Gleichheit, Identität
ídiom Mundart, Idiom
idiomátic idiomatisch, der Sprache eigen
īdle träge, faul
ignorance (íg-no-) Unwissenheit
ígnorant unwissend
ill übel, böse, krank
ill-breeding schlechte Erziehung
ill-famed berüchtigt
ill-favoured ungestaltet
illness Krankheit
ill-tempered übelgelaunt, mürrisch, verdrießlich
ill-treatment Mißhandlung
illūmine er-, beleuchten
illūsion Täuschung, Illusion
illústrious berühmt
ill-use mißhandeln
imáginable denkbar
ímitator Nachahmer
immēdiate-ly unmittelbar, sofort
immense ungeheuer
immémorable undenklich, nicht erinnerlich
immeasurable unermeßlich, unmäßig
impássable unweglich, unübersteiglich
impērial kaiserlich
impērious gebieterisch, herrisch
ímplement Werkzeug, Gerät
imply̆ einschließen, bedeuten
imposing imponierend, großartig, imposant

imprecātion Verwünſchung
impress drucken, eindrucken, auf-
prägen, Eindruck machen
impression Eindruck
impressive eindrucksvoll
imprisonment Gefangenſchaft
improve verbeſſern
ímpulse Antrieb, Anſtoß
improvement Verbeſſerung
inaugurate einweihen, einführen
incapable unfähig
incéssant unaufhörlich, beſtändig
inclément unfreundlich, unbarm-
inclination Neigung [herzig, rauh
incline (ſich) neigen; inclined geneigt
inclose ſiehe enclose
include einſchließen; including ein-
inch Zoll [ſchließlich
incómparable unvergleichlich
incongēnial nicht angemeſſen, unzu-
inconsíderate unüberlegt [träglich
inconsístent unverträglich, unver-
einbar, widerſprechend
increase vermehren, vergrößern,
wachſen, zunehmen
incredible unglaublich
incūrable unheilbar
indebted verſchuldet, verpflichtet
indeed in der That
indepéndence Unabhängigkeit
independent unabhängig
indescrībable unbeſchreiblich
india-rubber Gummi
indifference Gleichgiltigkeit
indífferent-ly gleichgiltig, einerlei,
unterſchiedslos, unbekümmert,
mittelmäßig
indígenous eingeboren
indígnant entrüſtet
indirect-ly mittelbar
indiscrībable unbeſchreiblich
indiscríminate unterſchiedslos, durch-
einander
indisposition Unpäßlichkeit
individual Individuum, individuell
in-door im Hauſe
indūce veranlaſſen, verleiten [digen
indúlge ſich ergeben, fröhnen, befrie-
indulgence Nachſicht, Ablaß
industrious fleißig, betriebſam, ge-
werbthätig
industry Gewerbe, Gewerbthätigkeit
ineffectual unwirkſam, wirkungslos
infērior untergeordnet, geringer
inféſt beunruhigen, heimſuchen,
plagen, verheeren
ínfinite-ly unendlich

infírm ſchwach, kraftlos
inflammation Entzündung
inflect flektieren, biegen, deklinieren,
inflexible unbeugſam [abwandeln
inflíct zufügen, auflegen, verhängen
influence Einfluß, beeinfluſſen
ínflux Einfließen, Einſtrömen
inform benachrichtigen, unterrichten
information Auskunft, Belehrung
infūse einflößen
ingēnious geiſtreich, ſinnreich, ſcharf-
inhabit bewohnen [ſinnig
inhabitant Einwohner
inhērent anhangend, angeboren
inhéritance Erbſchaft
initial (inísh'l) Anfangsbuchſtabe
ínjury Leid, Beleidigung, Unrecht
ink Tinte
ínmate Inſaſſe, Hausgenoſſe
inn Gaſthaus
inning Reihe (Cricket), Anſpiel
inordinate unordentlich, ausſchweifend
inquire forſchen, nachfragen
inquiry office Auskunftsbureau
inquisitive neugierig
ínroad Ein-, Überfall, Streifzug
inscription Inſchrift
insensible unempfindlich, unvernünf-
ínside drinnen [tig
insight Einblick
insignia Ab-, Ehrenzeichen, Inſignien
insignificance Bedeutungsloſigkeit
insignificant unbedeutend
inspire einflößen
inst. = instant gegenwärtig, laufend
instance, for zum Beiſpiel
instant Augenblick, laufende (auch
instantly ſofort, ſogleich inst.)
instéad anſtatt
ínstigate anſtiften, antreiben
institution Einrichtung
instruction Belehrung [Urkunde
instrument Werkzeug, Inſtrument,
instrumental mitwirkend, behilflich
insufficient-ly (-físhent) ungenügend
integrity Redlichkeit, Rechtſchaffenheit
intend beabſichtigen
intense hoch, kräftig, aufs höchſte
intent Abſicht [geſpannt
intention Abſicht [erpicht
intént-ly gefliſſentlich, aufmerkſam,
intér(r) beerdigen
intercommunication gegenſeitiger
Verkehr, Mitteilung
intercourse Verkehr
interdict unterſagen
interesting intereſſant

intērior innere, Inneres
intermarriage Wechselheirat
intermēdiate in der Mitte liegend, Zwischen-, Mittel-
intérment Begräbnis, Beerdigung
intermingle vermischen
intermittent abwechselnd; i. fever Wechselfieber
intérnal innerlich
intérpreter Dolmetscher
interrupt unterbrechen
íntimate-ly innig, vertraut
intolerable unerträglich
intrínsic innere, wahr, wirklich
introduce einführen, vorstellen
introduction Einführung, Einleitung
invade einfallen, überfallen, überziehen
invāder Eindringling, Angreifer
invāsion Einfall, Angriff
invention Erfindung
inventor Erfinder
ínverse u. invérse umgekehrt
invígorate kräftigen
invīolate unverletzt, unversehrt
invisible unsichtbar
ínvoice Frachtbrief, Faktur
Irish irisch, Irländer
iron Eisen, eisern; (aus)bügeln, plätten
irregularity Unregelmäßigkeit
irreligious irreligiös, gottlos
island Insel
islander Insulaner, Inselbewohner
íssue heraus-, hinausgehen; Ausgang
īvy Epheu

Jáckal Schakal
jam zusammenpressen, einklemmen
jaunt Fahrt, Ausflug
jaw Kinnlade
jéalous eifersüchtig, neidisch
jerk zucken, stoßen; Stoß, Schlag, Ruck
jest scherzen, spaßen
Jew Jude
jig Gigue, Art leichter Tanz
jingle klingeln, klappern, rasseln
jollity Lustigkeit, Fröhlichkeit
jolly heiter, lustig
join verbinden, vereinigen; j. in teilnehmen
joint Gelenk, Keule, Bruststück, großer Braten
joint-owner Miteigentümer
joke Witz, Scherz
jostle (djossl) (an)stoßen, drängen
journal (djúrnal) Tagebuch, Zeitschrift
journey Reise, reisen, wandern
jóvial lustig, launig
jūbilant jubelnd
judge (be)urteilen; Richter
jump springen
jūrisdíction Gerichtsbarkeit
jurisprūdence Rechtsgelehrsamkeit, -wissenschaft
jūry Geschwornengericht
jústice Gerechtigkeit
justify rechtfertigen
justle stoßen, drängen
jūvenīle jugendlich

Keen scharf, schneidend, durchdringend
keep behalten, aufbewahren
keeper Hüter, Wächter, Aufseher, Bewahrer, Beschützer
kept von keep ir. behalten, unterhalten
kick mit dem Fuße stoßen -up (vulg.) anfangen (einen Lärm)
kidnap Kinder stehlen
kidney-pie Nieren-Pastete
kill töten, schlachten
kiln Brenn-, Ziegelofen
kind gütig, Art
kíndle anfachen, entflammen
kīndness Güte
kingdom Königreich
kitchen Küche
kite Hühnerweihe, Papierdrache
kneel knieen
knell Geläut der Totenglocke, läuten, klingen
knicknack Krimskrams, Spielerei
knife Messer
knight Ritter, zum Ritter schlagen
knighthood Ritterschaft, -würde
knitting Strickzeug, -Arbeit
knock schlagen, klopfen, Schlag, Klopfen
knocker Klopfer
knot Knoten, Schleife, Haufen
knowing kundig, erfahren, geschickt, schlau, durchtrieben
knowledge Kenntnis, Kenntnisse, Wissen
Lābour Arbeit, Mühe
labourer Arbeiter
labōrious arbeitsam, mühsam
labúrnum savoyischer Gaisklee
lace Spitze(n)
lad Bursche, Knabe, Jüngling
lāden v. lade (be)laden
ladle Kochlöffel, Schöpflöffel
lāity Laienschaft, weltliche Stand
lake See
láma Lama
lámentable beklagenswert, elend

lamp Lampe, Licht, Leuchter
lamp-glass Lampenglas
landed Ländereien besitzend
landing Landung
landlord Gutsbesitzer, Hausherr, Gastwirt
land-owner Landbesitzer
landscape Landschaft
lane Gasse
languid matt, schwach, verzagt
lántern (lanthorn veralt.) Laterne
lark Lerche
'larum, alarm Lärm; l. bell Lärmglocke, Wecker
last dauern, letzter
late spät, vormalig, selig, ver-
láteral seitlich [storben
lath Latte, Lattenwerk
lattice Gitter
laudable lobenswert
laugh lachen, Lachen, Gelächter
laughter Gelächter
launch schießen, sich stürzen
laurel Lorbeer
lavish freigebig, verschwenderisch, verschwenden, vergeuden
lawful gesetzlich
law-giver Gesetzgeber
lawn Rasenplatz, Lichtung
lawyer Rechtsanwalt, Advokat
lay Lied, Gesang
lay out anlegen
laziness Trägheit, Faulheit
lazy träge
léad Blei
lēad ir. führen, leiten
leading Leitung; adj. erste, Haupt-
lean ir. lehnen
leap ir. springen, hüpfen
learning Gelehrsamkeit
lease Pacht, Pachtzeit
léather Leder
lecture Vorlesung
left links, Linke
left v. leave ir. ver-, hinterlassen
leg Bein
légendary legendenhaft
legible leserlich
législāture gesetzgebende Macht
leisure (lēshö) Muße
leisurely gemächlich
lémon Limone, Citrone
lémonade Limonade
lender Leiher, Verleiher
length Länge
Lent Fastenzeit
léopard (lépard) Leopard

lest damit nicht, daß nicht
letter-box Briefkasten
letter-writing Briefschreiben
lével Ebene, wagerechte Fläche
līable unterworfen, ausgesetzt, verantwortlich, verpflichtet
liberality Freigebigkeit
liberty Freiheit
lībrary Bibliothek, -Zimmer
lid Lid, Deckel
lie ir. liegen, Lüge
lift heben, er-, aufheben, Heben, Hebung, to give a. l. aufhelfen, beistehen
life-size lebensgroß
light ir. erleuchten, anzünden
light on antreffen, stoßen, auffinden
light-house Leuchtturm
lightning Blitzen
līlac spanischer Flieder
lily-cup Lilienkelch
limb (lím) Glied [schränken
limit Grenze, begrenzen, be-
limpid klar, hell, durchsichtig
line Linie, Zeile, Infanterie
lineage Abstammung
linen Leinen-, Weißzeug, Wäsche
linger harren, verweilen, zögern
link Glied (einer Kette)
lion Löwe
listen (liss'n) lauschen, horchen
lit v. light ir. erleuchten
litter Streu, Sänfte
live leben, wohnen; adj. līve lebendig, lebhaft
līvely lebhaft
livery Livree, Wahlbürger, Bürger einer Zunft in London
living Lebensunterhalt, Lebens-
loan Darlehen, Anleihe [weise
loathsome ekelhaft, widerlich
lobster Hummer
lōcal örtlich, Orts-
locāte anweisen, wohin verlegen, begrenzen
locking-up Thorschluß
lodge wohnen
lodging Wohnung, Logis
loft Boden, Speicher
lofty, luftig, hoch, erhaben
loiter zaudern, zögern, trödeln
loiterer Zauderer, Zögerer
looking-glass Spiegel
look-out Warte, Lauer
loose los, lose, lösen; turn l. laufen lassen

lone einsam
long for sich sehnen
lordly herrschaftlich
Lorraine Lothringen
loss Verlust, at a loss in Verlegenheit
lot Loos, Geschick, Masse, Menge
low niedrig, nieder, tief, leise
lower erniedrigen, herabsetzen, vermindern
luck Glück
lucky glücklich, Glück habend
lull einlullen, einschläfern
luncheon zweites Frühstück um 12 oder 1 Uhr
luncheon-bar Frühstückslokal, -stube
lunch-time Frühstückszeit
lungs Lunge
luxury (lökshery) Luxus, Üppigkeit
lump Stück, Brocken
lying von lie ir. v. liegen

Machinery (mashēnery) Maschinerie, Mechanismus
madness Irr-, Wahnsinn
magic Zauber, -ei
magícian (madjísh'n) Zauberer
mágnate Magnat, Hochadelige
magníficent prächtig, herrlich, großartig
magnify vergrößern, verherrlichen
magnitude Größe, Großartigkeit
mahógany Mahagoni
maid of honour Ehrendame
maiden Jungfrau, Mädchen, Magd
mail Briefpost
main Hauptteil, Gewalt, weites Meer; Haupt-, hauptsächlich
maintain aufrecht erhalten, behaupten
majestical majestätisch
mammālia Säugetier
manage handhaben, verwalten, führen, zuwege, zustande bringen
management Behandlung
manager Geschäftsführer, Dirigent
mane Mähne
manhood Mannheit, Mannesalter
mánifest offenbaren, ankündigen
manlike menschenähnlich
manliness Männlichkeit
mánor-house Herrenhaus
mansion Herrenhaus
mantle Mantel
mantle-piece Kaminsims
manufáctory Fabrik, Manufaktur
manufacture fabrizieren, Fabrik, Fabrikation, manufacturing Fabrik-
marble Marmor
march off abmarschieren, fortführen
mark (be)zeichnen, (be)merken; markieren, (Kenn)zeichen, Mark, e
marmelade Obstmuß, Marmelade
marquess, marquis Marquis
marshy sumpfig, morastig
martial kriegerisch
marvel Wunder, (sich) wundern
marvellous wunderbar
marry (ver)heiraten
mass Masse, Haufen, Menge
match Partie, Streichholz, gleichkommen
matchless unvergleichlich
mate Gefährte, Genosse, Kamerad; Obersteuermann
mātron Matrone, bejahrte Frau; Haushälterin (boarding-school)
matter Materie, Stoff, Sache, Angelegenheit; no m. hat nichts zu bedeuten, zu sagen; thut nichts
matter-of-fact Thatsache; — people praktisches Volk
matūre reifen
mausolēum Mausoleum, prächtiges Grabmal
māyor Bürgermeister
mayoralty Würde eines Bürgermeisters
maxim Grundsatz
mēal Mahl, -zeit
mean, adj. niedrig, gemein
mean beabsichtigen
meāndering Mäander, Windung, Krümmung
means Mittel, Weise, Art
meanwhile mittlerweile, unterdessen
mēasles Masern
méasure Maß, Maßregel, messen
meat Fleisch
Mediterrānean Mittelländisch. Meer
mēdium Medium, Mittel
meek sanft, sanftmütig, milde
meeting, Begegnung, Zusammenkunft, Versammlung
mélancholy schwermütig, Schwermut
melt ir. schmelzen
memorable denkwürdig
memórial Denkmal
memory Gedächtnis, Andenken
menágerie Menagerie, Tierbude
mention erwähnen, Erwähnung
mere-ly bloß, nur, allein
mercer Seidenhändler, Krämer; m.'s company Krämergilde
merciful barmherzig, gnädig
mercy Gnade, Barmherzigkeit
merit Verdienst
meritorious verdienstlich, verdienstvoll

merry lustig, heiter
merry-making Lustbarkeit
message Botschaft
metropolis Hauptstadt
mice pl. v. mouse Maus
middle Mitte
middle-aged von mittlerem Alter
middle age Mittelalter
middling mittelmäßig
midland mittelländisch [Johannis
midsummer Sommersonnenwende,
midway Mitte des Wegs, auf halbem Wege
mimic nachgeahmt, imitiert
mind Geist, Sinn, Gemüt, Verstand, Lust; Meinung, Ansicht
mind merken, beachten, sich kümmern um; never— thut nichts
mine Grube, Bergwerk
mingle vermischen
mínister Diener, Minister, Geistlicher
minstrel Sänger, Minnesänger
minstrelsy Minnesang, Gesang, Chor
mínted gemünzt [lichkeit
minūteness Genauigkeit, Umständ-
míracle Wunder; m. play Mirakel- od.
mire Schlamm [Heiligenspiel
mirth Fröhlichkeit, Lust
miscellāneous ge-, vermischt
míschievous boshaft, mutwillig
misery Elend
misfortune Unglück, Unglücksfall
mission Sendung, Auftrag, Mission
mismanagement Versehen, schlechte
mist Nebel [Behandlung
mistaken, to be sich irren; adj. irrig
mistletoe Mistelzweig
mistress Herrin, Lehrerin
mitre Bischofsmütze
mixed-pickles eingemachte saure
mixture Mischung [Früchte
moat Schloß-, Festungsgraben
mode Art, Weise, Sitte, Mode
model-school Musterschule
moderation Mäßigung
moist feucht
mónastery Kloster
monk Mönch
monster Ungeheuer
monstrosity Mißgestalt, Ungeheuer-
monstrous ungeheuerlich [lichkeit
mood Art, Laune, Stimmung
morality Moralität, Sittlichkeit, geistliches Schauspiel
moral(s) Moral, Sittlichkeit; adj. moralisch, sittlich
morion Sturmhaube, Helm
morn, morning Morgen
mortal sterblich, Sterblicher
mortification Demütigung, Beschämung, Kränkung
mōuld Form; formen, bilden
mountain Berg
mournful traurig
mousetrap Mausefalle
mouth Mund, Mündung
movable beweglich
move (sich) bewegen
movement Bewegung
múd Schlamm, Moder
multiform vielgestaltig
multitude Menge
mummy Mumie
munch gierig fressen
Mūnich München
murder morden, töten, Mord
muscle (mússl) Muskel
múscular muskulös, muskelstark
mūsic Musik
músket Muskete, Flinte
mustáchios Schnurrbart
mustard-pot Senftopf, -büchse
muster mustern; sich an-, versammeln
mute stumm
mutter murmeln, rollen
mutton Hammelfleisch
mutton-chop Hammelrippchen
mūtual gegen-, wechselseitig
myrtle (mörtl) Myrte
mystērious geheimnisvoll
mystery Geheimnis, Mysterie, geistliches Schauspiel

Nail Nagel
name (be)nennen, Name
nárrative erzählend, Erzählung
narrow eng
nātive natürlich, an-, eingeboren, Eingeborener; —country, —land Vaterland, Heimat
naught (nought) nichts
nave Schiff (einer Kirche)
navigator Seefahrer
nécessary nötig; pl. Bedürfnisse
necessity Notwendigkeit, Bedürfnis
neck Nacken, Hals
need nötig haben, brauchen, Not,
needle Nadel [Bedürfnis
needs notwendigerweise, schlechter-
négative verneinend [dings
neglect vernachlässigen, Vernachlässigung
negōtiable umsetzbar, verkäuflich
negōtiate ver-, unterhandeln

nēgro Neger
neigh (nāi) wiehern
neighbourhood Nachbarschaft, Gegend
nephew Neffe
net Netz
nevertheless nichtsdestoweniger, dessenungeachtet
newspaper Zeitung
ních(e) Nische, Blende
nick Einschnitt, Kerbe, Augenblick, Zeitpunkt
Nick Nickolaus
nickname Spitz-, Zuname
nigh nahe
night-cap Nachtmütze, -Haube
nightingale Nachtigall
nimble schnell, flink
nobility Adel
nobody niemand
nod nicken, Wink, Nicken, Neigen
noise Lärm
noiseless geräuschlos
nomádic nomadisch, umherschweifend
nonce, for the absichtlich, mit Fleiß
nonsensical unsinnig, thöricht
nook Winkel, Ecke
noon Mittag
noonday Mittag
normal-school Seminar
north Norden
northward nordwärts
note Note, Ton, Weise, Gesang; Billet, Schein
note of hand Handschein, Handwechsel
note-paper Briefpapier
notice Notiz, Anzeige, Kenntnis, bemerken
notion Begriff, Idee
notwithstanding nichtsdestoweniger, dessenungeachtet
noun Name, Substantiv
novelty Neuigkeit
nowadays heutzutage
nūmerous (niū-) zahlreich
nurse pflegen; Pflegerin, Amme
nut Nuß
nut-crackers Nußknacker
nutmeg Muskatnuß

Oak-chair eichener Stuhl
oath Eid, Schwur
oats Hafer
obēdient gehorsam
object Einwand machen, widersprechen
obligation Verpflichtung, Verbindlichkeit
oblige verpflichten, verbinden
obliging höflich, dienstfertig
oblivion Vergessenheit
obscūre Dunkel, verdunkeln, unbekannt
obsēquious gehorsam, willfährig, sklavisch
obsérvance Beobachtung, Vorschrift, Sitte, Gewohnheit
observe beobachten
obstruct verstopfen, versperren
obtain erlangen, erhalten
occasion Gelegenheit, verursachen
occásional gelegentlich
óccupant Bewohner, Besitzer
occupation Beschäftigung
occupy besitzen, einnehmen, beschäftigen
occur geschehen, sich ereignen
occurrence Begebenheit, Ereignis
oceanic (oshiánik) ozeanisch
odd seltsam, sonderbar
odd-looking seltsam aussehend
off ab, weg, los, weit; auf der Höhe von (auf See)
offénce Beleidigung, Vergehen; take— übel nehmen
óffice Amt, Büreau, Dienst
official (-físhal) Beamter, amtlich, dienstlich, Amts-
offspring Nachkömmling, Nachkomme
oister und oyster Auster
olden alt
omit aus-, weglassen
once einmal, einst
onlooker Zuschauer
onward vorwärts, weiter
open-air, in the in der freien Luft, unter freiem Himmel
operate wirken
opinion Meinung
opportunity Gelegenheit
oppose entgegenstellen, widerstehen
opposer Gegner, Widersacher
opposite gegenüber
oppress unterdrücken
oppressive bedrückend
oration Rede
órator Redner
orb Kreis, Zirkel, Sphäre
orchard Obstgarten
order Ordnung, Befehl, Bestellung, Rang, Klasse; befehlen
orderly ordentlich, gesittet
organ Organ, Orgel
ōriel Erker; o. window Erkerfenster
oriéntal orientalisch
órigin Ursprung
oríginal ursprünglich, Urbild
ornamental zur Zierde dienend, zieren
orphan Waise

óstrich Strauß (Vogel)
ounce Unze
out-door draußen, im Freien
outer äußerer
overcome besiegen
overdone übergar, überladen
overhead droben, darüber
overhear behorchen, überhören
overlook übersehen
overmuch übermäßig
overpowering überwältigend
overrun überwachsen, -wuchert
overseer Aufseher
overtake ereilen, überraschen, -fallen
overwrought überarbeitet, übertrie-
owe schulden, herrühren [ben
owl (aul) Eule
own zugeben, zugestehen, eigen
oyster (oister) Auster

Pace Schritt; schreiten
pacific friedlich, still; Pacific Ocean
Stiller Ozean
pack packen; — up einpacken
pāgan heidnisch
pāganism Heidentum
págeant Schaugepränge
págeantry Prunk, Gepränge
pain Schmerz; pl. Schmerzen, Mühe
painful schmerzhaft, peinlich
paint malen
painting Malerei, Gemälde
palace Palast
pale bleich, blaß; bleich machen
palfrey Paradepferd, Zelter
pálisāde Pallisade, Pfahl, -werk
pallet Palette; Pritsche
palm (pâm) Palme, Handfläche
palpable fühl-, greifbar
pancake Pfannkuchen
panelling Getäfel
pang Pein, Angst, Schmerz
pāpal päpstlich
paper-chase Papier-, Schnitzeljagd
parade paradieren; Prunk, Pracht,
paramount höchste, oberste [Parade
parasític schmarotzerisch
parch dörren, rösten, vertrocknen
parish Kirchspiel, Pfarrei
parishioner Pfarrkind
párlance Sprache, Sprach-, Aus-
drucksweise
parlour Sprech-, Wohnzimmer
parrot Papagei
parsimony Sparsamkeit, Kargheit
parsonage Pfarrhaus

part trennen, scheiden; Teil, Anteil;
Rolle, Talent
partake teilnehmen [nommen
partial-ly teilweise, parteiisch, einge-
partícular seltsam, eigen, besonders;
in — im besondern
parting Trennung, Abschied
partner Teilhaber, Gefährte
party Teilhaber, Genoß, Person;
Partei, Anzahl, geladene Gesell-
schaft
pass vorübergehen, sich ereignen, zu-,
verbringen, reichen, übertreffen,
gelten, bewilligen, durchgehen (im
Parlament)
pássage Gang, Durchgang, Durch-
zug, Durchfahrt; Textstelle, Citat
pássenger Passagier, Vorübergehende
passionate (páshonet) leidenschaftlich
past vergangen, vorüber, Vergangen-
pāste Teig, Pappe [heit
pastime Zeitvertreib
pāstrycook Pastetenbäcker
pástūrage Weide, Weideland
patch Flecken, Stelle
patérnal elterlich
path Pfad
pātience Geduld
patient Patient
pátronize beschützen, begünstigen
patter klappern, trampeln; Getrampel
pattern Muster
pause Pause; stehen bleiben, pau-
sieren, schweigen
pave pflastern
pavement Pflaster, Fußboden
payment Bezahlung
pēa Erbse
peace Friede
peaceful friedlich
pea-cock Pfauhahn
pēak Spitze, Koppe, Gipfel
pēal Geläute, Getön, Schall,
peār Birne [Donner
pearl (ea = ö) Perle
péasant Landmann, Bauer
péasantry Bauernschaft, Landvolk
pēa-soup Erbsensuppe
pēat Torf [Eigentümlichkeit
peculiarity (pecūliá-) Eigenheit,
pédagogue Pädagog, Schulmann
pedéstrian Fußgänger
pédestal Fußgestell
peel Schale, Rinde
peep hervorschauen, gucken
peer Pair
peg Pflock, Holznagel

pen Feder
pencil Bleistift
pencil-case Bleistiftfutteral
pendent hängend, schwebend, herab-
hängend
peninsula (-sjula) Halbinsel
peniténtiary (-shery) Besserungshaus
penknife Federmesser
people Leute, Volk; bevölkern
pepper Pfeffer
peradventure vielleicht
perch Rute, Stange
perchánce vielleicht
pérfect vollkommen, vollständig
perfection Vollkommenheit, Vervoll-
perfidious hinterlistig [kommnung
perform darstellen
performance Vorstellung
perfūme (-iū-) Wohlgeruch, Parfum
pēriod Zeitraum
periódical periodisch, wiederkehrend
perish umkommen, vergehen
perpetual unaufhörlich, ewig
perry Birnenmost
persevērance Ausdauer
personate vor-, darstellen
persónify personifizieren
perspéctive Perspektive, Fernsicht
pérsuade überreden, überzeugen
persuasion Überzeugung, Meinung,
Glaube
perūse durchlesen, durchlaufen
pervāde durchdringen
pervert verkehren, verderben
phāeton (fāiton) Art Kutschwagen
phéasant Fasan [schenfreund
philánthropist Philanthrop, Men-
photógrapher Photograph
phrase Phrase, Redensart
physical physisch
physician Arzt
physics Physik, Arzneien
pick up aufheben, auflesen
pickles sauer eingemachtes Gemüse
pickpocket Taschendieb
picture Gemälde
picturesque malerisch
pie Pastete
pier (pēr) Hafendamm
pig Schwein
pile Haufen, Masse
pile up auf-, anhäufen, aufbauen
pilgrimage Pilgerschaft, Wallfahrt
pillar Pfeiler, Säule
pillow Kopfkissen
pinch kneifen; Prise
pine Fichte
pink Nelke; Fleischfarbe
pinnacle Zinne
pīnt Pinte, Nößel, Quart
pīous fromm
pipe Pfeife
pīrate Pirat, Seeräuber
pit löchern, Grübchen machen;
Grube, Parterre im Theater
pitch Pech; verpichen, stecken, auf-
schlagen; p. into losstürzen
pity bedauern, bemitleiden; Mitleid
pívot Zapfen, Angel, Angelpunkt
placárd Plakat
plain eben, glatt, einfach, klar, ehrlich,
deutlich, offenherzig; Ebene
plainness Einfachheit, Geradheit,
Offenherzigkeit
plank Planke, Bohle
plash plätschern
plaster Mörtel, Gyps
plate Platte, Teller
plated plattiert, in Platten
play spielen; Spiel, Schauspiel
player Spieler, Schauspieler
play-ground Spielplatz
plēad verteidigen, fürsprechen
pleasant angenehm
please gefallen; bitte
pleasure-ground Rasen-, Spielplatz
pledge Pfand
plenty Fülle, Menge, Überfluß
plēonástic-al pleonastisch, überflüssig
plot Verschwörung
ploughshare Pflugschar
pluck pflücken, zupfen, zerren; Mut
plume Feder-, Helmbusch
plum-pudding Rosinenpudding
pneumōnia (njū-) Lungenentzündung
pocket Tasche
pocket-handkerchief Taschentuch
point Punkt, Spitze
point out zeigen
poke aufrühren, schüren
poker Schüreisen, Feuerhaken
pole Stange, Pfahl, Deichsel
policeman (polēs-) Polizeidiener
pólish polieren, glänzend machen
polīte geglättet, verfeinert, artig,
politeness Höflichkeit [höflich
pólitics Politik
polity Regierung, Verfassung, Politik
pond Teich, Weiher
pool Pfuhl, Sumpf, Teich
popular volkstümlich, -beliebt
popularity Beliebtheit, Popularität
population Bevölkerung
populous bevölkert

porcelain Porzellan
porch Portal, Vor-, Säulenhalle
pork Schweinefleisch, -braten
port (See-)Hafen; Portwein (von Oporto)
pôrtal Portal, Pforte, Prunkthor
porter Träger, Packträger; dunkles starkes Bier
portmánteau Reise-, Handkoffer
portrait-gallery Bildergallerie
position Stellung, Lage
possess besitzen
possessor Besitzer
possibility Möglichkeit
pōst Post; Pfosten, Pfahl; auf die Post geben
postage Briefporto
postal order Geldanweisung
posterity Nachkommenschaft, Nach- [welt
postman Postbote
post meridiem (Lat.) nachmittags, (von post nach u. meridies [Mittag)
post-office Postamt
postpone verschieben
postscript(um) Nachschrift
pot Topf, Krug, Kanne, Maß
potato Kartoffel
pouch (pau-) Beutel, Tasche
pōultry Geflügel
pour (pôr) aus-, eingießen
poverty Armut
power Macht, Gewalt
powerful mächtig kräftig
practice Übung, Praxis, Brauch
practical-ly praktisch, wirklich
practise üben
præpositor (auch pre-) Aufsicht füh- render Schüler der obersten Klasse
praise loben, preisen; Lob, Preis, Ruhm
prance sich bäumen, prunken
pray beten, bitten
preach predigen
preacher Prediger, Pfarrer
prébend Präbende, Pfründe
precaution Vorsicht, Vorsichtsmaß- [regel
precede vorausgehen
prēcept Vorschrift
prēcinct Gebiet, Bezirk, Bereich
précious kostbar [machend
prēdatory raubend, plündernd, beute-
predóminant vorherrschend
prefér vorziehen [als
préferable vorzuziehen, vorzüglicher
préjudice Vorurteil, Nachteil
préjudīced voreingenommen
prélate Prälat

prēpaid vorausbezahlt
prēpossessed voreingenommen
preserve bewahren
preside den Vorsitz führen, präsidieren
press drücken, pressen
presūme annehmen, voraussetzen, vermuten
pretension Behauptung, Anspruch
prevāil über-, vorwiegen, herrschen
prevent (ver)hindern
prevention Verhinderung
prēvious vorausgehend, früher
prey [präy) Beute
pride Stolz
prime Erste, Anfang, Morgen
prince Fürst, Prinz
princely fürstlich
principal hauptsächlich, Haupt-
príncíple Prinzip, Grundsatz
print Abdruck, Stahl-, Kupferstich; [drucken
prīor früher
prīvacy u. prívacy Heimlichkeit, Verborgenheit, Stille
prīvate geheim, verborgen; Privat-
prívilege Vorrecht
prize schätzen, preisen
probably wahrscheinlich
proceed (from) herrühren; (to) fort- schreiten, vor-, übergehen
prócess Prozeß, Vorgang
proclaim proklamieren, ausrufen, [verkünden
procūre verschaffen
prodigal verschwenderisch
produce hervorbringen, erzeugen; [Produkt
production Erzeugnis
profane profan, ungeweiht, gottlos, weltlich; entweihen
profession Beruf
professional berufsmäßig
proficiency Fortschritt
prófile Profil, Seitenansicht
prófit Nutzen, Vorteil, Gewinn; Nutzen ziehen, (be)nutzen
profuse überfließend, verschwenderisch
prógeny Nachkommenschaft, Geschlecht
prógress Fortschritt, Gang [werfen
prójeet Projekt, Plan; planen, ent-
prolōgue Vor-, Eröffnungsrede, [Prolog
prolong verlängern
próminent hervorragend
prómise versprechen
prōmontory Vorgebirge
prompter Souffleur
prone geneigt, bereit
pronounce aussprechen, erklären
pronunciation Aussprache [keit
proof Probe, Beweis, Versuch, Festig-

proper eigen, eigentlich
properly gehörig, genau, eigentlich
property Eigentum, Eigenheit, Eigentümlichkeit
próphecy Prophezeiung
propitious (-shös) günstig
proportion Proportion, Verhältnis
propose vorschlagen
proposition Vorschlag, Behauptung
propriety Eigentümlichkeit, Schicklichkeit, Genauigkeit
prosperity Gedeihen, Wohlergehen, Wohlstand
protect (be)schützen
protégé (frz.) Schützling
protestation Beteuerung, Versicherung; Verwahrung, Protest
proud stolz
prove beweisen, sich erweisen
provide ver-, vorsorgen, anschaffen, liefern
provided vorausgesetzt
próvident-ly vorsichtig, sorgsam
provision Vorsicht, Vorrat, Lebensmittel
provoke herausfordern, reizen
proxy Stellvertretung
prūdence Klugheit, Vorsicht
public öffentlich, Publikum
public school Gymnasium, Lyceum
puff pusten, schnaufen
pugilístic zum Faustkampfe gehörig, Faust-
pull ziehen, zerren, reißen
pulley Winde, Rolle, Flaschenzug
púlmonary consumption Lungenschwindsucht
púlse Puls
pūpil (piū-) Schüler(in)
púppy junger Hund, Gelbschnabel
púrchase erwerben, (er)kaufen; Kauf, Erwerbung
pūrify reinigen
purple Purpur, purpurn
púrpose Absicht, Zweck
purse Börse
pursūe verfolgen
pursūit Verfolgung, Betreibung, Bestrebung
push stoßen
puss, pussy Miezchen
púzzle beunruhigen, verwirren, sich den Kopf zerbrechen; Verlegenheit, Vexierspiel

Quack Marktschreier, Quacksalber
quadrangle Viereck
quadrangular viereckig
quádruped vierfüßig, Vierfüßler
quaint sonderbar, seltsam
qualify geeignet machen, mildern, mäßigen, tüchtig machen, sich eignen, berechtigen
quarrel Zank, Streit
quarry Steinbruch, Jagdbeute
quarter Viertel, Stadtviertel, Vierteljahr, Himmelsgegend
quarter-deck Hinterdeck
quaternion Vierzahl, vier
quay(kē) Kai, Uferdamm
quick lebhaft, lebendig, schnell
quietness Ruhe
quill Federkiel, Spule
quít verlassen
quiver zittern, schauern, beben
quotation Citat
quoth (defective v.) sagte

Rabbit Kaninchen; r. pie K.-Pastete
race Geschlecht, Stamm, Nachkommenschaft, Rasse, Rennen, Laufen, Wettrennen, Lauf, Wettlauf; rennen, laufen
racket Racket, Schlagnetz (lawn-tennis)
rādiance Glanz
rādius Halbmesser, Strahl
rage wüten, Wut
ragged zerlumpt
rail Riegel, Schiene
railing Gitter
rail-road Eisenbahn
rain Regen, regnen
rainbow Regenbogen
raisin Rosine
ramble Wanderung, Streifzug, umherstreifen, wandern
range Raum, Bereich, sich reihen, ordnen, erstrecken
rank Rang, Reihe, Stelle, Stufe, (sich reihen, ordnen)
rap klopfen
rat Ratte
rate Art u. Weise, Verhältnis, Gang, Anteil; at any — um jeden Preis
ratify genehmigen, bestätigen
rational vernünftig
rattle rasseln, klappern, Rassel, Klapper
ravage Verwüstung, Verheerung
raw roh, unreif, unerfahren
ray Strahl
reach (er)reichen
reader Leser, Vorleser, Lesebuch
reading Lesen, Lesung
ready-witted geistesgegenwärtig, schlagfertig
rēăl wirklich
réalm Reich, Königreich

reāp ernten
rēar aufrichten, erziehen
reason Verstand, Vernunft, Ursache, Grund
reasonable vernünftig, mittelmäßig, leidlich
rebellious widerspenstisch
rēbuild wieder bauen
recēipt Empfang, Quittung, Rezept
receiver Empfänger
recíprocate erwiedern, austauschen
recīter Deklamator, Recitator
reckon rechnen, (zusammen)zählen
récognize erkennen, anerkennen
recognized er-, anerkannt
recollect sich erinnern
recollection Erinnerung
recommend empfehlen
reconciliātion Versöhnung
rēconstruction Wiederaufbau
recōrd eintragen, verzeichnen, protokollieren, rühmen, besingen
récord Protokoll, Urkunde; on r. in Erinnerung, aufgezeichnet
recover sich erholen
recovery Erholung, Besserung
recrēátion Erholung
rector Pfarrherr
redeem erlösen
redound zurückfallen, gereichen
redundant überflüssig, weitläufig
refér sich beziehen, wenden, berufen, verweisen
réference Verweisung, Beziehung, Empfehlung, Auskunft
refined verfeinert, fein
refinement Verfeinerung
reflect zurückwerfen, nachdenken
reflection Betrachtung, Überlegung, Zurückwerfung
refreshment Erfrischung
réfuge Zuflucht, — ort
regard betrachten; Blick, Ansehen, Rücksicht, Achtung, Gruß, Kompliment
regimentals Uniform
régister registrieren, einschreiben, (Brief)
registration Einschreibung
regrét bedauern, Bedauern
régulate regulieren, ordnen
regulation Regulierung, Ordnung
reign regieren, herrschen, Regierung
rein (rān) Zügel
reindeer (rān-) Renntier
reject verwerfen
rejoinder Erwiederung
relápse rückfällig werden
relate erzählen, sich beziehen
relation Bericht, Beziehung, Verwandtschaft, Verwandter
relēase befreien
rélic Reliquie
reliēf Erleichterung, Hülfe, erhabene Arbeit, (Relief)
reliēve erleichtern, mildern, beistehen
rélish Geschmack, Würze, Beigeschmack, schmecken, genießen
remain (ver)bleiben
remainder Rest
remains Überreste
remark bemerken, Bemerkung
remarkable merkwürdig, bemerkenswert
remembrance Erinnerung
remind erinnern
remote entlegen, abgelegen
render wieder-, zurückgeben, erwiedern, übergeben, machen
rendezvous (rĕndevū) (frz.) Stelldichein
renown Ruf, Ruhm
renowned berühmt
repāir ausbessern, wieder herstellen, sich wohin begeben, gehen, wenden
reply erwi(e)dern
report Bericht, Gerücht, Knall
repose ruhen, Ruhe
represént darstellen, -bieten
representative Vertreter, Repräsentant
represéntative adj. vertretend, repräsentierend, repräsentativ
reprove tadeln, verweisen
réptīle Reptil
repúlsive abstoßend
reputation Ruf, Ansehen, Ehre
repūted vermeintlich
request fordern, verlangen, bitten
requīre (er)fordern
requirement Forderung, Bedürfnis
réquisite Erfordernis
réscue retten
research (ea = ö) untersuchen, forschen, Forschung
resemble gleichen, ähnlich sein
reserve zurückhalten, Zurückhaltung
resīde wohnen, residieren
résident master, — governess Hauslehrer, -in, der (die) mit im Hause oder der Schule wohnt
resīgn verzichten, aufgeben, entsagen, sich ergeben
resignation Ergebung
resist widerstehen, sich widersetzen

resolution Entschluß, Entschlossenheit
resound wiederhallen lassen
respect achten, Rücksicht nehmen, Kompliment, Empfehlung
respéctable achtbar, anständig, ehrbar
respectful achtungsvoll, ehrerbietig
respective bezüglich, gegenseitig
response Antwort
responsible verantwortlich
rest ruhen, stützen; Ruhe, Rest
resting-place Ruhestatt
restless ruhelos, unruhig
restlessness Ruhelosigkeit, Unruhe
restore wiedergeben, wiederherstellen, =einsetzen, genesen
restrain zurückhalten, zähmen, beschränken
restraint Zwang, Beschränkung, Zurückhaltung
resúlt Ergebnis, Resultat
resume wieder auf=, annehmen, anfangen
rĕtain behalten, zurückhalten
retāiner Anhänger, Gefolge
retentive zurückhaltend, behaltsam; fig. treu
retired zurückgezogen, versteckt
retīrement Zurückgezogenheit
retreat (sich) zurückziehen; Ruhe=, Zufluchtsort
return Rück=, Wiederkehr
réveller Zecher
révelry Jubel, Saus, Lustbarkeit
revēre ehren, hochachten
réverence Achtung, Ehrerbietung, Ehrfurcht, Verneigung
reverend ehrwürdig, hochehrwürdig
review (reviū) Revüe, Musterung, Heerschau
revīval Wiederbelebung; neu einstudiertes Stück
revīve wiederbeleben, =aufleben
revolt aufrührerisch werden, sich empören
revolve überlegen, =denken
reward belohnen, Belohnung
rheumatism (rū-) Rheumatismus
rhōdōdéndron Rhododendron, Rosenbaum
rib Rippe
riches (frz. richesse) Reichtum
richness Reichtum
ridge Rücken, Grat, Gipfel
rídicule das Lächerliche, Spott, Hohn
riding-stick Reitpeitsche, =gerte
rift Ritze, Spalte
right recht, richtig; Rechte
right v. (sich) in die richtige Lage bringen
rigorous streng, hart
rise ir. aufstehen, sich erheben, Aufstehen, Aufgang, Steigen; to give r. veranlassen
rīval Rival, Nebenbuhler; wetteifernd, eifersüchtig
river Fluß
rívulet Bach, Bächlein
road Straße
roam herumstreichen, =streifen, umherschweifen
roar brüllen, brausen, tosen
roast-beef Rost= oder Rinderbraten
rob (be)rauben
robe an=, bekleiden; Staatsrock, =kleid
robin Rotkehlchen
robústness Rüstigkeit, Kraft
rock schaukeln, wiegen
rock Fels
rocky felsig
rod Gerte, Rute, Stab
roe Reh
rōgue Schelm, Schurke, Landstreicher
railroad Eisenbahn
roll rollen; kleines, rundes Brot, Wecke, Semmel
románce Romanze, Romantik, Abenteuerlichkeit
rómanīsed romanisiert
roof Dach, Decke
roofed bedeckt
room Zimmer
root Wurzel, (fest)wurzeln
rope Seil; roped mit einem Seile umspannt
rot verfaulen, verwesen
rotten v. rot ir. verfaulen, verwesen
rough (rúff) rauh, herb, roh, barsch, grob
roughness Roheit
round rund; Runde, Kreislauf
round-about rund herum, weitschweifig
roundel Rundgesang, Rundtanz
rout (raut) Rotte, Trupp, Auflauf; to put to r. in die Flucht schlagen
route (rūt) Straße
rove schwärmen, umherstreifen, wandern
row rudern; Reihe
rower Ruderer
rūby Rubin
ruddy rot, rötlich, erhitzt
rude roh, unartig, unhöflich, ungezogen
rúffian wild, wütend, ruchlos
ruffianly wüst, viehisch

rugged rauh, holperig
ruin verwüsten, zerrütten, (sich) ruinieren, zu Grunde gehen; Ruine, Einsturz, Verfall
rule regieren, führen, herrschen; Regel, Herrschaft
rural ländlich, Land=
rumble rumpeln, rasseln
run ir. laufen
rūnic runisch
rush Binse Strohhalm, ungestümer Anlauf, Sturz; laufen, stürzen, schießen
rustic ländlich, bäuerisch, roh, Landmann

Sácred geweiht, geheiligt
sácrifice Opfer, opfern
sad-ly traurig, betrübt, elend, lästig, unangenehm
saddle-horse Sattel=, Reitpferd
safe sicher, heil, gesund
safety Sicherheit
sage weise; Weiser
sail Segel, Segelschiff; segeln
sailor Seemann, Matrose
sálary Gehalt, Lohn, Bezahlung
salt Salz, salzen
salt-box Salzfaß
salted eingesalzen
sanctity Heiligkeit, Unverletzlichkeit
sanctuary Heiligtum
sandwich belegtes Brot
sanitary gesundheitlich
sarcóphagus Sarkophag, sargförmiges Grabmal
sash-window Zieh=, Schiebfenster
sátirist Satiriker
satisfaction Genugthuung, Befriedigung
satisfy befriedigen, genugthun
sauce-bottle Saucenflasche
save retten, sparen, Präp. ausgenommen
saving Ersparnis
Saviour Erlöser, Erretter
saying Rede, Spruch
Saxon sächsich, Sachse
Saxony Sachsen
scaffold Gerüst, Schaffot
scale ersteigen, erklettern; Schuppe, Wagschale, Stufenleiter
scamper ausreißen, davonlaufen
scan skandieren, abmessen, prüfen
scanty knapp, karg, mager, spärlich
scarce rar, selten
scarcely kaum
scarf Schärpe, Binde, Art Umschlagetuch
scarlet Scharlach, scharlachrot
scatter verstreuen; verbreiten
scene Schauplatz, Szene
scenery Szenerie, Bühnengerät, Dekoration
scent Geruch, Witterung, Spur
sceptred Szepter tragend, königlich
schēme (sk-) Plan
scholar höherer Schüler, Gelehrter
school-fellow Schulkamerad
scientific wissenschaftlich
scissars u. scissors Schere
Sclavonian slavonisch
scoff spotten, höhnen
scold tadeln, schelten
scope Raum, Spielraum
score Zahl von zwanzig, anschreiben; scorer Anschreiber
scorn (ver)spotten, verhöhnen, verachten; Spott, Hohn, Verachtung
scornful-ly verächtlich, höhnisch
scramble klettern, klimmen; Gereiße
scrap kleines Stück, Brocken, Zettel, Schnitzel
scrāper Abstreicher, Fußreiniger
scream laut schreien, kreischen
screen Feuer=, Lichtschirm
scribe Schreiber, Sekretär
scrimmage, scrimmaging (aus skirmish scharmützeln) Lärm, Tumult, Getöse, Zank, Streit
scroll Rolle
scrūple Bedenken, Bedenken tragen
scull u. skull Hirnschale, Schädel,
scull Kahn, Ruderer
scullery Scheuer=, Wasch=, Spülbank
sculptor Bildhauer
sculpture Bildhauerei, Bildhauerkunst
scythe Sense
sea Meer
seal Siegel, (ver)siegeln
sea-mew Seemöve
search (unter)suchen, Suche, Untersuchung
season würzen, mildern, mäßigen, reifen
season Jahreszeit, Zeit, Saison
seasoning Würzen, Würze
seat Sitz
seclūsion Eingezogenheit, Einsamkeit
sēcret verheimlichen, verschweigen, (sich)verbergen; Geheimnis
sēcrecy Heimlichkeit
sécular hundertjährig, weltlich
secūre sicher, sichern
security Sicherheit

see Stuhl, Sitz (im kirchl. Sinne)
seem scheinen
seeming adj. anscheinend, scheinbar
selection Auswahl
selfish selbstisch, selbstsüchtig,
sell ir. verkaufen [egoistisch
semblance Schein
séneschal Seneschall, Hofmarschall,
Haushofmeister
sensation Gefühl Empfindung
sense Sinn, Gefühl, Verstand,
Vernunft
sensible (sich) bewußt, vernünftig
sentence Satz, Urteil, Spruch
sentimentalism Sentimentalität,
Empfindelei
sepúlchral zum Grabe, Begräb-
nisse gehörig, Grab-
sepulchre Grab, Grabmal, Grab-
sequestered abgelegen [stätte
serēne heiter
sēries (sēriēs) Reihe, Serie
sērious ernst, ernstlich
sermon Predigt
serpent Schlange
service Dienst
sérvile knechtisch, sklavisch, niedrig
session Sitzung
set setzen, —in eintreten, —off sich
aufmachen, —out sich aufmachen,
abreisen, —on fire anzünden
set Satz, Rotte, Partie, Besteck
settee Polsterbank, Kanapee
settle sich niederlassen, — ab-, aus-
machen, festsetzen
settled festgesetzt, geordnet, ab-
séver trennen [gemacht
sewer (sūa) Tafelmeister, Truchseß
sewer (sōa) Zu-, Vorschneider
sexton Küster, Meßner
shabby lumpig, armselig, elend
shadow Schatten
shādy schattig
shake schütteln beben
shakes pl. Schüttelfrost, kaltes Fieber
shame Scham, Schande
shamrock kleinblättriger Klee
shape Form, Gestalt; gestalten,
shard Scherbe [bilden
share Anteil, Portion, verteilen,
sharp-ly scharf [teilhaben
sharpen schärfen
shatter zerschmettern, zertrümmern
sheep Schaf, Schafe
sheepish schafmäßig, einfältig, blöde
sheep-shed Schafschuppen, -stall
sheet Bettuch, Fläche

shelf, -ves Bücherbrett, Schaft,
Regal, Sims
shelter Schutz, schützen
shepherd Hirt
sheriff, Scherif, höchster Verwal-
tungsbeamter einer Grafschaft;
Präsident
sherry Xeres(Wein)
shiēld Schild, beschirmen
shinbone Schienbein [glänzen
shine scheinen, leuchten, funkeln,
ship Schiff; einschiffen, verladen
shipment Verladung, Versendung,
Schiffsladung
shipwreck Schiffbruch; scheitern,
shire Grafschaft [stranden
shivering schauernd, zitternd
shocking anstößig, widerwärtig,
verletzend
shoeless schuhelos, barfüßig
shone v. shine ir. scheinen
shoot ir. schießen
shop Kaufladen
shopwindow Laden, Schaufenster
shorthand-writing Stenographie
shoulder Schulter; schultern
shout laut schreien; Freuden-
geschrei, Gejauchze
shovel Schaufel, Schippe
show ir. zeigen; Schau, Schau-
stellung, Schein, Gepränge
shower Regenschauer, -Guß; (be)-
gießen, schütten [spieler
showman Raritätenzeiger, Taschen-
shred Schnitzel, Lappen, Fetzen
shriēk laut schreien, kreischen
shrill scharf, durchdringend, gellend
shrīve ir. beichten
shroud Hülle, Leichentuch
Shrove Tuesday Fastnachtsdienstag
shrub Strauch
shudder schaudern, Schauder
shutter Schließer, Fensterladen,
Vorsetzer
shy scheu, schüchtern, behutsam
sick krank
sicken siechen, erkranken
sickle Sichel
side Seite, Partei
sideboard Neben-, Seitentisch,
Kredenztisch
sigh Seufzer
sight Gesicht, Anblick, Sicht; on,
at— auf Sicht
sign Zeichen, unterschreiben
sígnature Unterschrift
signification Bedeutung

signify be=, andeuten, kund thun
silence Stille, Schweigen, zum Schweigen bringen
sīlent ruhig, schweigsam
silhouette Silhouette, Schattenriß
silk Seide
silly einfältig, albern, dumm
Símoom Samum
simplicity Einfachheit
sin Sünde; sündigen
sincerity Aufrichtigkeit
sinewy (sínūi) sehnig, nervig
single einzig, einfach, einzeln, ledig
sink ir. sinken
sip nippen, schlürfen
sire Stamm, Vor=, Großvater
site Lage, Baustelle
situated liegend, be=, gelegen
sitter Sitzender
sitting Sitzung
sitting-room Wohnzimmer
size Gestalt, Größe
skate Schlittschuh, schlittschuh=laufen
skeleton Skelett
sketch Skizze
skill Geschick, Geschicklichkeit, Gewandtheit, Kunst
skilful geschickt
skilfulness Geschicklichkeit
skilled bewandert, geübt, geschickt
skin Haut, Fell
skirt einfassen, umgrenzen
skull Schädel
sky Himmel
slab Platte
slack(en) nachlassen, erschlaffen;
slackened rein verhängter Zügel
slam zuschlagen
slate Schiefer
slave Sklave
sledge Schmiedehammer, Schlitten
sleek glatt, weich, sanft
slender schlank
slice Scheibe, Schnitte
slide gleiten, schleifen
slight gering, schwach, leicht
slip (ent)schlüpfen, gleiten; Ausgleiten, Fehltritt, Fehler; Streifen, Stückchen
slippery schlüpferig, glatt
sloth Faulheit, Faultier
sluggish träge, langsam, schwerfällig
slumber Schlummer
small-pox Kinderblattern
smile lächeln, Lächeln
smith Schmied; smithy Schmiede

smoke rauchen, Rauch, Dampf; to have a s. etwas, ein wenig rauchen
smoking-room Rauchzimmer
smoky rauchig
smooth glatt, eben
smooth glätten, besänftigen
smother ersticken, erlöschen machen
snake Schlange
snarl knurren
snout Schnauze
snort schnauben, schnarchen
snow Schnee, schneien
snuff Schnupftabak
snug bequem, warm, still, ruhig, verborgen
soap Seife
soap-dish Seifenschale
sober mäßig, nüchtern
social gesellschaftlich, gesellig
sod Rasen
soda Sodawasser
soft weich, sanft
softness Weichheit, Weichlichkeit
soil Boden
sōjourn sich aufhalten, Aufenthalt
solar Sonnen=
sole einzig, allein
solemn feierlich
solemnity Feierlichkeit
solitude Einsamkeit
sólstice Sonnenwende
somewhere irgendwo
songster Sänger
soot-bag Rußsack
soothe besänftigen, mildern
sore wund, wehe, schmerzhaft; s. throat Halsweh
sorely schmerzlich
sorrow Sorge, Kummer, sorgen
sorry, to be bedauern, betrübt sein
sound Ton, Schall, Klang; klingen, tönen, schallen
souse eintauchen, durchweichen
southern (sö-) südlich
southward südwärts
sóvereign (sóverin) Souverän, Herrscher, Landesherr; Goldmünze (20 s. = 20 M.)
sow ir. säen
space Raum
spācious (spāshus) geräumig
spaciousness Geräumigkeit
Spain Spanien
Spánish spanisch
Spaniard Spanier
spark Funke, funkeln

spatter spritzen
spēar Speer
spēcies (spēshēs) Art, Spezies
specimen Probe, Muster, Beispiel
spectacle Schauspiel
spectacles Brille
spectre Geist, Gespenst, Gesicht
speculation Betrachtung
speech Rede
speed Eile, Fortgang, Erfolg
speedy eilig, baldig
spell buchstabieren; Zauber
spend ausgeben, ver=, zubringen
spendthrift Verschwender
sphere Sphäre
spice Gewürz
spine Rückgrat
spire Kirchturm
spirit Geist; pl. Geister, geistige Getränke; high spirits frohe Laune
spirited geistreich, lebhaft, mutig
spíritual geistlich
spit ir. speien
spite Trotz; in spite of trotz
splash spritzen
splendid glänzend
splendour Glanz, Pracht
sponge Schwamm
spoon Löffel
sport s. Spiel, Vergnügung im Freien, Zeitvertreib, körperliche Bewegung
sport v. spielen, scherzen, sich vergnügen, belustigen
spot Ort, Stelle
spouse Gatte, =in; Gemahl, =in
spréad ir. ver=, ausbreiten; Ver=, Ausbreitung
sprig Reis, Sproß, Schößling
spring from entstehen, hervorwachsen
springlet kleine Quelle
spring-mattress Sprungfedermatratze
sprinkle (be)spritzen, (be)sprengen, sprenkeln
sprite Geist, Schatten; fountain-sp. Quellnymphe
spur Sporn; spornen; on the s. of the moment wie es der Augenblick eingiebt
spy erspähen
squadron Schwadron, Schar, Geschwader
squēal winseln, quieken
squib Rakete, Feuerschwärmer
stab (er)stechen, durchbohren
stage Gerüst, Bühne, Stufe, Station
stagger stolpern, taumeln
stage-hanging Bühnenbehang
stain Flecken, Makel, (be)flecken
stair Stufe, Staffel, Tritt
stair-case Treppe
stairs Treppe
stalk (stâk) Stengel
stall Parkettsitz, Sperrsitz
stamp Stempel, Briefmarke, freimachen (Brief), stempeln, prägen
standard Standarte, Fahne; Muster, klassisch, musterhaft, Muster=, Normal=
stanch u. staunch fest, stark, standhaft, tüchtig
star Stern
stare starren, staunen, angaffen; Starren, Anstarren
start Auffahren, Ruck, Auslauf, Abfahrt
start auffahren, aufbrechen, ausrennen, hervorbrechen
startle (er)schrecken, zurückbeben, zusammenfahren
starve Hunger leiden, verhungern
state v. angeben, festsetzen, bestimmen
state s. Stand, Staat, Zustand, Pomp, Pracht; lying in — auf dem Paradebette liegen
stately stattlich, prächtig
state-prison Staatsgefängnis
statesman Staatsmann
station Stand, Stelle, Rang, Bahnhof; hinstellen, postieren
státute Statut, Gesetz, Landesgesetz
staunch siehe stanch
stay bleiben, verweilen, aufhalten; Aufenthalt
stéady stetig, fest, beständig, treu
steāk dünne Fleischscheibe
stēal stehlen
stéalth Diebstahl
steam Dampf, Wasserdampf, Brodem
steam-éngine Dampfmaschine
steamer Dampfer
steam-packet Dampf=Packetboot
steed Roß, Pracht=, Streitroß
steel-engraving Stahlstich
steep steil; eintauchen
steeple-chase Art Wettrennen
steer steuern
stem Stiel, Stengel, Stamm
step Schritt, Tritt; schreiten
stérile unfruchtbar
stern ernst, streng, rauh, hart
steward (stiū-) Haushofmeister, Verwalter; Proviantverwalter
stick Stock
stiffness Steife, Steifheit

stifle ersticken, dämpfen
stile Steige, Zauntritt (Durch-, Übergang)
still, adj. ruhig, still; adv. noch,
stillness Stille [dennoch
stir bewegen, stören, erregen, reizen
stock Stock, Stamm, Vorrat; Bestand, Haupt- [makler
stockbroker Aktienhändler, Börsen-
stocked versehen, versorgt, besetzt
stocking Strumpf
stole v. steal ir. stehlen
stómach (-k) Magen
stone Stein
stoop sich bücken, herabschießen, sich niederlassen
stop stehen, stecken bleiben, anhalten,
stork Storch [warten
storm Sturm, stürmen
story Geschichte
stout fest, stark, derb
stove Ofen
straggle sich zerstreuen, einzeln gehen
strain (an)spannen, zusammenziehen, drücken [Wendung
strain Weise, Lied, Gesang, Fluß,
Strait of Constantinople Meerenge von Konstantinopel
strange seltsam, fremdartig, sonderbar
strangeness Seltsamkeit
stranger Fremder
strap Riemen
strath Thal, Grund
straw Stroh
strawberry Erdbeere
stream Strom, Fluß, Bach
strength Kraft
stretch (er-, aus-) strecken, recken
strewn (ô) v. strew ir. (be)streuen
strict genau, pünktlich, streng
stride schreiten; Schritt
strife Kampf, Streit
striking, adj. auffallend
strip abstreifen, entblößen; Streifen
stripe Streifen
strīve ir. (be)streben, sich anstrengen
stroke Streich, Schlag
stroll herumstreifen, wandern, schlendern, Wanderung, Bummel
strong stark, kräftig
struck v. strike ir. schlagen, treffen, in Erstaunen setzen
structure Bau
struggle Streben, Kampf, Streit; kämpfen, ringen
strut sich spreizen, stolzieren
stuck v. stick ir. stecken, stechen
stud Zierknopf, Hemdenknopf; besetzen, verzieren
stūdious studierend, den Wissenschaften ergeben, gewidmet
study Studium, Studierzimmer
stuff Stoff
stump Stumpf, Stummel
sturdy kräftig, derb, standhaft
style Stil, Titel, Name
Stýria Steiermark
Stýrian Steiermärker
subdūe unterwerfen
subjéct unterwerfen
súbject adj. unterworfen, ausgesetzt
súbject Gegenstand, Subjekt; Unter-
subjugation Unterjochung [than
sublime erhaben; Erhabene
submit (sich) unterwerfen
subscription Unterschrift, Unterzeichnung, Abonnement
substantial körperlich, wesentlich; stark, fest, solid; vermögend, wohlhabend
substitute Stellvertreter
subterrānean unterirdisch
súburb Vorstadt
succeed folgen, nachfolgen, Erfolg haben, gelingen
successful erfolgreich
success Erfolg
succession Folge
successor Nachfolger
sudden plötzlich
suet (sūit) Nierenfett
suffering s. Leiden
suffīce genügen
sufficient (-fishent) hinreichend, ge-
súffocate ersticken [nügend
sugar (shū-) Zucker
sugar-basin Zuckerschale
suggést eingeben, raten [lassend
suggestive eingebend, vermuten
suit (sjūt) v. passen, anpassen, sich eignen, geziemen
suit (sjūt) s. Folge, Reihe, Satz, Anzug, Klage, Rechtshandel, -sache, Gesuch, Bewerbung
summon auffordern, einladen, aufbieten, zusammenrufen
súmptuous kostbar, prächtig
sunbeam Sonnenstrahl
sunrise Sonnenaufgang
sūpérb prächtig, herrlich
superfícial oberflächlich
superficies (-fishēz) Oberfläche
superhūman übermenschlich
superinténdent Oberaufseher

supērior überlegen
superiórity Überlegenheit
supersēde verdrängen, bei Seite schieben, absetzen, aufheben
sup zu Abend essen
supper Abendessen
supple geschmeidig, biegsam, gelenkig
supplication demütiges Gebet
supply liefern, versorgen
suppórt stützen; Stütze
suppose vermuten, meinen
suprémacy Obergewalt, -herrschaft
suprēme höchst, oberst, Ober-
sure (shūr) sicher
súrface Oberfläche
súrfeit überladen, überfüttern
surge Woge, Brandung
surgeon Wundarzt
surmount überragen
surround umgeben
surpass übertreffen, -ragen
surprise überraschen, Überraschung
survey (-vāi) überblicken, überschauen; Übersicht, Überblick
survive überleben
suspect argwöhnen
suspected verdächtig
suspénd aufhängen, aufschieben
sustain aufrecht erhalten, unterhalten, leiden, ertragen
swallow Schwalbe; verschlingen, verschlucken
swamp Sumpf, Morast, Moor
swan Schwan
sward Rasen [wimmeln
swarm Schwarm, schwärmen,
sway schwingen, schwenken, herrschen, regieren; Schwingen, Schwung, Macht, Herrschaft
swéat Schweiß, schwitzen
swell anschwellen, aufsteigen, (sich) aufblähen
sweep ir. fegen, kehren; Strich, Schwung; Feger, Kehrer
sweetheart Schatz, Geliebte
sweet-meat Zuckerwerk, Konfekt
sweet-things Süßigkeiten
swift schnell, flüchtig, geschwind
swiftness Schnelligkeit
swine Schwein, -e [Schaukel
swing ir. schwingen, schaukeln;
Swiss schweizerisch, Schweizer
Switzerland Schweiz
sword (sôrd) Schwert
sylvan waldig, schattig
sympathétic-al sympathisch, angenehm
sympathize sympathisieren, mitfühlen
sympathy Mitgefühl, Teilnahme

Tablecloth Tischtuch
table-talk Tischgespräch
tablet Täfelchen
tābor Tambourin, Handtrommel
tail Schwanz, Schweif
take, ir. nehmen; taken up beschäftigt, in Anspruch genommen
tale Erzählung
tame zahm, zähmen
tan Lohe, Gerberlohe [klopfen
tap gelinder Schlag; sanft schlagen,
tartan buntgewürfeltes Wollenzeug
task Aufgabe, Arbeit
tāste Geschmack, schmecken, kosten
tasteful geschmackvoll
taught v. teach, ir. lehren
tax besteuern, tadeln; t. with beschul-
teach, ir. lehren [digen
teaching, s. Lehre
tēam Gespann
teār zer-, abreißen, wüten, rasen
tēar Thräne, Zähre
technicality technische, kunstgerechte Eigentümlichkeit
tēdious langweilig
temper Laune, Gemütsart, Natur, Charakter, Temperament
temperate mäßig
tempest Sturm, Ungewitter
temporal zeitlich, weltlich
temporary vorübergehend, temporär
tempt versuchen, verleiten [len
tend hüten, warten; fig. streben, zie-
tenant Pächter, Pachtbauer, Mieter
term Ausdruck, Grenze, Bedingung
terminate (be)endigen, abschließen, grenzen
termination Endung, Beendigung
terminus End-, Hauptstation
terrible schrecklich
térriĕr Dachshund
térritory Gebiet, Landschaft
terror Schrecken, Entsetzen
téstimony Zeugnis
thatch Dachstroh
thatched strohbedeckt
thaumatúrgist Zauberer, Taschen-
theme Thema, Gegenstand]spieler
thénce von da (dort) aus
thereabout(s) da herum, ungefähr
therefore deshalb
thicket Dickicht
thief Dieb
thirst Durst

thirsty durstig
thither dorthin
tho', though obgleich, obschon, doch, jedoch; as though als ob
thorough-ly durchgängig, gänzlich, gründlich
thoroughbred von guter Abkunft, guter Erziehung
thoroughfare Durchfahrt, Straße
thoughtless-ly gedankenlos
thrash u. thresh dreschen
thrashing-floor Dreschtenne
thréaten drohen
threshold Schwelle
thrice dreimal
thrifty sparsam, haushälterisch
thrive, ir. gedeihen
throng Gedränge, Menge
throughout durchaus
throw, ir. werfen
thrust stoßen, drängen
thunder Donner, donnern
thunder-storm Gewittersturm
tícket Billet, Karte
ticket-office Billetschalter, Kasse
tidy nett, sauber
tie Binde, Krawatte
tīger Tiger, -fell
tight dicht, fest
tin Zinn
tinder Zunder
tinge färben
tint Farbe, Färbung
tired ermüdet
tit-bit Leckerbissen
title Titel
titled betitelt, Ehrentitel habend
toast v. rösten, eine Gesundheit (Toast) ausbringen, s. geröstete Brotschnitte
tobácco Tabak
toe Zehe
toil hart arbeiten, sich plagen, quälen; harte, schwere Arbeit
toilet Toilette
token Zeichen
tolerable erträglich, leidlich, ziemlich
toleration Toleranz, Duldung [gut
tōll läuten
tomb (tūm) Grab
tone Ton, Laut, Klang, Schall; Spannkraft
tongs Zange, Feuerzange
tongue Zunge, Sprache
tooth-ache Zahnschmerz
tootle-too tuten
top Höhe, Spitze; Kreisel
torch Fackel
torn v. tear, ir. zerreißen
torrent Strom
toss werfen, schleudern, schnellen
total ganz, gänzlich
touch an-, berühren, anlanden, rühren, betrüben
towel (tauel) Handtuch
towel-horse Handtuchhalter, -ständer
tower Turm; sich erheben, emporstreben, auftürmen
trace Spur, Fährte, Merkmal; aus-, nachspüren, nachgehen
trăcery Zierrat von Steinwerk, Schnörkel [verfolgen
track Spur, Fährte; ausspüren,
tract Fläche, Strecke, Landstrich
trade Handel, Betrieb, Gewerbe, Geschäft
tradesman Handelsmann, Krämer
trades-people Geschäftsleute
traditional traditionell, mündlich überliefert
tradition Überlieferung, Tradition
tráffic u. traffick Handel (im Großen), Verkehr, Handel treiben
train Reihe, Folge, Zug, Gefolge,
train (auf-, er)ziehen [Troß
training-school Seminar
trait Zug
trample trampeln, treten
transáct verrichten, thun, machen
transaction Unterhandlung, Geschäft
transcribe abschreiben, übertragen
tránsept Querschiff
transformation Verwandlung
tránsient vorübergehend, vergänglich
translate versetzen, übertragen
translator Übersetzer
transmission Übertragung, Überlieferung
transmit übermachen, -liefern
transmūte verwandeln
transpôrt versetzen
trap-door Fall-, Klappthür
tráverse durchschreiten, hindurchgehen
tréad, ir. (be)treten
trēason Verrat
tréasure Schatz
treasurer Schatzmeister
trēat behandeln, bewirten; Schmaus, Hochgenuß
treatment Behandlung, Bewirtung
treble dreifach; Diskant
tremble zittern
tremendous furchtbar, schrecklich
tress Locke, Haarlocke

trīal Versuchung, Verhör
trial by jury Verhör vor den Ge-
trīangle Triangel [schworenen
tribe Stamm, Volksstamm
trick Kniff, Streich, Kunststück
trīfling geringfügig, unbedeutend,
läppisch; Nichtigkeit
trim schmuck, nett, hübsch, niedlich
trip Ausflug, kleine Reise [geputzt
trod v. tread, ir. treten
trolling Fischen mit künstlichem Köder
troop Truppe, in Haufen gehen,
trot traben, Trab [ziehen
troublesome störend
troupe (frz.) Truppe
trowsers Hosen, Beinkleider
trūant Faullenzer, Schulschwänzer
trúdge sich plagen; mühsam, schwer
gehen
true wahr, wahrhaftig; it is true
true-born echt, wahr [zwar
true-hearted treuherzig, gutmütig
trunk Koffer, Rüssel
trust trauen, anvertrauen
trusty treu, zuverlässig
trūth Wahrheit
try versuchen, verhören
tumble stolpern, purzeln
tune (an)stimmen; Lied, Weise
tuneful melodisch, wohlklingend,
liederreich
turn Wendung, Neigung, Reihe; by
turns der Reihe nach, abwechselnd
turn wenden, umkehren, werden
turning Wendung
turret Türmchen
turtle Turteltaube, Schildkröte
tūtor Lehrer, Hauslehrer
twīne zusammendrehen, umschlingen,
umwinden
twinkle blinken, blinzeln
twinkling Blinken, Blinzeln; t. of
an eye Augenblick
twitter zwitschern
two-wheeled zweirädrig
type Typus, Vor-, Muster, Urbild
týphoïd fever Nervenfieber, Typhus
tyrant Tyrann
Týrolese tyrolisch, Tyroler

Ugly häßlich
ult., ultimo letzte, vergangene Monat
úmbrage Schatten; fig. Verdacht,
umbrélla Regenschirm [Argwohn
úmpire Schiedsrichter
unaffected ungekünstelt, natürlich,
unable unfähig [aufrichtig

unánimous einstimmig
unapt-ly untauglich, ungeschickt, un-
unbolt aufriegeln [passend
uncoloured ungefärbt
unconscious unbewußt
undaunted unerschrocken
underdone nicht gar
under-ground unterirdisch
underneāth unterhalb, unter
uneāsiness Unbequemlichkeit, Un-
behaglichkeit
uneāsy, unbequem, unbehaglich, un-
unēven uneben [ruhig
unexceptionable untadelhaft, unbe-
scholten
unfledged unflügge, fig. unreif
unfold entfalten
ungēnial unfreundlich, ungünstig
ungrācious ungnädig, unfreundlich,
unangenehm
unhealthy ungesund
unheeded unbeachtet
unintermitted ununterbrochen
uninterruptedly ununterbrochen
ūnion Vereinigung
unīte vereinigen
United States Vereinigte Staaten
unknown unbekannt
unlawful ungesetzlich
unless wenn nicht, außer, es sei
denn daß
unlike ungleich, unähnlich
unlikely unwahrscheinlich
unmarried unverheiratet
unmatched unerreicht, ohnegleichen
unmixed unvermischt
unpack auspacken
unpractised ungeübt
unpreméditated nicht vorher bedacht,
aus dem Stegreif
unproportioned unverhältnismäßig
unprovided unversorgt
unrēasonable unvernünftig, unbillig
unrefined unverfeinert, ungebildet
unspeakable unaussprechlich
unsteady unstät, unbeständig
unsuccessful erfolglos, unglücklich
unsupported ununterstützt
untiring unermüdlich
untold ungesagt, ungezählt
untrod unbetreten
untrue unwahr
untruth Unwahrheit
unvāried unverändert, einförmig
upper oberer
upper circle zweiter Rang
uppermost oberste

upset umwerfen, =stürzen
up stairs oben
up-train Londoner Zug (nach London)
upwards aufwärts, über
urchin Igel, kleiner Schelm
urge drängen, antreiben
urn Urne, Krug, Thee[illegible]l
ūsage Brauch
use brauchen, gewöhnen, Gebrauch
useful nützlich
usual gewöhnlich, gebräuchlich
utmost äußerst
utter äußerer
utterly äußerst, gänzlich

Vacation Ferien, Vakanz
vagrant Vagabund, Landstreicher
vāgue unbestimmt
vain eitel, in vain vergeblich
vale Thal
valley Thal
valour Tapferkeit
valuable wertvoll
value Wert; schätzen
van Wagen, Karren, Möbelwagen,
Vortrab
vanity Eitelkeit
vāried verschiedenartig
vāriegated verschiedenartig
varīety Verschiedenartigkeit, Ab=
wechselung, Abart
varlet Schelm, Schuft; Bube;
Diener
vāry abwechseln, verändern, vari=
vast-ly weit, ungeheuer [ieren
vastness Weite, Geräumigkeit,
Ausdehnung
vault Gewölbe, wölben
vaulted gewölbt, gebogen
vēal Kalbfleisch
veal-cutlet Kalbskotelett
végetable vegetabilisch, Gemüse,
Pflanzen=
vēhicle Gefährt, Fuhrwerk
vēhement-ly heftig
veil (vāl) verschleiern, verhüllen;
vein (vān) Ader [Schleier
venerable ehrwürdig
venerātion Ehrfurcht, Verehrung
venison Wildpret
venture wagen; Wagnis, Einsatz;
at a v. aufs geratewohl, auf gut
verácity Wahrhaftigkeit [Glück
vérbiage (vérbiēge) Wortkram, Ge=
schwätz
vérdict Entscheidung, Ausspruch,
vérdure Grün [Urteil
verger Büttel, Kirchendiener
vérily wahrhaftig, wahrlich
vernácular einheimisch, vaterlän=
disch, Landes=
versed bewandert, erfahren
vessel Gefäß, Geschirr, Fahrzeug
véstibule Vorhaus, =Halle
véstige Spur
vīaduct Viadukt, Bahnbrücke
vice Laster
vice versa (lat.) umgekehrt
vicínity Nachbarschaft, Nähe
vícious (víshös) lasterhaft, bösartig
victim Opfer
victor Sieger
victory Sieg
victuals (vittlz) Lebensmittel
Viénna Wien
view Aus=, Ab=, Ansicht, Anblick;
betrachten
vígorous kräftig
vile gering, niedrig, nichtswürdig
villager Dorfbewohner, Dörfler
villanous niedrig, gemein, bübisch,
schurkisch
vindíctiveness Rachsucht
vine Weinstock, Rebe
vīolence Heftigkeit, Gewaltthätigkeit
vīolet Veilchen
vīolent heftig
vírtue Tugend
vírtūous tugendhaft
viscount (vīcount) Vicomte, Vice=
vísible sichtbar [graf
vision (vísh'n) Gesicht, Erscheinung,
Traumgesicht
vísionary eingebildet, geträumt
visitation Heimsuchung
vītálity Leben, Lebenskraft
vivid lebhaft, lebendig
viz. (lat. videlicet) nämlich
vōcal tönend, Vokal=
vocábulary Wortschatz, Vokabulär
voice Stimme
volcāno Vulkan [lumen
vólume Band, Buch; Masse, Vo=
vólunteer Freiwilliger, Volontär
vote seine Stimme geben, stimmen
voyage Seereise
vulgar gemein, niedrig, pöbelhaft
vúlture Geier

Wager Wette
wages Lohn, Löhne
waggoner Fuhrmann
wainscot Täfelei, Getäfel
waist Leib, Taille

wait aufwarten, bedienen
waiter Kellner
waive aufgeben [weihfest
wake Wachen, Nachtwache, Kirch=
wanted gebraucht, gesucht, verlangt
warble wirbeln, trillern, zwitschern
warder Wärter, Wächter
warlike kriegerisch
warmth Wärme
warn warnen
warrant ermächtigen, berechtigen,
warrior Krieger [gewähren
washing-stand Waschtisch
waste verwüsten, verschwenden,
vergeuden; verwüstet, wüst
waste Wüste, öde Gegend; Ver=
schwendung, Abfall
watch wachen, beobachten, Wache,
Taschenuhr
watch-case Uhrgehäuse
water Wasser, begießen, bewässern
water-fowl Wasservogel
waterman Fährmann, Bootführer
wave wogen, wallen, wehen,
schwanken, Welle, Woge
way Weg, Art und Weise, Manier,
wēak-minded schwachsinnig
wéalth Wohlstand, Reichtum
wealthy vermögend
wéapon Waffe
wēar tragen (Kleider), abnehmen,
vergehen, verstreichen
wēary müde
weather Wetter
weed Unkraut
weigh (uāi) wiegen, (er)wägen, w.
down niederdrücken
weight Gewicht
welfare Wohlfahrt, Wohlsein
well-authenticated gut beglaubigt
well-being Wohlsein, =befinden
Welsh walesisch, Waleser
western westlich [netzen
wet naß, feucht; befeuchten, (be)=
whale Walfisch
wharf Werft, Landungsdamm, Kay
whatever irgend was, — welcher
what with—and teils — teils
whēat Weizen
wheel Rad
whence von wo (aus)
whereas dahingegen
wherever wo auch
wherry Fährboot, Jolle, Fähre,
Fahrzeug
while Weile, Zeit, während
whine wimmern, winseln

whip Peitsche, Gerte, Kutscher,
peitschen
whíptop Kreisel
whirl wirbeln, drehen
whiskers Backenbart
whisper lispeln, flüstern, wispern
whistle pfeifen, Pfeife
white-bait Breitling, ein zarter Fisch
white lie Notlüge [in der Themse
whither wohin
wholesome heilsam, gesund
wicked böse
wicker Weide
wicket Kricketstäbchen, Pförtchen
wilderness Wildnis, Wüste
wile List, Schalkheit, Trug
willing-ly gern
will-ó-the-wisp Irrlicht
willow Weide
wind Wind; (sich) winden, wenden,
schlängeln
window Fenster
windowblind Fenstervorhang
window-sill Fensterbrett
wing Flügel, Schwinge, burst
upon the — auffliegen
wink Wink (mit den Augen)
Augenblick
wipe wischen
wire Draht
wisdom Weisheit
wit Witz, Verstand
witchery Zauberei
withdraw (sich) zurückziehen
withered verwittert, verwelkt
witness Zeuge; (be)zeugen, Augen=
zeuge, zugegen sein
woe Wehe, Leiden, Schmerz
womanhood Weiblichkeit
womb (wūm) Schoß
wonder sich wundern, I wonder ich
möchte wissen
wondrous wunderbar, erstaunlich
woodbine Waldwinde, wildes Gais=
woodcut Holzschnitt [blatt
wooden hölzern
workmanship Arbeit, Geschicklich=
keit, Kunst
worldliness Weltlichkeit, Eigennutz
worldwide über die Erde verbreitet
worm Wurm
worse schlimmer, schlechter; to be
w. off schlimmer dran sein
worship Anbetung, Gottesdienst
worth wert, würdig; Wert, Würde
worthy würdig, verdienstvoll, be=
rühmter Mann; Ehrenmann

woūnd (wūnd) verwunden
wrap (ein)wickeln, -hüllen [band
wrapper Hülle, Umschlag, Kreuz-
wrench (ent)winden, (ent)reißen, herausreißen
wrestling (ressling) Ringen
wretch Elender
wretched elend
wrinkle Falte, Runzel
wrist Handgelenk
wrong Unrecht, Unbilde
wrought v. work ir. ausarbeiten

Yard Hof, Hofraum, engl. Elle (3 engl. Fuß = 36 Zoll), Parterre (Theater)
yarn Garn, Erzählung, Geschichte
yawn gähnen
yell gellen, heulen, schreien
yellow gelb
yeoman Freisasse, Großpächter
yield nach-, auf-, ergeben, eintragen, gewähren
yon, yonder jener
yokel Jokel, dumme Michel
youth Jugend, Jüngling
yule-log Weihnachtsklotz

Zēal Eifer

Deutsch-englisches Wörterverzeichnis.

Abhang slope
ablassen to let off, to abate
ablehnen to decline, to refuse
Abteilung section, division
Acht-Ruderboot eight-oared boat
ähnlich similar
Ahnung presentiment, foreboding,
 — haben idēa
Anwesenheit presence
assyrisch Assyrian
Aufgeld earnest money
auf-, anschirren to harness
aufmachen to open; to get up,
 to put up
Ausflugstag excursion-day
äußerst utterly, highly
Ausstellung exhibition, show
aussterben to die away

Backstein brick
Backsteinbau brick building
Badeanstalt bathing-establishment,
 bath-house
Badehosen bathing-drawers
Badezelle bathing-box,— -closet
Balkon balcony
Bootwettfahren boat-racing
Bauernhaus farmhouse
Bauwerk building, structure
beneidenswert énviable
bereiten to prepare, to give (Ver-
Beschreibung description [gnügen)
begehen (Fest) to celebrate; (Fehler)
 to commit
begütert wéalthy, ópulent, rich
beleuchten to íllustrate
beliebt favourite, popular
beruhigt assured

Besorgung commission, shopping
besprechen to speak about, to bespeak
Besserung improvement, recovery
Besuch, zum on a visit [(Krankh.)
betäubend déafening, amāzing
bewundern to admire
Blumenkohl cauliflower (cóli-)
Bohnen, grüne green pēas
Bootfahren boating
Bratkartoffeln fried potatoes
Brauch custom
Brotschnitte, geröstete toast
byzantisch Byzantīne

Champignon mushroom
Charfreitag Good Friday
Continentale, der Continental

Dagegen whereas, whilst
daher hence, from there
Dampfboot steam-boat, steamer
Dampfschiff steam-vessel, steamer
darüber about that, thereof
Dasein existence
Diener servant, minister (Kirche)
doch however, still, yet
Drachen kite, paper-kite
dumm silly, stupid (stiū-)
dunkelblau dark-blue

Eingenommen von fond of
einhändigen to hand
einlösen to redeem, to ransom
einrichten to arrange, to dispose
Einteilung division
eintreten to happen, to chance
einverstanden agreed, all right
einverstehen to agree with

Entbehrung prīvation, want
Entenbraten roast duck
entfalten to display
Erbsensuppe pea soup
erneuern renew (reniū)
ernst sērious
erreichen to reach, to attain, to arrive at

Fahren drive, go (Schiff)
Fahrzeug vessel
Fasan phéasant
Fastnachtsdienstag Shrove-Tuesday
Feiertag holiday [gormand
Feinschmecker gourmet (górmāi),
fertig werden to finish, to have done
Fest festival, feast
fest firm, hardy, steady
Fleischbrühsuppe broth soup
Forelle trout
forttreiben to drive away, (Schiff) to propél
fröhlich merry, cheerful
Fütterung feeding

Gebräuchlich ūsual
gelten to be considered as, to be regarded as
Gemüsesuppe spring soup
geräumig spācious
Gewächshaus hot-house, green-house
gleichmäßig ēqual, ēven
Glück happiness, luck (Glücksfall)
Glück wünschen, sich to congrátulate, to wish (give) joy
Griff handle [grandiose
großartig grand, magnificent,
großartigste, aufs in the grandest, — most magnificent mannēr
Grüne Donnerstag MaundyThursday

Hammelkeule leg of mutton; gebratene — roast —
Hammelrücken saddle of mutton
Handschuh glove
Hauptsache main point, capital—, chief thing
hauptsächlich chief-ly
Hausmiete house-rent
heidnisch hēathen, pāgan
heimwärts homeward, in returning
hell light
hellblau light-blue
herausgeben to give the balance
Herrschaften, meine Ladies and gentlemen; Ladies; gentlemen
herstellen construct

Himmelfahrtstag Ascension-Day
hinauf up stairs
hinüber across
hinwärts in going, thitherward
höchstens at (the) most, at (the) bést
hoffentlich I hope, as I hope
Hühnerbraten roast chicken
Hummer lobster

Irren, sich to be mistaken
Johannistag St. John's Day, midsummer-day

Kabeljau codfish
Kalbsbraten roast vēal
Karte, nach der à la carte
Kartoffelpüree mashed potatoes
Katharine Cátherīne [Church
kirchlich ecclesiastic-al, adv. by the
Kleiderschrank clothes-press
Körperkraft physical strength
Kopfsalat léttuce (léttis)
Kost board
Krabben, Seekrebse kleine shrimps
Krebs cray-fish
kühn bold-ly

Labyrinth labyrinth, maze
Lachs salmon (sámen)
Langeweile tēdiousness
langweilen, sich to find the time long
langwierig wēarisome
Lendenstück sirloin [góvern
lenken (Schiff) to steer, (Pferd) to
letzthin lately, not long ago
Leute people, men, fellows
Lieblingsaufenthalt favourite sōjourn, residence, —retrēat
Lust finden an to take a fancy to, a delight in

Makrele mackerel
Marmor marble
Materialien matērials
Matratze mattress
Meisterstück master-piece
Menschenkind man, fellow, crēature,
Michaelis Michaelmas [being
mieten to hire [rooms
Mietswohnung hired lodgings, —
Mince-Pastete mince-pie (Hackfleisch-
Mißbrauch ábūse, misuse [Pastete)
Mistelzweig mistletoe
mittlere middle
mittelalterlich mēdiæval (mēdiēvel)
möblieren to furnish
Mts. d. inst., instant

Nähe neighbourhood, vicinity
Nationalgericht national fare od. dish
nebenbei gesagt by the by, besides
Nudelsuppe vérmicelle
nützen, aus= to use, to make use of, to turn to profit

Ochsenschwanzsuppe oxtail soup
Ordnung, in — bringen to set in order
Ostersonntag Easter-Sunday

Palmhaus palm-house (pâm-)
Palmsonntag Palm-Sunday
passen to fit, to suit (siūt)
Pastete pie
Pfannkuchen pancake
Pfingsten Whítsuntide
Photographie phótograph
Plauderei chat, talk, chattering
pompejanisch Pompēian
Preis, zu festem à prix fixe
probieren to try
Punkt point; spot
Puritaner, Puritan (Piū-)

Rasen turf, sod
Rebhuhn pârtridge
Regenschirm umbrella
Rehbraten vénison
reinigen to clēan
Religiosität religiousness
Rhabarber rhūbarb
Rohprodukt raw próduce
romantisch Rómanesque
Roßhaar horse-hair, hair
Ruderer rower
Ruderfahren boating
rudern to row
Ruderwettfahren boat-racing
Ruf reputation, renown (rinaun)

Sammlung collection
sarazenisch Saracénic
Sardinen sârdines
satt, sich — essen to eat one's fill
Schildkrötensuppe turtle
Schirmladen umbrella-shop, — -store
schmecken to taste (genießen), to enjoy, to like
schmücken to adorn, to décorate
Schwimmplatz swimming-place
Seezunge sole, gebratene — fried —
Segelfahren yachting (jǒting)
Segelschiff sailing vessel
sehenswert remârkable, worth seeing
seitlich láteral
setzen, in Bewegung to put in motion, to move
Sommer=Ausflugsort summer resort
sogenannt so-called
Sonnenschirm parasol
Sonnenuntergang sunset
Sonntagsfeier keeping od. celebration of the Sunday
Sonntagsgebrauch Sunday custom, —habit
sonstig other
sparen to save
Spargel aspáragus
Speisekarte bill of fare
Spinat spínage
Sprungfeder spring
Stadtteil quarter of thé town
stattlich stately
stehen to stand, to be
Steinbutt túrbot
Steuermann cockswain (kocks'n)
Steuern steering
Steuerruder helm, steer
Stock(werk) story, floor

Tapete tápestry, paper hangings
tauchen to dip, to dive, to plunge
Thatsache fact
tragen, zur Schau to display, to carry about publicly
trotz in spite of

Überholen to overtake, to beat
überteuern to overcharge
übrig left, to spare
unentgeltlich grātis
unersättlich insātiable
ungelehrt unlearned, illíterate
ungemein uncommon, extraordinary, exceedingly
ungezwungen unaffected, easy, unconstrained
Unhöflichkeit impoliteness, incivility
unordentlich disorderly
unternehmen undertake
Unwissenheit ígnorance

Verbunden sein to be obliged
vergeßlich forgetful
Vergnügungslokal place of public resōrt
Verkehr traffic, intercourse
verkehren mit to frequent, to have intercourse
verlangen demand, ask
vernachlässigen to neglect
verstehen, sich darauf to be up to a thing, to understand it perfectly
vertraut sein to be familiar with

verzichten auf to forego, to resīgn
Vorderzimmer front-room
Vorschlag propōsal, proposition
Vorstellung idēa; (Theat.) performance, representation
vortrefflich excellent-ly

Wahrhaftig truly, positively, verily; in truth
warten auf to wait for
Wasserstrom stream of water
Wasservergnügen aquátics; aquatic sports
weh thun to ache (āk), to ail (āl)
Weihnachtsfest Christmas (Chrismes)
Weihnachtsschachtel (geschenk) Christmas-box
Wesen being, nature, cháracter
widersprechen to gainsay, to contradict
Widerspruch contradiction
Wildpret game
Wohlstand welfare, prosperity
Wohlthat benefit
wohnen to live, to dwell, to lodge
Wohnung lodgings, rooms
Wunderding wondrous thing

Zeitalter āge, ēra
Zettel notice, bill
Ziel aim, mark, term, goal
zu-, hergehen to make merry, to rejóice

Bayerische Staatsbibliothek MÜNCHEN

1.

Buildings.

1. Royal Courts of Justice
2. Guildhall or Council Hall
3. Bank of England
4. Royal Exchange
5. Custom House
6. Tower
7. British Museum
8. National Gallery
9. Houses of Parliament
10. Westminster Hall & Palace
11. Westminster School
12. Grand Hotel
13. Royal Albert Hall
14. South Kensington Museum
15. Christ's Hospital School
16. Charter House
17. University College
18. The Temple
19. Lincoln's Inn
20. Newgate
21. St. James Hall.

2.

Palaces.

22. Sommerset House
23. Mansion House
24. Buckingham Palace
25. St. James's Palace
26. Kensington Palace
27. Lambeth Palace.



J. Bierbaum, Lehrbuch der engl. Sprache II.

Lith. Anstalt L. Geißendörfer, Karlsruhe i/B.

3.

Churches.

28. St. Paul's Cathedral
29. St. Mary le Bow
30. Westminster Abbey
31. St. Sepulchre
32. St. Giles
33. St. George's.

4.

Theatres.

34. Covent Garden or Royal Italian Opera
35. Her Majesty's Opera House
36. Drury Lane
37. The Lyceum
38. Haymarket Theatre
39. The Strand Theatre
40. The Gaiety
41. The Empire
42. The Princess's Th.

5.

Monuments.

43. Sir Robert Peel
44. Duke of Wellington
45. William IV.
46. The Monument
47. Nelson Column
48. Cleopatra's Needle
49. Albert Memorial
50. The Marble Arch
51. Hyde Park Corner
52. Duke of York Column
53. Temple Bar

Errata.

Number 29 to be transferred to church between numbers 28 and 29, number 45 to monument near 46; number 44 instead of 45.

Bayerische
Staatsbibliothek
MUNCHEN

Bayerische StaatsBibliothek

Münchener DigitalisierungsZentrum Digitale Bibliothek

Bierbaum, Julius

Lehr- und Lesebuch der englischen Sprache nach der analytisch-direkten Methode für höhere Schulen

Bd.: 2

Leipzig 1894

L.g.sept. 158 q-2
urn:nbn:de:bvb:12-bsb11643056-5